

CANADIAN

EDUCATIONAL  
SERIES

# BELLUM GALLICUM

BOOKS V & VI.

HENDERSON & HAGARTY.

THE  
COPP CLARK CO.  
LIMITED



GENE

C. J. Connor

J. H. McEachern

J. H. McEachern  
Y. C. S.

J. H. McEachern

J. H. McEachern  
Y. C.

J. H. McEachern  
Y. C. S.

J. H. McEachern



Geo. G. MacEachern

Geo. G. MacEachern

Geo. G. MacEachern

John

~~Geo. G. MacEachern~~

Wm. G. MacEachern

Geo. G. MacEachern



Classical Text Book Series.

---

CAESAR'S  
BELLUM GALLICUM,  
(BOOKS V. & VI.)

WITH

INTRODUCTORY NOTICES, NOTES, COMPLETE VOCABULARY, EXERCISES  
IN TRANSLATION SUITABLE FOR BEGINNERS, AND A SERIES  
OF EXERCISES FOR RE-TRANSLATION

FOR THE USE OF

CLASSES READING FOR DEPARTMENTAL AND UNIVERSITY  
EXAMINATIONS

BY

JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.,

HEAD MASTER, ST. CATHARINES COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE,

AND

E. W. HAGARTY, B.A.,

CLASSICAL MASTER, HARBORD STREET COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE, TORONTO,  
LATE FELLOW BY COURTESY, JOHNS HOPKINS UNIV., BALTIMORE.

---

TORONTO:

THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED,

9 FRONT STREET WEST.

---

---

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand  
eight hundred and ninety-four, by THE COPP, CLARK CO., LIMITED, Toronto,  
Ontario, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

---

---

## PREFACE.

---

This edition of Books V. and VI. of Caesar's Gallic War differs to some extent from former editions of Caesar. Exercises designed to simplify the first lessons in translation have been inserted; a connected précis, in Latin and mainly in Caesar's own words, of the story of Books I.-IV. has been added with a view to providing those teachers who wish it with material of a simple nature for sight work in junior classes. Headings, furnishing *the reader* at a glance with an outline of the story and its main subdivisions, have been put in with a view to arousing that interest in the subject matter without which no pupil can ever learn to "*read*" Latin properly. It is hoped that this edition will go far to intensify and quicken the Revival of Classical Study that has already begun in our schools.

J. H.  
E. W. H.

TORONTO, January, 1894.

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2009 with funding from  
Ontario Council of University Libraries

way between these two forces we have the wealthy class led by such men as Crassus, without any aristocratic antecedents, on the one hand opposed to democracy as men of affluence naturally are, and on the other opposed to the old families who prided themselves simply in tracing their descent through a long line of ancestors. In fact the history of Rome from the middle of the second century, B.C., down to the time of Augustus, presents little more than the intrigues of wily politicians who by unscrupulousness endeavoured to supplant each other in the favour of the people. Caesar attempted to show that the Senatorial government of the provincials was thoroughly corrupt. He indicted Cn. Dolabella (78 B.C.) and C. Antonius (77 B.C.) for extortion. Though Caesar lost these causes, he really gained a triumph, since he proved the utter corruption of the courts which were filled by the Senatorial faction. To improve his style in oratory, he went to the school of Molo, at Rhodes. On the voyage thither Caesar's vessel was captured by pirates at Pharmacussa (now *Fermaco*), one of the Sporades. He was detained for forty days, and was not released till a ransom of \$50,000 had been paid. During his detention, he is said to have joined these marauders in their sports, and to have jestingly told them that he would, when liberated, have them crucified. This threat he afterwards made good. Landing at Miletus, he collected a small fleet, captured them, and brought them to Pergamus, where they were executed. He stayed at the school of Molo for two years.

When absent from Rome, Caesar was elected *pontifex*. This office could be held only by one residing in the capital, and thus he was compelled to return. A reaction had meanwhile set in opposed to the policy of Sylla. With the Consulship of Pompey and Crassus (70 B.C.) a reform had been introduced by restoring the rights of the tribunes and the censors, and by remodelling the Senate. Both Pompey and Caesar supported these reforms. In 68 B.C., Caesar became *quaestor*, and by virtue of this

*The three parties at Rome.*

*Caesar indicts Dolabella and Antonius.*

*Goes to Rhodes. Captured by pirates.*

*Elected pontifex.*

*Reaction against Sylla's policy.*

*Elected quaestor.*

office he was entitled to a seat in the Senate. He went soon after his election with Antistius Vetus into Spain, and took up his residence at *Corduba* (now *Cordova*). One of the chief duties of the quaestor was to attend the provincial assizes (*conventus*), and settle the disputes that arose between provincials. In this office he displayed a spirit of equity and moderation in striking contrast to the policy of his predecessors. His popularity gained for him many adherents, who, in after days, flocked to his standard at the battle of Munda. It was during this year that he lost his wife Cornelia.

*Married  
Pompeia.  
B.C. 67.*

Caesar married Pompey's cousin, Pompeia, in the following year. No doubt this union was concluded for political reasons. Pompey was now in the height of his fame. This very year he was appointed by the Gabinian law (*lex Gabinia*) sole commander of the Roman fleet to clear the coasts of the Mediterranean of the pirates who infested it. Next year he was equally successful in defeating Mithradates, king of Pontus.

*Elected  
curule  
aedile.*

In 65 B.C., Caesar was elected *curule aedile*. While holding this office, he increased his popularity, as well as his debts, by the costly gladiatorial shows he gave to gratify the depraved tastes of a Roman populace. He also showed his devotion to the memory of Marius by causing the trophies of that great commander, which had been destroyed by Sylla, to be replaced. Many a veteran, reading the inscriptions recounting the victories of *Campi Raudii*, *Aquae Sextiae*, and over *Jugurtha*, would recall the memory of the greatest soldier of the age, the deliverer of Italy, and the sturdy supporter of popular rights. In the year 63 B.C., a year noted for the conspiracy of Catiline, Caesar became *pontifex maximus*. On the trial of the conspirators, Caesar advocated the penalty of perpetual banishment, while Cato advocated the death penalty. Subsequent events proved that Caesar was right.

*Caesar  
pontifex  
maximus.*

*Elected  
praetor.*

In 62 B.C., Caesar was elected *praetor*, and while in this office he openly opposed the party of the Senate. On

resigning the office, he went as *propraetor* to Spain, when *Propraetor of Spain.* he managed to gain money enough to pay off his enormous debts. On his return, he united with Pompey and Crassus to form the coalition called the *First Triumvirate.* *First Triumvirate.* Pompey may be said to have been the representative of the aristocratic classes, Caesar of the democratic, while Crassus was an exponent of the moneyed party. In the next year Caesar was Consul. To further cement the *Consul 59 B.C.* union, Pompey married Julia, Caesar's daughter. During *Julia Caesar's daughter, married to Pompey.* his Consulship he brought up several reforms, especially a bill for the division of the lands among the people. Before laying down his Consulship he procured the passage of a bill by which he was invested for *five years* *Goes to Gaul.* with proconsular power over the Gauls and Illyricum.

#### GALLIC CAMPAIGNS.

Nine years were spent in the subjugation of the Gauls. In the first campaign, Caesar at Bibracte (now *Autun*) drove back the Helvetii, who were moving westward and attempting to subdue Gaul. In the same year he defeated at *Basle* Ariovistus, a German King, who at the instigation of the Arverni and Sequani had been invited to take their part against the Aedui. *58 B.C. Helvetii and Ariovistus*

In the second campaign, Caesar defeated the Belgae at *B.C. 57. The Belgae* the river Sabis (now *Sambre*).

Caesar in the third campaign broke up a coalition of the tribes of the north-west of Gaul, which had united against him. During this year, he renewed the agreement with Pompey and Crassus, who covenanted that his command should be extended to five years further. *B.C. 56. The Veneti.*

In his fourth campaign Caesar crossed the Rhine, but remained only eighteen days on the German side. Later on in the same year he crossed over to Britain. *B.C. 55. The Germans and Britons.*

The next campaign was chiefly against Britain, which, however, he only partially subdued, being recalled by a sudden uprising in Gaul, which he suppressed *53 B.C.* *Britain.*

He in the next campaign crushed the general revolt, under Vercingetorix, of the subject tribes in Gaul. With *B.C. 52.*

the fall of Alesia, the power of the Gauls was crushed for ever.

*B.C. 51* In his eighth campaign, he was complete master of Gaul, having reduced the tribes one after another to subjection.

*B.C. 50.* The last campaign is uneventful. He remained in Cisalpine Gaul, and returned to Transalpine Gaul for a short time in the summer to review his troops.

#### QUARREL WITH POMPEY.

*Changes  
while Caesar  
was in Gaul.*

During Caesar's absence in Gaul, Crassus was slain at the battle of Carrhae, B.C. 53. This really broke up the Triumvirate. Pompey began to view Caesar's career with distrust and alarm. He entered into a league with the aristocracy and the Senate. A demand was finally passed by the Senate that Caesar should disband his legions. This Caesar refused to do, unless Pompey followed the same course. Finally a decree "that the Consuls should provide that the State should receive no hurt," was passed. This order was equivalent to a declaration of war, and was regarded as such by Caesar.

*Caesar  
crosses the  
Rubicon.*

With one legion he crossed the Rubicon, the boundary between Gaul and Italy. Soon Italy came over to his side. Pompey and the party of the Senate fled to Greece. Caesar marched to Spain, defeated the party of Pompey at *Ilerda*, and took Massilia in Southern Gaul.

*Pharsalia.  
B.C. 48.*

Caesar then prepared to follow Pompey. For some time both armies encamped on the Apsus in Illyricum. Finally the decisive battle was fought August 9th, B.C. 48, at *Pharsalia*. Though Caesar's forces were but one-half the number of those of Pompey, the superior generalship and the courage of despair won the day, and Pompey's troops were completely routed. Pompey fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered by an emissary of the king. Caesar followed and became involved in difficulties in settling the succession to the throne.

*Thapsus.  
B.C. 46.*

Soon after he crushed the Pompeian party at the battle of *Thapsus*, in Africa, 46 B.C. Caesar was now the master

of the Roman world. He returned to Rome, celebrated his three triumphs, and published a general amnesty to his opponents. He reformed the calendar, and introduced many useful measures for the internal economy of the State.

In 45 B.C., the two sons of Pompey had collected a force in Spain. Thither Caesar marched, and at *Munda Munda*, totally defeated it. The Senate conferred on him nearly all the offices of State, and thus the whole authority was centered in one man.

A conspiracy, headed by Brutus and Cassius, was formed against him. They were actuated partly by mistaken patriotic motives, and partly by personal jealousy and hatred. Caesar fell March 15th, 44 B.C., pierced by the daggers of the assassins just as he had entered the Senate house. *Death of Caesar, B.C. 44.*

Caesar was tall, and of commanding aspect ; his features well marked and prominent : his complexion fair ; his eyes keen, black, and expressive. In latter life he was bald, which he somewhat concealed by wearing a sort of diadem. His robust frame was inured to hardship, and exhibited remarkable powers of endurance. With regard to dress he was very fastidious. His private life was singularly free from many of the vices of the age. *Caesar's appearance.*



BRUTUS, THE MURDERER OF CAESAR.

## II.

## THE WORKS OF CAESAR.

(1) *Extant* :—

(a) *Commentarii de Bello Gallico* in seven books. This work contains an account of the conquest of Gaul from B.C. 58 to B.C. 52. In the first book we have the conquest of the Helvetii mentioned, and in the seventh book the death of Clodius is referred to as lately having taken place. As the death of Clodius happened B.C. 52, we may assume that the events recorded happened between these two dates. An eighth book was added by Aulus Hirtius to complete the events to 51 B.C.

(b) *Commentarii de Bello Civili* in three books. This gives an account of the civil wars down to the time of the Alexandrine war. The history of the Alexandrine, African, and Spanish campaigns were afterwards added. Hirtius probably wrote the account of the Alexandrine campaign; Oppius, that of the African; the account of the Spanish war was written probably by a centurion of Caesar's army, according to Niebuhr, who discovers a change in style and expression from that of the other two accounts.

(2) *Lost Works* :—

(a) *Anticato*. A reply to Cicero's panegyric on Cato Uticensis, who fell at Thapsus, B.C. 46.

(b) *De Analogia*, or as Cicero calls it, *De Ratione Latine loquendi*. Dedicated to Cicero and written when Caesar was crossing the Alps.

(c) *Libri Auspiciorum* or *Auguralia*. Published B.C. 63, when Caesar was *Pontifex maximus*.

(d) *De Astris*. Published also B.C. 63.

(e) *Apothegmata* or *Dicta Collectanea*. A collection of witticisms made at different times.

(f) *Poemata*; nearly all written in his youth. To

these belong *Oedipus*, *Laudes Herculis* and *Iter* (describing his journey from Spain, B.C. 46).

## SUMMARY OF CAESAR'S LIFE.

**Born 100 B.C.** Father dies 84 B.C.

Married Cornelia 83 B.C.

Retires from Rome owing to enmity of Sylla. Returns on Sylla's death, 78 B.C.

Wins popularity by attacks upon Senatorial party.

Goes to Rhodes to study rhetoric under Molo. Captured by pirates on his way thither.

Elected *pontifex*, *quaestor*, *curule aedile*, *pontifex maximus*, *praetor*, 70-62 B.C.

**Consul B.C. 59.** First Triumvirate.

**Gaulic Campaigns 58-50 B.C.**

Quarrel with Pompey and the Senate, 49 B.C.

Defeats Pompey at **Pharsalia, 48 B.C.**—Gains control of Africa at Thapsus, 46 B.C.—Spain, at Munda, 45 B.C.

**Assassinated 44 B.C.**

## CAESAR'S PERSONALITY.

"To be a great general was the short road to political power. Caesar's keen eye saw this, and, though too much must not be made of it, certainly it was not absent from the motives which made him eager to have the command in Gaul assigned to him. There were great men in the world before Caesar, but it seemed to good judges of his own age that he was greater than them all; and there have been great men after him, but still, compared with all before and after, so far as it is possible to compare where circumstances are so different, his name seems to good judges the greatest of all names known to history. Better men have lived, greater statesmen, perhaps greater generals, but none have so combined the qualities which we praise and wonder at. The Emperors

of Rome, the German Kaisers, probably the Russian Czars, bore or still bear his name. A month was re-named in his honour, and has retained the name of "the mightiest Julius" ever since in the languages of all Europe.

His wonderful life must be studied elsewhere, his fearless youth, his early manhood devoted to the cause of liberty and reform, his marvellous success as a general, though he only turned soldier comparatively late in life, and held no command until he was forty years old. How he became the master of Rome's destinies, and by justice and clemency showed that he was worthy to control them, and was ambitious more for his country than for himself; and how, in the height of his greatness, he was murdered by men who called him tyrant, and thought that the only right form of government was the rule of the noble and wealthy few,—of the oligarchy which bore and disgraced the name of the Roman Republic,—all this forms a history full of interest and lessons for all time.

Here (Bk. V.) we have only the story of his second invasion of Britain and one scene from the midst of his great exploit of the conquest of Gaul. It will show us something of his care for his men which so endeared him to them, of his promptitude and daring, of his supreme calm and self-control, of his fairness as an historian, of his kindness as a superior officer, slow to blame, quick to praise; and it will give us a lively picture of his enemies, their strength and weakness, their mode of warfare. Above all, it will show us the matchless strength of the Roman legions when fighting behind the entrenchments which they were so skilled in making."—*Colbeck*.

#### DRAMATIC CHARACTER OF BOOKS V. AND VI.

Mr. Colbeck's words quoted above aptly set forth some of the leading dramatic features of this most interesting portion of Caesar's otherwise rather dry military narrative. In books V. and VI. we realize Caesar's object in writing, *i.e.*, to give to his fellow-countrymen of his own

time, and to leave on record for all ages to come a pen-picture of himself and his army as they figured in these years of Roman aggrandizement in Western Europe. With how bold yet delicate a touch he paints

- (1) himself, as a considerate and humane officer, "slow to blame, quick to praise," (see the episode of Cicero, Bk. V., 46-52, and Bk. VI., 42,) ; as a cool-headed strategist, a merciful conqueror, and a just judge;
- (2) his subordinate officers, Cotta, Sabinus, Labienus Cicero, their faults and their virtues ;
- (3) his foes, the Britons, the Germans, the Gauls ; their chieftains (Cassivellaunus and Ambiorix) ; their modes of fighting and other national characteristics ;
- (4) his own legionaries, with their intrepid zeal amidst fearful odds of peril and hardship ;
- (5) and even Pompey, not yet an avowed enemy, conceding something to "friendship and the good of the commonwealth."

These features combine to make books V. and VI. an interesting study even from the literary stand-point.

### III.

#### THE CONQUEST OF GAUL.

In the year 600 B.C., the Greeks of Phocaea, in Asia <sup>Greek settlement.</sup> Minor, emigrated and settled at Massilia (now *Marseilles*). On the conquest of Asia Minor by Cyrus the Great, many of their countrymen joined the Phocaeans ; and soon the young Greek colony rose to power. The inhabitants of Massilia became the leaders in learning and commerce, and established colonies along the neighbouring coast of the Mediterranean. As the Greek colonies encroached on the wild barbarians, wars naturally arose. In 154 B.C. the Ligurians besieged Antipolis and Nicaea, two dependencies of Massilia, when the Massiliots called in the aid

*Romans.*

of the Romans, by whose aid the Ligurians were defeated, and part of the territory of the Ligurians given to the Massiliots. Another attack soon after (125 B.C.) was made by the Ligurians, who were reduced a second time. The army of C. Sextius Calvinus, after three campaigns, plundered their territory, and reduced the inhabitants to slavery. Near Massilia, he founded the town of *Aquae Sextiae* (now *Aix*), which obtained its name from the hot springs of the neighbourhood. About this time, the

*Aquae Sextiae.**Fiuds.*

Aedui and Allobroges were at war. The Arverni, the most powerful of the Gallic tribes, aided the Allobroges, while the Aedui concluded a treaty with the Romans. In 121 B.C., Cn. Domitius defeated the Allobroges at Vindalium, a little above *Avignon*; and in the same year the Gallic confederates were defeated by the united armies of Cn. Domitius and Q. Fabius Maximus, near the junction of the Isere and the Rhone. The country of the Allobroges was reduced to a Roman province, and received the name *Provincia*. Massilia however, still retained her independence. Within the next succeeding years, the Romans enlarged the boundaries of the original *Provincia*, which extended at first from the Alps to the Rhone, by reducing that portion of Gaul from the Rhone to the Pyrenees, thus keeping open the road to Spain.

*Cimbri and Teutones.*

In 113 B.C. the whole of Italy was thrown into consternation by the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutones. After wandering about the Northern Italy, they entered Gaul and attacked the Roman Province. In 109 B.C. they defeated the Consul, M. Junius Silanus. The Romans sustained another defeat two years later when they attempted to keep back the Tugurini, one of the Helvetic cantons who were attempting to enter Gaul. In this battle fell L. Piso, the grandfather of Caesar's father-in-law. In 106 B.C., Q. Servilius Caepio sacked Toulouse, which had formed a league with the Cimbri and Teutones. This temporary gain was followed by a crushing defeat inflicted on the Romans near the banks of the Rhone by the Cimbri and Teutones.

*Successive defeats of the Romans.*

The Cimbri separated from the Teutones and laid waste all the land between the Rhone and the Pyrenees. *Cimbri and Teutones separate.* While the Teutones remained on the East of the Rhone, the Cimbri turned back from the Pyrenees, joined the Teutones, and then passed the Alps. Marius who had gained great glory in the Jugurthine war, was sent against the invaders. He hastened to Southern Gaul, and defeated the Teutones at Aquae Sextiae, 102 B.C. *Defeat of Teutones and Cimbri.* In the following year he met the Cimbri at Vercellae and crushed them in battle.

During the civil war, Sertorius, a follower of Marius, stirred up the Aquitani to revolt. The revolt, however, was unimportant. During the Consulship of Cicero, Catiline attempted to carry out his nefarious conspiracy. He and his associates attempted to gain over the deputies of the Allobroges, who were on some mission at Rome, to join the conspiracy. These deputies betrayed the proposals to the Consul. The Allobroges not being successful in their mission, and perhaps instigated by the representations of Catiline, took up arms and defeated Manlius Lentulus. In a second battle, however, they were defeated by Pomptinus. *Intrigues of Catiline.*

The Aedui, proud of their alliance with Rome, began to lord it over the other tribes. The Sequani formed an alliance with the Arverni. These two tribes invited Ariovistus, a German, to assist them against the Aedui. Soon the Aedui were reduced to submission. Their chief, Divitiacus, went to Rome, and implored the aid of the Senate. The Sequani meanwhile found out that Ariovistus from being an ally turned to be their master. He demanded a third part of the territory of the Sequani, and being refused, defeated them in the battle of Magetobriga. After this he ruled them with unbearable insolence. *Ariovistus invited.*

In B.C. 60, a report reached Rome that the Helvetii, like the Cimbri and Teutones, were preparing for a great emigration. *Emigration of Helvetii.*

The plan was under the direction of Orgetorix, a wealthy Helvetian noble. Seeing the fertile plains of

*Caesar  
Consul.*

*Sets out to  
Gaul.*

Gaul, they were dissatisfied with their own land. In the previous year a decree had been passed at Rome, that the Governor of Gaul for the time being should protect the allies of the Roman people. In the next year 59 B.C., Julius Caesar was Consul. During his Consulship, P. Vatinius proposed a law giving Caesar the government of Gaul and Illyricum for five years. Caesar's object was to complete the conquest of Gaul. He remained at Rome till after the exile of Cicero. Soon after this, B.C. 58, he hastily set out for Gaul, on the report that the Helveti were on the move westward.



ROMAN SOLDIERS, FROM TRAJAN'S COLUMN.

#### IV.

#### THE ROMAN ARMY.

In ancient times of Rome, the army was drawn in a solid mass (*phalanx*), a method very common among the

Macedonians, and perhaps derived from them. Camillus (circa, 390 B.C.) is said to have broken up the *phalanx* into smaller bodies called *manipuli*, capable of acting independently and also in concert. The whole legion was arranged in three lines. In the first (*hastati*) were the youngest men, in the second (*principes*) were men in the full vigor of life, and in the third (*triarii*) were the veterans. Each line contained *ten manipuli*, arranged in the following fashion ;

*Hastati* :    —   —   —   —   —   —   —   —   —   —  
*Principes* :   —   —   —   —   —   —   —   —   —   —  
*Triarii* :    —   —   —   —   —   —   —   —   —   —

Each *manipulus* of the two first lines contained two *centuriae*, each commanded by a *centurio*. The centurion commanding the right century of the manipuli was styled *centurio prior*, the one commanding the left century, *centurio posterior*. Light armed troops (*velites*) were attached, twenty, to each century. Thus we have :

<i>Hastati</i> :	10 manipuli,	120 men = 20 centuries,	60 men = 1,200
<i>Principes</i> :	10        "        120        "        = 20        "        60        "        = 1,200		
<i>Triarii</i> :	10        "        60        "        = 20        "        30        "        = 600		
	—	—	—
	30	60	3,000
	To every century, 20 velites = 1,200		—
			4,200

This was the *triplex acies* referred to so often by Caesar. To each legion was attached 10 *turnae*, or squadrons of cavalry of 30 men each, each *turma* being sub-divided into three *decuriae* of 10 men each ; each *decuria* was headed by an officer called *decurio*.

To Caesar or Marius is ascribed the custom of drawing up the legion of cohorts. Each legion, when complete, had regularly 6,000 men, divided into 10 cohorts (*cohortes*), each cohort divided into three maniples (*manipuli*), and each manipule into two centuries (*centuriae*). The spear (*hasta*) was given to the *triarii*, who also seem to have

been armed with the pike (*pilum*). Hence the first two lines were sometimes called *ante-pilani*.

The officers of the army were :

- |             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Officers.   | (a) <i>Centurions (Centuriones)</i> : These were the leaders of the centuries, two in each maniple, six in each cohort, and sixty in each legion. There was a regular system of promotion in the Roman army. The highest centurion was the first centurion of the first maniple of the first cohort, so the lowest would be the second centurion of the third maniple of the tenth cohort. As a badge of authority the centurions carried a staff. |
| Centurions. |  |
| Tribunes.   | (b) <i>Military Tribunes (Tribuni Militum)</i> : These were six to each legion : hence ten centurions were under each tribune.   |
| Legati.     | (c) <i>Lieutenants (Legati)</i> : These were next the general in command. The cavalry were under the command of the <i>præfecti equitum</i> and <i>decuriones</i> .  |

The *weapons* of the Roman soldier were of two kinds :

- |       |   |
|-------|---|
| Arms. | (1) <i>Offensive weapons</i> . The ordinary soldier ( <i>miles legionarius</i> ) was armed with (a) <i>the javelin</i> . Of this there were four kinds : <i>pilum</i> , <i>iaculum</i> , <i>hasta</i> , <i>lancea</i> . The <i>pilum</i> was a strong heavy pike, consisting of a square shaft of wood four feet long, to the end of which a strong, sharp iron point about two feet long was attached. The <i>iaculum</i> was a lighter dart used for hurling, while the <i>hasta</i> was a long spear used for stabbing. The <i>lancea</i> was a light spear with a broad point. The infantry used the <i>pilum</i> , while the cavalry and light armed troops, the <i>iaculum</i> , <i>hasta</i> , and <i>lancea</i> . Some of the latter carried bows ( <i>arcus</i> ), and arrows ( <i>sagittæ</i> ), slings ( <i>fundæ</i> ). |
|       | (b) <i>The sword (gladius)</i> was short, broad, double-edged and pointed, more used for stabbing than for slashing. It was kept in a light scabbard fastened to a belt ( <i>baltus</i> ).  |

- (2) *Defensive weapons.* The soldiers of the legion had : (a) a *brazen helmet* (*cassis*), surmounted with a crest ; (b) a *cuirass* (*lorica*), made of leather, or of strips of metal fastened on the leather, or of metallic scales, or of brazen plates : (c) *greaves* (*ocreae*), reaching as high as the knee ; (d) a *shield* either oblong, made of boards, covered with leather and surrounded with a broad metallic rim (*scutum*), or made of bronze and of an oval shape (*clipeus*). The light armed troops had a small buckler (*parma*), and a helmet of leather (*galea*). The soldier had beneath his armour his tunic (*tunica*), a thick, woollen under-garment reaching nearly to the knees. His cloak (*sagum*) was of heavy, woollen stuff, fastened by a brooch on the shoulder, and open in front. The cloak of the general was called *paludamentum*.

The standards of the Roman army were : (a) *Aquila*, *Standards*. or eagle, the standard of the legion. This was of gold, silver, or bronze, with expanded wings. See Vocabulary ; *Aquilifer*. To lose the eagle was a great disgrace. The standard of the maniples was called (b) *signum*, and was of various designs, sometimes a wolf, dog, horse, serpent, figure of victory, &c. (c) The *vexillum* was a square or oblong banner carried by the cavalry.

The *musical instruments* of the army were : (a) *tuba*, *Musical instruments*. trumpet, was straight and deep-toned. This was used for the signals of advance and retreat for infantry (b) *cornu* and *buccina* were crooked, and had a shriller note, and generally used to indicate a change of watch ; (c) *lituus*, was formed like an augur's staff, and used for cavalry.

## V.

## THE ARMY ON THE MARCH.

The army on the march may be divided into three divisions ; (a) *agmen primum*, or van ; (b) *exercitus*, *agmen legionum*, or main body ; (c) *agmen novissimum*, or rear. The van was generally composed of light armed troops of infantry or cavalry. Their chief duty was to find out the force of the enemy, or to hold the enemy at bay until the main body should arrive. The main body with the baggage train (*impedimenta*), followed. The rear generally consisted of cavalry or light armed troops.

The average march (*iter iustum*) was from six to seven hours, or from fifteen to twenty miles a day. On the forced march the soldiers often covered fifty miles a day.

On the march, the soldier carried two Roman pecks of grain (*frumentum*), cooking utensils (*vasa*), his arms, blanket, and two rampart stakes (*valli*). The private baggage of the soldier was called *sarcina*.

## VI.

## THE ARMY IN CAMP.

When the army was on the march, men (*metatores*) were sent forward to select a suitable place for a camp. If possible, a high ground (*locus superior*) was sought.

The camp was usually square or oblong. An embankment (*vallum*), formed from the ground thrown up from trench (*fossa*), surrounded the camp. The camp had four gates : (1) *porta praetoria*, near the praetorium, or general's tent, faced the enemy ; (2) *porta decumana* was opposite to this ; (3) *porta principalis sinistra* on the left ; and (4) *porta principalis dextra* on the right. Connecting these two latter gates was the *via principalis*, and parallel to the street was the *via quintana*. Connecting the *porta praetoria* and *porta decumana* was the *via praetoria*.

The pickets were generally called *excubitores*; *vigiliae* were night watches; *custodiae* were sentinels to guard some particular post.

The average pay was about  $6\frac{1}{4}$  cents per day. Caesar doubled this. A centurion received 25 cents per day. Besides the regular pay Caesar often gave them the money that accrued from the sale of booty.

---

## EXPLANATION OF DIAGRAM.

---

1. *Praetorium*, or General's tent.
2. Ground for horses and baggage of the *Tribuni militum*.
3. Tents of the *Tribuni militum*.
4. Ground occupied by horses and baggage of *praefecti sociorum*.
5. Tents of *praefecti sociorum*.
6. Street 100 feet wide, called *principia* or *via principalis*.
7. Cross street, 50 feet wide, on both sides of which were the tents of the Roman *equites* or horse.
8. The *equites* of two Roman legions, in 10 *turnae* or troops each.
9. The *triarii* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each, forming on two different streets.
10. The two streets, each 50 feet wide, between the *triarii* and *principes* of two legions.
11. The *principes* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each.
12. The *hastati* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each.
13. Two streets, each 50 feet wide, between the *hastati* of the two Roman legions and the horse (*equites*) of the allies.
14. The horse of the allies.
15. The infantry of the allies.
16. The *quintana via*, a street 50 feet wide.
17. *Quaestorium*, the quaestor's tent.
18. The tents of *legati*; in front of them and the *quaestorium* was the *forum* where things were sold.
19. The veteran horse (*evocati equites*).
20. The veteran foot (*evocati pedites*).
21. The horse of the consular life guards (*ablecti equites*).
22. The foot of the consular life guards (*ablecti pedites*).
23. A cross street, 100 feet wide.
24. A street, 50 feet wide.
25. *Extraordinarii equites*, a part of the allied horse to serve in consul's body guard.
26. *Extraordinarii pedites*, a part of the allied foot to serve in consul's body guard.
27. Quarters for strangers coming into camp.
28. A span of 200 feet between tents and rampart.
29. Rampart (*vallum*).
30. Ditch (*fossa*), 9 feet deep, 12 feet wide.
31. *Porta principalis dextra*.
32. *Porta principalis sinistra*.
33. *Porta decumana*.
34. *Porta praetoria*.
35. A transverse breastwork protecting the gates.

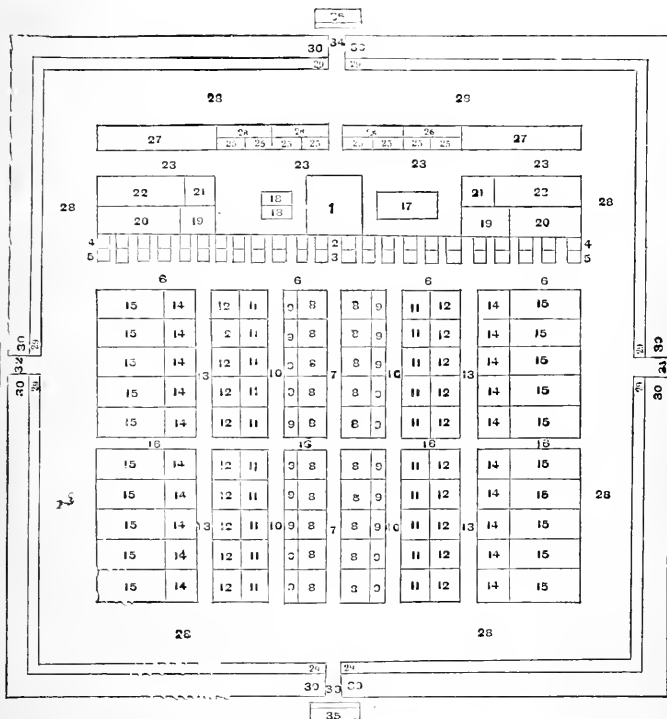


DIAGRAM OF CAMP.



# SYNOPSIS OF BOOKS I.-IV.,

ADAPTED FOR BEGINNERS.

---

## FIRST CAMPAIGN—58 B.C.

*Caesar's Description of Gaul.*

Gallia est omnis dīvisā in partes tres, quarum unam incōlunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui Galli appellantur. Hi omnes linguā. institutis, lēgibus inter se diffērunt.

Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen dīvidit ; a Belgis Matrōna et Sēquāna. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterēā quod a cultu atque humanitate Provinciae longissimē absunt minimēque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant. Proximi sunt Germānis qui trans Rhenum incōlunt, quibuscum Belgae continenter bellum gerunt. Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtutē praecēdunt.

## THE HELVETIAN WAR.

*Conspiracy of Orgetorix.*

Messala et Pisone consūlibus, (58 B.C.) Orgetorix, qui nobilissimus Helvetiorum fuit, civitati persuasit ut e finibus suis excederent. Hoc fecit regni cupiditate inductus. Castico, Sequano, itemque Dumnorigi, Aeduo, ut regnum in civitatibus suis occuparent persuadet. Hi per tres potentissimos populos totius Galliae sese potiri posse spērant.

Ea res est Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata. Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt. Sed Orgetorix, cum civitas suum ius exsequi conaretur, mortuus est. Ut Helvetii arbitrantur, sibi mortem conscivit.

*The Helvetii leave home and are conquered.*

Post eius mortem, nihilomīnus Helvetii e finibus suis excedere conati sunt. Per Provinciam iter facere volebant. Caesar, qui tum in Gallia citeriore erat, in Galliam ulteriorem cum legionibus

quinque contendit et pontem, qui erat ad Genavam, rescindi iussit. Deinde a lacu Lemanno ad montem Iuram murum fossamque perducit. Ea spe deiecti, per Sequanos Helvetii iter fecerunt. In fines Aeduorum pervenerunt eorumque agros populabantur. Aedui autem socii et amici Populi Romani erant. Caesar Helvetios secutus flumen Ararim transeuntes in fugam dedit.

Interea Dumnorigi, Aeduo, custodes Caesar ponit quod civitatem suam ne frumentum daret deterreret. Helvetii, apud Bibracte, Aeduorum oppidum, iterum superati, pacem petiērunt atque domum reverti iussi sunt.

#### THE GERMAN WAR.

##### *Ariovistus expelled from Gaul.*

Eodem anno Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, Rhenum exercitum transduxit atque superbe et crudeliter Gallis imperabat. Galli a Caesare auxilium petunt. Ariovistum, proelio facto, Rhenum transire et domum redire Caesar coegit.

Ita unā aestate, duobus maximis bellis confectis, Caesar in citeriorem Galliam ad conventūs agendos profectus est.

#### SECOND CAMPAIGN—57 B.C.

#### THE BELGIAN WAR.

Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia, ad eum rumores afferebantur, omnes Belgas contra Populum Romānum coniurare. His nuntiis commotus, duas novas lēgiones conscripsit et initā aestate in ulteriorem Galliam misit. Ipse, cum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Diebus circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervēnit. Eo cum de improvviso venisset, Remi legatos miserunt et se suaque omnia in potestatem Populi Romāni permisērunt.

Flumen Axōnam Caesar exercitum transduxit et cum Belgae Bibrax, oppidum Remorum, expugnare conarentur, eos superavit.

##### *Fierce engagement with the Nervii.*

Suessionibus Bellovacisque in deditionem acceptis, in fines Nerviorum iter fecit. Cum iis proelium apud flumen Sabim committit. Quo in proelio ubi Caesar rem esse in angusto vīdit, scutum militi detraxit et in primam aciem processit. Cuius adventu spes

illata est et proelium redintegratum. Hostes vero etiam in extremā spe magnam virtutem praestiterunt. Jacentibus enim suis insistebant atque ex eorum corporibus pugnabant. Hoc proelio prope ad internecionem gens ac nomen Nerviorum redactum est.

Omni Galliā pacatā, in Italiam Caesar profectus est.

### THIRD CAMPAIGN—56 B.C.

#### THE VENETIAN WAR.

Cum omnibus de causis Caesar pacatam Galliam existimaret, subitum bellum in Gallia coortum est. Venēti, cuius est civitatis amplissima auctoritas omnis orae maritimae, Silium et Velanium, tribunos militum, retinent. Caesar, ab Crasso legato certior factus, naves aedificari in flumine Ligere iussit. Veneti bellum parant.

#### *Strength of the Venetian ships.*

Ipsorum naves ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque accommodatae sunt. Totae sunt factae ex robore, atque carinae aliquanto planiores quam nostrarum navium. Neque enim his nostrae rostro nocēre poterant, tanta in iis erat firmitudo.

#### *Victory for Caesar.*

Una tamen res magno usui fuit nostris, falces praeacutae longuriis insertae. His funes, qui antennis ad malos destinabant, comprehensi sunt. Navigio deinde remis incitato, funes praerumpebantur, antennae concidebant. Reliquum erat certamen positum in virtute, qua nostri milites facile superabant. Quo proelio bellum Veneticum confectum est.

### FOURTH CAMPAIGN—55 B.C.

#### CAESAR CROSSES THE RHINE.

Eā quae secuta est hieme, Pompeio et Crasso consulibus, Usipetes et Tencteri, Germani, flumen Rhenum transierunt. Causa transeundi fuit quod ab Suebis bello premebantur. Sueborum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum. Haud multum frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt. Vinum ad se importari non sinunt. Usipetes et Tencteri, ab Suebis expulsi, agros et aedificia Menapiorum, qui ad utramque ripam flumine incolebant, occupaverunt.

His de rebus Caesar certior factus, atque infirmitatem Gallorum veritus, ad exercitum proficiscitur. Germanis superatis, pontem trans Rhenum faciendum curavit et exercitum transduxit. Diebus decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis se in Galliam recepit pontemque rescidit.

#### FIRST ROMAN INVASION OF BRITAIN.

##### *Preliminary enquiries.*

Exiguā parte aestatis reliquā, Caesar tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod, in omnibus fere Gallicis bellis, hostibus nostris inde subministrata esse auxilia intellegebat. Mercatoribus ad se vocatis, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli habērent, neque qui essent idonei portūs, reperire poterat.

C. Volusenum cum nāvi longā ad haec cognoscenda praemittit. Huic mandat ut exploratis omnibus rebus ad se revertatur.

*Caesar repairs to the coast—The Britons thither send ambassadors.*

Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Mōrinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam traiectus. Huc naves undique et classem quam ad Venēticum bellum effecerat convenire iubet. Interim legati ab Britannis ad eum veniunt et obsides dare pollicentur. Liberāliter pollicitus, eos dōmum remittit.

##### *Caesar crosses the Channel.*

Nactus idoneam ad nāvigandum tempestatem, nāvibus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis, tertiā fere vigiliā solvit. Equites in ulteriorem portum, qui ex eo lōco ab milibus passuum octo aberat, progrēdi et ibi naves onerarias duodeviginti conscendere iussit. Ipse horā circiter diei quartā cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit.

##### *His landing opposed.*

Ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Ad horam nonam expectavit. Tum ventum et aestum nactus secundum, dāto signo, sublātis ancōris, circiter milia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus est. Barbāri, consilio eius cognīto, cum equitatu, essedariis, reliquis copiis subsecuti, nostros ēgrēdi prohibebant.

*Fight on the shore—Brave conduct of a centurion.*

Summa erat difficultas egrediendi. Nostri inusitato Britannorum genere pugnae perterriti non eādem alacritate, qua uti consuērant, utebantur. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit naves longas removeri ab onerariis, et remis incitari iussit. Navium figurā et remorum motu permoti, barbari pēdem rētulērunt. Nostris cunctantibus, is qui decimae lēgionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos, “Desilite,” inquit, “milites, nīsi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere. Ego certe meum reipublicae atque imperatori officium praestitero.” Hoc cum voce magnā dixisset, se ex navi proiecit atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri universi ex navi desiluerunt. Simul in arido constiterunt, in hostes impetum fecerunt atque eos in fugam dederunt. Longius vero prosequi non potuērunt quod equites insulam capere non potuērunt.

*The Britons pardoned,*

Hostes proelio superati, ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt. Caesar ignoscere se imprudentiae dixit et obsides imperavit.

*but, learning of Caesar's difficulties, they renew the war.*

Die quarto postquam in Britanniam Caesar vēnit, naves octodecim, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu solverunt. Quae cum appropinquarent Britanniae, tempestas coorta est atque continentem petere coactae sunt. Eādem nocte naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportaverat, tempestas afflictabat.

Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae rebellionem fecerunt.

*Caesar again suppresses them, and returns to the continent.*

At Caesar naves omnes, praeter duodecim quae amissae erant, refecit et, Britannis iterum proelio superatis, obsidum numerum duplicavit eosque in continentem adduci iussit. Paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit. Quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt.

---

# EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION

## INTRODUCTORY TO

### BOOK V.

#### Exercise 1.

1. Domitius et Claudius consules erant.
2. Domitio et Claudio consulibus, Caesar in Italiam discedit.
3. Legātos lēgionibus praefecerat.
4. Discedens ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, his legatis imperat ut nāves aedificarent.
5. Legatos naves aedificare iubet Caesar.
6. Naves quam plurimas aedificare iussi sunt legati. )

#### Exercise 2.

1. Legati, quos legionibus praefecerat, naves aedificant veteresque reficiunt.
2. Legatis naves aedificandae sunt veteresque reficiendae.
3. Naves aedificandas veteresque reficiendas curant legati.
4. Legatos praefecit exercitui ad naves aedificandas.
5. Naves ab legatis aedificatae sunt.
6. Ad celeritatem onerandi paulo facit humiliores ; ad onera transportanda latiores.
7. In nostro mari navibus humilibus atque latis non utimur.
8. Has naves facit humiliores atque latiores quam quae sunt in nostro mari.
9. Humiliores eas faciunt quam quibus utimur.
10. Latioribus navibus Galli in Oceāno ūti consuēverunt.

#### Exercise 3.

1. Multae res sunt usui hominibus ad naves aedificandas.
2. Ea quae sunt usui ad armandas naves ex Hispāniā apportari iubet.

3. Naves omnes actuarias fieri imperat.
4. Actuarias eas facere legatos iubet.
5. Militibus uti naves actuarias faciant imperat.
6. Quam ad rem humilitas adiuvat. ✕

**Exercise 4.**

1. Conventūs iam peracti erant. In Illyricum proficiscitur Caesar.

2. Conventibus peractis, in Illyricum proficiscitur.
3. Pirustae partem provinciae vastabant.
4. Parte provinciae a Pirustis vastata, Caesar profectus est.
5. Pirustas provinciam vastare audiebat.
6. Pars provinciae vastabatur a Pirustis.
7. Partem provinciae vastari audiebat.
8. Pars iam vastata erat. Partem vastatam esse audivit.

**Exercise 5.**

1. Eo pervēnit. Eo cum vēnisset, civitatibus ut milites darent imperat. Hos milites certum in locum ad se convenire iubet.

2. Quae res Pirustis nuntiata est. Legatos ad Caesarem mittunt. Hi ita cum eo agunt (*plead*); "Nihil earum rerum publico factum est consilio. Nos parati sumus de iniuriis satisfacere."

3. Legatos mittunt qui haec docent.
4. Legatos mittunt qui haec doceant.
5. Docent nihil factum esse; sese paratos esse satisfacere.
6. Qua re nuntiata, Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant nihil publico factum esse consilio. Sese paratos esse de iniuriis satisfacere demonstrant.

**Exercise 6.**

1. Percepta est oratio eorum. Caesar obsides imperat.
2. Pirustis ut obsides darent imperat. Eos ad se adduci iubet.
3. "Nisi," inquit, "ita feceritis, ego bello vos persequar."
4. Percepta hanc oratione, Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad se adduci iubet. Nisi ita fecissent se bello eos persecuturum esse demonstravit. ✕

5. Obsidibus adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat qui litem aestiment (*note the mood*) poenamque constituent.

6. Hi sunt arbitri qui litem aestimant (*note the mood*) poenamque constituent.

### Exercise 7.

(Chap. 8.)

1. His rebus gestis, Labieno in continente relicto, ipse ad solis occasum naves solvit. Leni Africo proventus est. Mediā circiter nocte, ventus intermittitur. Vento intermisso cursum non tenet et longius aëre delatus est. Ortā luce, sub sinistram (*on his left*) Britanniam relictam conspexit.

2. Caesar legato, quid fieri velit, ostendit.

3. Hoc est quod Caesar vult.

4. Ea, quae in Gallia gerebantur, Labienus cognovit.

5. Quae in Gallia gererentur cognovit.

6. Relictus est ut, quae in Gallia gererentur, cognosceret et consilium pro tempore caperet.

### Exercise 8.

(Chap. 9.)

1. Militum virtus laudata est ab imperatōre.

2. Laudanda est militum virtus imperatori.

3. Quo in loco hostium copiae consederunt?

4. Ex captivis cognovit quo in loco hostium copiae consedisent.

5. Cohortibus decem ad mare relictis, progressus milia passuum circiter duodecim, hostium copias conspicatus est.

6. Illi, ad flumen progressi, proelium committere coeperunt.

7. Repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt, locum nacti munitionem.

8. At milites, testudine factā, eos ex silvis expulerunt, paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes Caesar prosequi vetuit.

9. Postridie eius diei milites equitesque misit ut eos persequerentur.

10. Naves afflictae sunt quod neque ancorae subsistebant neque nautae vim tempestatis pati poterant.

11. His aliquantum itineris progressis, equites ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent (*note the subjunctive*) superiore nocte, coortā tempestate, naves afflictas esse, quod neque ancorae subsisterent neque nautae vim tempestatis pati possent.



C. JULIUS CAESAR.

C. IULI CAESARIS  
DE BELLO GALLICO  
COMMENTARIORUM  
LIBER QUINTUS.

CH. 1-7.—CAESAR IN GAUL PREPARES FOR THE 2ND INVASION OF  
BRITAIN; WINTER OF 55-54 B.C.

CH. 8-23.—SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN, 54 B.C.

CH. 24-58.—ATTACK ON THE WINTER CAMPS IN GAUL.

*Caesar leaves directions for building a fleet on the coast. Departs  
for Illyricum to quiet the Pirustae, 1. Returns and finds  
satisfactory progress. Marches against the Treveri, 2-4.  
Caesar, at Portus Itius, prepares to sail, 5. Dumnorix, the  
Aeduan, gives trouble and is slain, 6, 7.*

I.—L. Domitio, Ap. Claudio consūlibus discēdens ab  
Caesar orders  
a fleet to be  
built. hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere con-  
suērat, legatis impērat, quos lēgionibus praefecerat,  
uti, quam plurimas possent, hieme nāves aedificandas vetēresque  
reficiendas curarent. Earum mōdum formamque demonstrat.  
Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paulo facit humiliores,

quam quibus in nostro mări uti consuevimus, atque id eo mägis, quod propter crēbras commutationes aestuum mīnus magnos ibi fluctūs fiēri cognoverat; ad onera ac multitudinem iumentorum transportandam paulo latiores, quam quibus in reliquis utimur maribus. Has omnes actuarias impērat fieri, quam ad rem humilitas multum adiūvat. Ea, quae sunt ūsui ad armandas naves,

The Pirustae  
give hostages.

ex Hispānia adportari iūbet. Ipse conventibus Galliae citerioris peractis in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in lōcum convenire iubet, Quā rē nuntiātā Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui dōceānt, nihil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus rationibus de iniuriis satisfacere. Perceptā oratione eorum Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam diem addūci iubet; nīsi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demonstrat. Iis ad diem adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui litem aestiment poenamque constituent.

II.—His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis, in citiorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis singulari militum studio in summā omnium rerum inōpiā circiter sexcentas eius generis, cuius supra demonstravimus, naves et longas viginti octo invenit instructas, neque multum abesse ab eo, quā paucis diebus deduci possint. Colaudatis militibus, iis, qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit ostendit atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire iubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam traiectum esse cognoverat, circiter mīlium passuum triginta a continenti: huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum, reliquit. Ipse cum lēgionibus expeditis quattuor et equitibus octingentis in fines Trēvērorum proficiscitur, quod hi nēque ad concilia veniebant neque imperio parebant Germanōsque Transrhenānos sollicitare dicebantur.

The Treveri  
and their rival  
Chieftains.

III.—Haec civitās longe plurimum totius Galliae Rhēnumque, ut suprā demonstravimus, tangit. In ea civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomarus et

Cingetorix; e quibus alter, simul atque de Caesaris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum vēnit, se suosque omnes in officio futuros neque ab amicitia populi Romani defecturos confirmavit, quaeque in Treveris gererentur, ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere iisque, qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per mēdios fines Treverorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parare instituit. Sed postēāquam nonnulli principes ex ea civitate et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitūs perterriti ad Caesarem vērunt et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consūlere non possent: veritus, ne ab omnibus desereretur, Indutiomarus legatos ad Caesarem mittit: Sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, (quo facilius civitatem in officio continerēt, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam, lāberetur: itaque esse civitatem in suā potestate, seseque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, suas civitatisque fortunas eius fidei permissurum.

Cingetorix  
honored and  
Indutiomarus  
offended.

IV.—Caesar, etsi intellegebat, quā de causā ea dicerentur quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio detererēt, tamen, nē aestatem in Treveris consumere cogeretur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus vērere iussit. His adductis, in iis filio propinquisque eius omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consōlatus Indutiomarum hortatusque est, ūti in officio manerēt; nihil tamen scēius principibus Treverorum ad se convocātis hōs singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit, quod cum merito eius a se fieri intellegebat, tum magni interesse arbitrabatur, eius auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valēre, cuius tam ēgrēgiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. Id tūlit factum grāviter Indutiomarus, suam grātiā inter suos minui, et, qui iam ante inimico in nos animo fuisset, multo grāvius hoc dolōre exarsit.

V.—His rebus constitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervēnit. Ibi cognoscit, quadraginta naves, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestate reiectas cursum tenēre non potuisse atque eodē, unde erant profectae, re-

caus scēius

vertisse; reliquas paratas ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas invēnit. Eodem equitatus totius Galliae convēnit numero 124(e) milium quattuor principesque ex omnibus civitatibus; ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obsidum loco secum dūcere decreverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebatur.

VI.—Erat unā cum ceteris Dumnorix Aeduus, de quo ante ab nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis cognoverat. Accedebat huc, quod in concilio Aeduorum Dumnorix dixerat, sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum Aedui graviter ferebant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causā legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primo precibus petere contendit, ut in Gallia relinqueretur, partim quod insuetus navigandi mare timeret, partim quod religionibus impediri sese diceret. Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari vidit, omni spe impetrandi ademptā, principes Galliae sollicitare, sevocare singulos, hortarique coepit, uti in continenti remanerent; metu territare: non sine causā fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur; id esse consilium Caesaris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam traductos necaret; fidem reliquis interponere, iusiurandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Haec a compluribus ad Caesarem deferrebantur.

VII.—Quā re cognitā Caesar, quod tantum civitati Aeduae dignitatis tribuebat, coercendum atque deterrendum, quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuere; quod longius eius amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum, ne quid sibi ac reipublicae nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter viginti quinque in eo loco commoratus, quod Corus ventus navigationem impediēbat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam, ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret, nihilo tamen secius omnia eius consilia cognosceret; tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem milites equitesque conscendere in naves iubet. At omnium impeditis animis Dumnorix cum

932  
 equitibus Aeduorum a castris insciente Caesare domum discedere coepit. Quā re nuntiātā, Caesar intermissā profectione atque omnibus rebus postpositis magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat; si vim faciat neque pareat, 24 2  
 interfici iubet, nihil hunc se absente pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. Ille enim revocatus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare coepit, saepe clamitans, liberum se liberaeque esse civitatis. Illi, ut erat imperatum, 81 a 1  
 95 circumstant hominem atque interficiunt; at equites Aedui ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

## SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN.—CH. 8-23.

Caesar's second landing in Britain. 54 B.C. 43  
 VIII.—His rebus gestis, Labieno in continente cum tribus legionibus et equitum milibus duobus relicto, ut portus tueretur et rem frumentariam provideret, quaeque in Gallia gererentur, cognosceret consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari numero equitum, quem in continenti reliquerat, ad solis occasum naves solvit et leni Africo provectus, media circiter nocte vento intermisso, cursum non tenuit et longius delatus aestu orta luce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus aestus commutationem secutus remis contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. Qua in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis non intermisso remigandi labore 4 a  
 longarum navium cursum adaequarunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fere tempore, neque in eo loco hostis est visus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis cognovit, cum magnae manus eo convenissent, multitudine navium peterritae, quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, 50 b  
 3 c amplius octingentae uno erant visae tempore, a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant. x

The Britons oppose his march inland. IX.—Caesar exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo 82 c  
 capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit, eo minus veritus navibus, quod in litore molli 23 20  
 20 d

atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat, et praesidio navi-  
busque Quintum Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctu progressus milia  
passuum circiter duodecim hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi equi-  
 tatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi ex loco superiore nostros  
 prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu  
 se in silvas abdiderunt, locum nacti egregie et natura et opere  
 munitum, quem domestici belli, ut videbantur, causā iam ante  
 praeparaverant: nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes introitus erant  
 praeclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant nostrosque intra  
 munitiones ingredi prohibebant. At milites legionis septimae  
 testudine facta et aggere ad munitiones adiecto locum ceperunt  
 eosque ex silvis expulerunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos  
 fugientes longius Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam  
 ignorabat, et quod, magna parte diei consumpta, munitioni  
 castrorum tempus relinqui volebat.

X.—Postridie eius diei mane tripertito milites equi-  
 tesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant,  
 persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis,  
 cum iam extremi essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio  
 ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent, superiore nocte maximā  
 coortā tempestate prope omnes naves adfictas atque in litore  
 eiectas esse, quod neque ancorae funesque subsisterent neque  
 nautae gubernatoresque vim pati tempestatis possent: itaque ex eo  
 concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

XI.—His rebus cognitis Caesar legiones equitatum-  
 que revocari atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad  
 naves revertitur; eadem fere, quae ex nuntiis litterisque  
 cognoverat, coram perspicit, sic ut amissis circiter quadraginta navi-  
 bus reliquae tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. Itaque  
 ex legionibus fabros deligit et ex continenti alios arcessiri iubet;  
 Labieno scribit, ut, quam plurimas posset, iis legionibus, quae sunt  
 apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac  
 laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnes naves subduci  
 et cum castris una munitione coniungi. In his rebus circiter  
 dies decem consumit, ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem  
 militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregie munitis  
 easdem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus reliquit, ipse eodem,

unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, maiores iam undique in eum locum copiae Britannorum convenerant, summa imperii bellicae administrandi communi consilio <sup>Cassivellaunus.</sup> permissa Cassivellauno; cuius fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter milia passuum octoginta. Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant. manner 124 b

## DESCRIPTION OF BRITAIN.—CH. 12, 13, 14.

<sup>Imp</sup> XII.—Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos <sup>The people.</sup> natos in insula ipsi <sup>memoria</sup> proditum dicunt, maritima pars ab iis, qui praedae causā ex Belgis transierant—qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt—et bello illato ibi permanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo creberrimae aedificia fere Gallicis consimilia; pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed eius exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato. Materia cuiusque generis, ut in Gallia, est praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causa. Loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia, remissioribus frigoribus. 122.9

<sup>Imp</sup> XIII.—Insula naturā triquetra, cuius unum latus est <sup>The island.</sup> contra Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves appellantur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter milia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, dimidio minor, ut existimatur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatio transmissus, atque ex Gallia est, in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula quae appellatur Mona; complures praeterea minores subiectae insulae existimantur; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt, dies continuos triginta sub bruma esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse quam in continenti noctes videbamus. Huius est longitudo lateris, ut fert 124 d

118  
 illorum opinio, septingentorum milium. Tertium est contra septen- 115  
 triones; cui parti nulla est obiecta terra, sed ejus angulus lateris  
 maxime ad Germaniam spectat. Hoc milia passuum octingenta in  
 longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu  
 vicies centum milium passuum. 113

Imp  
 Manners and  
 customs.

XIV.—Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui  
 Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis neque  
 multum a Gallicā differunt consuetudine. Interiores plerique fru-  
 menta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti.  
 Omnes vero se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit  
 colorem, atque hoc horridiores sunt in pugna aspectu; capilloque  
 sunt promisso atque omni parte corporis rasā praeter caput et  
 labrum superius. Uxores habent deni duodenique inter se com-  
 munes, et maxime fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum liberis;  
 sed si qui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primum virgo  
 quaeque deducta est.

#### THE WAR CONTINUES.

246  
 More fighting;  
 a surprise;  
 death of a tri-  
 bune.

XV.—Equites hostium essedarii acriter proelio 125  
 cum equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt, tamen ut  
 nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in  
 silvas collesque compulerint; sed compluribus interfectis cupidius  
 insecuti nonnullos ex suis amiserunt. At illi, intermisso spatio,  
 imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione castrorum,  
 subito se ex silvis eiecerunt impetuque in eos facto, qui erant in  
 statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt, duabusque missis  
 subsidio cohortibus a Caesare, atque his primis legionum duarum,  
 cum hae perexiguo intermisso spatio inter se constitissent, nova  
 genere pugnae perterritis nostris per medios audacissime perrupe-  
 runt seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius  
 Durus tribunus militum interficitur. Illi pluribus submissis cohorti-  
 bus repelluntur.

Diff  
 British mode  
 of fighting.

XVI.—Toto hoc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis  
 omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est,  
 nostros propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes,  
 possent neque ab signis discedere auderent, minus aptos esse ad  
 huius generis hostem, equites autem magno cum periculo proelio

dimicare, propterea quod illi etiam consulto plerumque cederent et, cum paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essedis desili-<sup>place and manner</sup> rent et pedibus dispari proelio contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Accedebat huc, ut nunquam conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis proeliarentur stationesque dispositas haberent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent integrique et recentes defatigatis succederent.

XVII.—Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constiterunt rarique se ostendere et lenius quam pridie nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed meridie, cum Caesar pabulandi causā tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Caio Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic uti ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri acriter in eos impetu facto reppulerunt neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi equites, cum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt, magnoque eorum numero interfecto neque sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fuga protinus, quae undique convenerant, auxilia discesserunt, neque post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

Caesar crosses the Thames.

XVIII.—Caesar cognito consilio eorum ad flumen Tamesim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo cum venisset, animadvertit ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas. Ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita, eiusdemque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perflugisque Caesar praemisso equitatu confestim legiones subsequi iussit. Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, cum capite solo ex aqua extarent, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

**I M P.** XIX.—Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentionis, dimissis amplioribus copiis, milibus circiter quattuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat paulumque ex via excedebat locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat atque iis regionibus, quibus nos

iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat et, cum equitatus noster liberius praedandi vastandique causâ se in agros eiecerat, omnibus viis semitisque <sup>inter vias</sup> essedarios ex silvis emittebat et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum <sup>by the</sup> cum his confligebat atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. ✓ Relinquebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar pateretur, et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

X. <sup>The Trinobantes submit to Caesar.</sup> XX.—Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, ex qua Mandubratius adulescens Caesaris fidem secutus ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat, cuius pater in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fuga mortem vitaverat, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque, sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos; petunt, ut Mandubratium ab iniuria Cassivellauni defendat atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui Mandubratiumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

So do other tribes. <sup>A British "town."</sup> XXI.—Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum iniuria prohibitis, Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi legationibus missis sese Caesari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit, non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus conveniret. Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossâ munierunt, quo incursionis hostium vitandae causâ convenire consuerunt. Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus; locum reperit egregie natura atque opere munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt seseque alia ex parte oppidi eiecerunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

173 <sup>Four Kentish kings defeated.</sup> XXII.—Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quattuor reges praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segonax, nuntios mittit atque



is derived from *endo* to cut

Gen. *Co. Rub.*  
Cor. *quod*

*quantus* } words denoting size.  
*qualis* } " " character

Locative case denotes place at which and  
is same form as gen. sing & is used  
only with <sup>names</sup> nouns of first & second declension.  
the sing

his imperat, uti coactis omnibus copiis castra navalia de improvise adorian<sup>27</sup>tur atque oppugnant. Ii cum ad castra venissent, nostri eruptione facta multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige, suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus hoc proelio nuntiato tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum constituisset hiemare in continenti propter repentinos Galliae motus, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intellexeret, obsides imperat et, quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Romano Britannia penderet, constituit; interdicat atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubratio neu Trinobantibus noceat. 27

XXIII.—Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat et nonnullae tempestate deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. [Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero tot navigationibus neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis, quae milites portare, desideraretur, at ex iis, quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, et prioris commeatus expositis militibus et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero sexaginta, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae fere omnes reicerentur. Quas cum aliquandiu Caesar frustra expectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario angustius milites collocavit ac, summam tranquillitate consecuta, secundam inita cum solvisset vigiliam, primam luce terram attigit omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.]

CAESAR, AGAIN IN GAUL—ATTACK ON THE WINTER CAMPS—  
WINTER OF 54-53 B.C.

XXIV.—Subductis navibus concilioque Gallorum Samarobri<sup>125</sup>vae peracto, quod eo anno frumentum in Gallia propter siccitates angustius provenerat, coactus est aliter ac superioribus annis exercitum in hibernis collocare legionesque in plures civitates distribuere. Ex quibus unam in Morinos ducendam Caio Fabio legato dedit, alteram in Nervios Quinto Ciceroni, tertiam in Esubios Lucio Roscio; quartam in

Remis cum Tito Labieno in confinio Treverorum hiemare iussit ; tres in Bellovacis collocavit ; his Marcum Crassum quaestorem et Lucium Munatium Plancum et Caium Trebonium legatos praefecit. Unam legionem, quam proxime trans Padum conscripserat, et cohortes quinque in Eburones, quorum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio Ambiorigis et Catuvolci erant, misit. His militibus Quintum Titurium Sabinum et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distributis legionibus facillime inopiae frumentariae sese mederi posse existimavit. Atque harum tamen omnium legionum hiberna praeter eam, quam Lucio Roscio in pacatissimam et quietissimam partem ducendam dederat, milibus passuum centum continebantur. Ipse interea, quoad legiones collocatas munitaque hiberna cognovisset, in Gallia morari constituit.

Murder of Tasgetius.

XXV.—Erat in Carnutibus summo loco natus Tasgetius, cuius maiores in sua civitate regnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar pro eius virtute atque in se benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulari eius opera fuerat usus, maiorum locum restituerat. [Tertium iam hunc annum regnantem inimici multis palam ex civitate auctoribus interfecerunt.] Defertur ea res ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plures pertinebat, ne civitas eorum impulsu deficeret, Lucium Plancum cum legione ex Belgio celeriter in Carnutes proficisci iubet ibique hiemare, quorumque opera cognoverat Tasgetium interfectum, eos comprehensos ad se mittere. Interim ab omnibus legatis quaestoreque, quibus legiones tradiderat, certior factus est, in hiberna perventum locumque hibernis esse munitum.

#### SABINUS AND COTTA ATTACKED.—CH. 26, 27.

Revolt of Ambiorix and Catuvolcus.

XXVI.—Diebus circiter quindecim, quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentini tumultus ac defectionis ortum est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolco ; qui, cum ad fines regni sui Sabino Cottaeque praesto fuissent frumentumque in hiberna comportavissent, Indutiomari Treveri nuntiis impulsu suos concitaverunt subitoque oppressis lignatoribus magna manu ad castra oppugnatum venerunt. Cum celeriter nostri arma cepissent vallumque adscendissent atque una ex parte Hispanis equitibus

emissis equestri proelio superiores fuissent, desperatā re hostes suos ab oppugnatione reduxerunt. Tum suo more conclamaverunt, ut aliqui ex nostris ad colloquium prodirent; habere sese, quae de re communi dicere vellent, quibus rebus controversias minui posse sperarent.

Negotiations  
with the Gauls.

XXVII.—Mittitur ad colloquendi causā Caius

Arpineius eques Romanus, familiaris Quinti Titurii, et Quintus Iunius ex Hispania quidam, qui iam ante missu Caesaris ad Ambiorigem ventitare consueverat; apud quos Ambiorix ad hunc modum locutus est; Sese pro Caesaris in se beneficiis plurimum ei confiteri debere, quod eius operā stipendio liberatus esset, quod Aduatucis, finitimis suis, pendere consuesset, quodque ei et filius et fratris filius ab Caesare remissi essent, quos Aduatuci obsidum numero missos apud se in servitute et catenis tenuissent; neque id quod fecerit de oppugnatione castrorum, aut iudicio aut voluntate suā fecisse, sed coactu civitatis, suaque esse eiusmodi imperia, ut non minus haberet iuris in se multitudo, quam ipse in multitudinem. Civitati porro hanc fuisse belli causam, quod repentinae Gallorum coniurationi resistere non potuerit. Id se facile ex humilitate sua probare posse, quod non adeo sit imperitus rerum, ut suis copiis populum Romanum superari posse confidat. Sed esse Galliae commune consilium: omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, ne qua legio alterae legioni subsidio venire posset. Non facile Gallos Gallis negare potuisse, praesertim cum de recuperandā communi libertate consilium initum videretur.

Quibus quoniam pro pietate satisfecerit, habere hunc se rationem officii pro beneficiis Caesaris; monere, orare Titurium pro hospitio, ut suae ac militum salutem consulat. Magnam manum Germanorum conductam Rhenum transisse; hanc adfore biduo. Ipsorum esse consilium, velintne prius, quam finitimi sentiant, eductos ex hibernis milites aut ad Ciceronem aut ad Labienum deducere, quorum alter milia passuum circiter quinquaginta, alter paulo amplius ab iis absit. Illud se polliceri et iure iurando confirmare, tutum iter, per fines daturum. Quod cum faciat et civitati sese consulere, quod hibernis levetur, et Caesari pro eius meritis gratiam referre. Hāc oratione habitā discedit Ambiorix.

Ambiorix ten-  
ders advice.

## DISPUTE BETWEEN SABINUS AND COTTA.—CH. 28—31.

A council of  
war.

XXVIII.—Arpineius et Iunius, quae audierunt, ad legatos deferunt. Illi repentina re perturbati, etsi ab hoste ea dicebantur, tamen non neglegenda existimabant, maximeque hac re permovebantur, quod civitatem ignobilem, atque humilem Eburonum sua sponte populo Romano bellum facere ausam vix erat credendum. Itaque ad consilium rem deferunt, magnaue inter eos existit controversia. Lucius Aurunculeius

Cotta favors  
delay.

compluresque tribuni militum et primorum ordinum centuriones nihil temere credendum neque ex hibernis iniussu Caesaris discedendum existimabant; quantasvis copias etiam Germanorum sustineri posse munitis hibernis docebant: rem esse testimonio, quod primum hostium impetum multis ultro vulneribus inlatis fortissime sustinuerint; re frumentaria non premi; interea et ex proximis hibernis et a Caesare conventura subsidia; postremo quid esse levius aut turpius, quam auctore hoste de summis rebus capere consilium?

Sabinus urges  
a hasty retreat.

XXIX.—Contra ea Titurius sero facturos clamitabat, cum maiores manus hostium adiunctis Germanis convenissent, aut cum aliquid calamitatis in proximis hibernis esset acceptum. Brevem consulendi esse occasionem. Caesarem arbitrari profectum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnutes interficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisse capturos, neque Eburones, si ille adesset, tanta contemptione nostri ad castra venturos esse. Non hostem auctorem, sed rem spectare: subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germanis dolori Ariovisti mortem et superiores nostras victorias; ardere Galliam tot contumeliis acceptis sub populi Romani imperium redactam, superiore gloria rei militaris extincta. Postremo quis hoc sibi persuaderet, sine certa re Ambiorigem ad eiusmodi consilium descendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: si nihil esset durius, nullo periculo ad proximam legionem perventuros; si Gallia omnis cum Germanis consentiret, unam esse in celeritate positam salutem. Cottae quidem atque eorum, qui dissentirent, consilium quem habere exitum? in quo si non praesens periculum, at certe longinqua obsidione fames esset timenda.

XXX.—Hâc in utramque partem disputatione habitâ, cum a Cotta primisque ordinibus acriter resisteretur, Vincite, inquit, si ita

*vultis*, Sabinus, et id clariore voce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret; *neque is sum*, inquit, *qui gravissime ex vobis mortis periculo terrear*: *hi sapient*; *si gravius quid acciderit*, abs te *rationem reposcent*; *qui, si per te liceat*, perendino die cum *proximis hibernis coniuncti communem cum reliquis belli casum sustineant*, *non reiecti et relegati longe ab ceteris aut ferro aut fame intereant*.

Sabinus prevails.  
The counsel of the enemy is accepted.

XXXI.—*Consurgitur ex consilio*; comprehendunt utrumque et orant, ne sua dissensione et pertinacia rem in summum periculum deducant: *facilem esse rem*, seu maneant, seu proficiscantur, si modo unum omnes sentiant ac *probent*; contra in dissensione nullam se salutem perspicere. Res *disputatione* ad mediam noctem *perducitur*. Tandem dat Cotta permotus manus: *superat sententia Sabini*. Pronuntiatur, prima luce ituros. Consumitur *vigiliis* reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid secum portare posset, quid ex instrumento hibernorum relinquere cogeretur.

Departure from camp.

Omnia excogitantur, quare nec sine periculo maneatur et languore militum et vigiliis periculum augeatur. *Prima luce* sic ex castris proficiscuntur, ut quibus esset *persuasum*, non ab hoste, sed ab homine amicissimo Ambiorige consilium datum, longissimo agmine maximisque impedimentis.

#### ARMY OF SABINUS AND COTTA MASSACRED—CH. 32-37.

The ambushade.

XXXII.—At hostes, posteaquam ex nocturno fremitu vigiliisque de profectione eorum senserunt, collocatis insidiis bipertito in silvis opportuno atque occulto loco a milibus passuum circiter duobus Romanorum adventum expectabant, et cum se maior pars agminis in magnam convallem demisisset, ex utraque parte eius vallis subito se ostenderunt novissimosque premere et primos prohibere ascensu atque iniquissimo nostris loco proelium committere coeperunt.

Confusion of Sabinus; Cotta's valor.

XXXIII.—Tum demum Titurius, qui nihil ante pro-  
vidisset, *trepidare et concursare cohortesque disponere*,  
haec tamen ipsa timide atque ut eum omnia deficere viderentur; quod plerumque iis accidere consuevit, qui in ipso negotio consilium capere coguntur. At Cotta, qui cogitasset, haec

posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectionis auctor non fuisset, nulla in re communi salutis deerat: et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus imperatoris et in pugna militis officia praestabat. Cum propter longitudinem agminis minus facile omnia per se obire et, quid quoque loco faciendum esset, providere possent, iusserunt pronuntiare, ut impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem consisterent. Quod consilium etsi in eiusmodi casu reprehendendum non est, tamen incommode accidit: nam et nostris militibus spem minuit et hostes ad pugnandum alacriores effecit, quod non sine summo timore et desperatione id factum videbatur. Praeterea accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgo milites ab signis discederent, quae quisque eorum carissima haberet, ab impedimentis petere atque arripere properaret, clamore et fletu omnia complerentur.

The battle.

XXXIV.—At barbaris consilium non defuit. Nam duces eorum tota acie pronuntiare iusserunt, ne quis ab loco discederet: illorum esse praedam atque illis reservari, quaecumque Romani reliquissent: proinde omnia in victoria posita existimarent. Erant et virtute et studio pugnandi pares nostri; tametsi ab duce et a fortuna deserebantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtute ponebant, et quotiens quaeque cohors procurrerat, ab ea parte magnus numerus hostium cadebat. Qua re animadversa Ambiorix pronuntiari iubet, ut procul tela coniciant neu propius accedant et, quam in partem Romani impetum fecerint, cedant: levitate armorum et cotidiana exercitatione nihil iis noceri posse; rursus se ad signa recipientes insequantur.

Tactics of the enemy.

XXXV.—Quo praecepto ab iis diligentissime observato, cum quaequam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fecerat, hostes velocissime refugiebant. Interim eam partem nudari necesse erat et ab latere aperto tela recipi. Rursus, cum in eum locum, unde erant egressi reverti coeperant, et ab iis, qui cesserant, et ab iis, qui proximi steterant, circumveniebantur; sin autem locum tenere vellent, nec virtuti locus relinque-

Bravery of the Romans.

batur, neque ab tanta multitudine coniecta tela conferti vitare poterant. Tamen tot incommodis conflictati, multis vulneribus acceptis resistebant et magna parte diei consumpta, cum a prima luce ad horam octavam

*characteristic relative* 26 126  
 167  
 106  
 115  
 118  
 Cotta wounded. *delatuerunt*  
 pugnaretur, nihil, quod ipsis esset indignum, committebant. Tum  
 Tito Balventio, qui superiore anno primum pilum duxerat, viro forti  
 et magnae auctoritatis, utrumque femur tragula traicitur; Quintus  
 Lucanius, eiusdem ordinis, fortissime pugnans, dum  
 circumvento filio subvenit, interficitur; Lucius Cotta  
 legatus omnes cohortes ordinesque adhortans in adversum os funda  
 vulneratur. X

XXXVI.—His rebus permotus. Quintus Titurius,  
 Sabinus again cum procul Ambiorigem suos cohortantem conspex-  
 trapped. isset, interpretem suum Cnaeum Pompeium ad eum  
 mittit rogatum, ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellatus respon-  
 dit: Si velit secum colloqui, licere; sperare, a multitudine impetrari  
 posse, quod ad militum salutem pertineat; ipsi vero nihil nocitum  
 iri, inque eam rem se suam fidem interponere. Ille cum Cotta  
 saucio communicat, si videatur, pugna ut excedant et cum Ambio-  
 rige una colloquantur: sperare, ab eo de sua ac militum salute  
 impetrari posse. Cotta se ad armatum hostem iturum negat atque  
 in eo perseverat.

XXXVII.—Sabinus, quos in praesentia tribunos  
 The massacre. militum circum se habebat, et primorum ordinum  
 centuriones se sequi iubet et, cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset,  
 iussus arma abicere imperatum facit suisque, ut idem faciant,  
 imperat. Interim, dum de condicionibus inter se agunt longiorque  
 consulto ab Ambiorige instituitur sermo, paulatim circumventus  
 interficitur. Tum vero suo more victoriam conclam-  
 ant atque ululatum tollunt impetuque in nostros facto  
 Death of Sab- ordines perturbant. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnans interficitur cum  
 inus and Cotta. maxima parte militum. Reliqui se in castra recipiunt, unde erant  
 egressi. Ex quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magna  
 multitudine hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum proiecit, ipse  
 pro castris fortissime pugnans occiditur. Illi aegre ad noctem  
 oppugnationem sustinent; noctu ad unum omnes desperata salute  
 se ipsi interficiunt. Pauci ex proelio elapsi incertis itineribus per  
 silvas ad Titum Labienum legatum in hiberna perveniunt atque  
 eum de rebus gestis certiore faciant.

Q. CICERO BESIEGED BY THE NERVII, EBURONES AND ADUATUCI.  
CH. 38-52.

XXXVIII.—Hac victoria sublatus Ambiorix statim cum equitatu in Aduatucos, qui erant eius regno finitimi, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit peditatumque sese subsequi iubet. Re demonstrata Aduatucisque concitatis, postero die in Nervios pervenit hortaturque, ne sui in perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi Romanos pro iis, quas acceperint, iniuriis occasionem dimittant: interfectos esse legatos duos magnamque partem exercitus interisse demonstrat; nihil esse negotii, subito oppressam legionem, quae cum Cicerone hiemet, interfici; se ad eam rem proficitur adiutorem. Facile hac oratione Nervii persuadet.

Activity  
of Ambiorix.

XXXIX.—Itaque confestim dimissis nuntiis ad Ceutrones, Grudios, Levacos, Pleumoxios, Geidumnos, qui omnes sub eorum imperio sunt, quam maximas manus possunt, cogunt et de improvviso ad Ciceronis hiberna advolant, nondum ad eum fama de Titurii morte perlata. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nonnulli milites, qui ligationis munitionisque causa in silvas discessissent, repentino equitum adventu interciperentur. His circumventis, magna manu Eburones, Nervii, Aduatuci atque horum omnium socii et clientes legionem oppugnare incipiunt. Nostri celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. Aegre is dies sustentatur, quod omnem spem hostes in celeritate ponebant atque hanc adepti victoriam in perpetuum se fore victores confidebant.

Cicero's camp  
surrounded.

XL.—Mittuntur ad Caesarem confestim ab Cicerone litterae, magnis propositis praemiis, si pertulissent, obsessis omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctu ex materia, quam munitionis causâ comportaverant, turres admodum centum et viginti excitantur incredibili celeritate; quae deesse operi videbantur, perficiuntur. Hostes postero die multo maioribus coactis copiis castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Eadem ratione, quae pridie, ab nostris resistitur. Hoc idem reliquis deinceps fit diebus. Nulla pars nocturni temporis ad laborem intermittitur; non aegris, non vulneratis facultas quietis datur. Quaecumque ad proximi

Stubborn  
resistance of  
the Romans.

diei oppugnationem opus sunt, noctu comparantur; multae praeustae sudes, magnus muralium pilorum numerus instituitur; turres contabulantur, pinnae loricaeque ex cratibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicero, cum tenuissima valetudine esset, ne nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quietem relinquebat, ut ultro militum concursu ac vocibus sibi parcere cogeretur.

IMP

Bold reply of  
Cicero.

XLI.—Tunc duces principesque Nerviorum, qui aliquem sermonis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerone habebant, colloqui sese velle dicunt. Facta potestate, eadem, quae Ambiorix cum Titurio egerat, commemorant: omnem esse in armis Galliam; Germanos Rhenum transisse; Caesaris reliquorumque hiberna oppugnari. Addunt etiam de Sabini morte; Ambiorigem ostentant fidei faciendae causa. Errare eos dicunt, si quicquam ab his praesidii sperent, qui suis rebus diffidant; sese tamen hoc esse in Ciceronem populumque Romanum animo, ut nihil nisi hiberna recusent atque hanc inveterascere consuetudinem nolint; licere illis incolumibus per se ex hibernis discedere et, quascumque in partes velint, sine metu proficisci. Cicero ad haec unum modo respondit: non esse consuetudinem populi Romani, accipere ab hoste armato condicionem: si ab armis discedere velint, se adiutore utantur legatosque ad Caesarem mittant; sperare pro eius iustitia, quae petierint, impetraturos.

The Nervii encircle the camp with rampart and trench.

XLII.—Ab hac spe repulsi Nervii vallo pedum novem et fossa pedum quindecim hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiorum annorum consuetudine ab nobis cognoverant et, quos de exercitu habebant captivos, ab his docebantur, sed nulla ferramentorum copia, quae esset ad hunc usum idonea, gladiis cespites circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire nitebantur. Qua quidem ex re hominum multitudo cognosci potuit: nam minus horis tribus milium passuum quindecim in circuitu munitionem perfecerunt, reliquisque diebus turres ad altitudinem valli, falces testudinesque, quas idem captivi docuerant, parare ac facere coeperunt.

The Gauls assault the camp,

XLIII.—Septimo oppugnationis die maximo coorto vento ferventes fusili ex argilla glandes fundis et fervefacta iacula in casas, quae more Gallico stramentis erant tectae, iacere coeperunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehen-

derunt et venti magnitudine in omnem locum castrorum distulerunt. Hostes maximo clamore, sicuti parta iam atque explorata victoria, turres testudinesque agere et scalis vallum ascendere coeperunt. At tanta militum virtus atque ea praesentia animi fuit, ut, cum undique flamma torrerentur maximaque telorum multitudine premerentur suaeque omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortunas conflagrare intellegerent, non modo demigrandi causam de vallo decederet nemo, sed paene ne respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnes acerrime fortissimeque pugnarent. Hic dies nostris longe gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit eventum, ut eo die maximus numerus hostium vulneraretur atque interficeretur, ut se sub ipso vallo constipaverant recessumque primis ultimi non dabant. Paulum quidem intermissam flammam et quodam loco turri adactam et contingente vallum, tertiae cohortis centuriones ex eo, quo stabant, loco recesserunt suosque omnes removerunt, nutu vocibusque hostes, si introire vellent, vocare coeperunt; quorum progredi ausus est nemo. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus coniectis deturbati, turrisque succensa est.

Bravery of  
two centurions.

XLIV.—Erant in ea legione fortissimi viri, centuriones qui primis ordinibus adpropinquarent, Titus Pulio et Lucius Vorenus. Hi perpetuas inter se controversias habebant, quinam anteferreretur, omnibusque annis de locis summis simultatibus contendebant. Ex his Pulio, cum acerrime ad munitiones pugnaretur, *Quid dubitas, inquit, Vorene? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtutis expectas? hic dies de nostris controversiis iudicabit.* Haec cum dixisset, procedit extra munitiones, quaeque pars hostium confertissima est visa, in eam irrumpit. Ne Vorenus quidem sese vallo continet, sed omnium veritus estimationem subsequitur. Mediocri spatio relicto Pulio pilum in hostes immittit atque unum ex multitudine procurrentem traicit; quo percusso et exanimato, hunc scutis protegent, in hostem tela universi coniciunt neque dant regrediendi facultatem. Transfigitur scutum Pulioni et verutum in balteo defigitur. Avertit hic casus vaginam et gladium educere conanti dextram moratur manum, impeditumque hostes circumstant. Succurrit inimicus illi Vorenus et laboranti subvenit. Ad hunc se confestim a Pulione omnis multitudo convertit; illum veruto arbitrantur occisum. Gladio

comminus rem gerit Vorenus atque uno interfecto reliquos paulum propellit; dum cupidius instat, in locum deiectus inferiorem concidit. Huic rursus circumvento fert subsidium Pulio, atque ambo incolumes compluribus interfectis summā cum laude sese intra munitiones recipiunt. Sic fortuna in contentione et certamine utrumque versavit, ut alter alteri inimicus auxilio salutique esset, neque diiudicari posset, uter utri virtute antefendus videretur. 43

News conveyed  
to Caesar by a  
Gallic slave.

XLV.—Quanto erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppugnatio, et maxime quod magnā parte militum confectā vulneribus res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenerat, tanto crebriores litterae nuntiique ad Caesarem mittebantur; quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostrorum militum cum cruciату necabatur. Erat unus intus Nervius nomine Vertico, loco natus honesto, qui a prima obsidione ad Ciceronem perfugerat suamque ei fidem praestiterat. Hic servo spe libertatis magnisque persuadet praemiis, ut litteras ad Caesarem deferat. Has ille in iaculo illigatas effert et Gallus inter Gallos sine ulla suspitione versatus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eo de periculis Ciceronis legionisque cognoscitur.

Caesar's prompt  
measures for  
relief.

XLVI.—Caesar acceptis litteris horā circiter undecimā diei statim nuntium in Bellovacos ad M. Crassum quaestorem mittit, cuius hiberna aberant ab eo milia passuum viginti quinque; iubet media nocte legionem proficisci celeriterque ad se venire. Exit cum nuntio Crassus. Alterum ad Caium Fabium legatum mittit, ut in Atrebatum fines legionem adducat, qua sibi scit iter faciendum. Scribit Labieno, si reipublicae commodo facere posset, cum legione ad fines Nerviorum veniat, Reliquam partem exercitus, quod paulo aberat longius, non putat expectandam; equites circiter quadringentos ex proximis hibernis colligit.

XLVII.—Horā circiter tertiā ab antecursoribus de Crassi adventu certior factus, eo die milia passuum viginti procedit. Crassum Samarobriuae praeficit legionemque attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitus, obsides civitatum, litteras publicas, frumentumque omne, quod eo tolerandae hiemis causā devexerat, relinquebat. Fabius,

ut imperatum erat, non ita multum moratus, in itinere cum legione occurrit. Labienus, in ritu Sabini et caede cohortium cognitâ, cum omnes ad eum Treverorum copiae venissent, veritus, si ex hibernis fugae similem perfectionem fecisset, ut hostium impetum sustinere posset, praesertim quos recenti victoria efferri sciret, litteras Caesari remittit, quanto cum periculo legionem ex hibernis educturus esset, rem gestam in Eburonibus perscribit, docet, omnes peditatus equitatusque copias Treverorum tria milia passuum longe ab suis castris consedissee. /

XLVIII.—Caesar consilio eius probato, etsi opinione trium legionum deiectus ad duas redierat, tamen unum communis salutis auxilium in celeritate ponebat. Venit magnis itineribus in Nerviorum fines. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit quae apud Ciceronem gerantur quantoque in periculo res sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnis praemiis persuadet, uti ad Ciceronem epistolam deferat. Hanc Graecis conscriptam litteris mittit, ne interceptâ epistolâ nostra ab hostibus consilia cognoscantur. Si adire non possit, monet, ut tragulam cum epistolâ ad amentum deligatâ intra munitionem castrorum abiciat. In litteris scribit, se cum legionibus profectum celeriter adfore; hortatur, ut pristinam virtutem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, tragulam mittit. Haec casu ad turrim adhaesit neque ab nostris biduo animadversa tertio die a quodam milite conspicitur, dempta ad Ciceronem defertur. Ille perlectam in conventu militum recitat maximâque omnes laetitiâ adficit. Tum fumi incendiorum procul videbantur, quae res omnem dubitationem adventus legionum expulit.

XLIX.—Galli re cognitâ per exploratores obsidionem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus copiis contendunt. Haec erant armata circiter milia quadraginta. Cicero datâ facultate Gallum ab eodem Verticone, quem supra demonstravimus, repetit, qui litteras ad Caesarem deferat; hunc admonet, iter caute diligenterque faciat; perscribit in litteris, hostes ab se discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter media nocte Caesar adlatis suos facit certiores eosque ad dimicandum animo confirmat. Postero die luce prima movet castra et

circiter milia passuum quattuor progressus trans vallem et rivum multitudinem hostium conspicatur. (Erat magni periculi res, tantulis copiis iniquo loco dimicare; tum, quoniam obsidione liberatum Ciceronem sciebat, aequo animo remittendum de celeritate existimabat.) Consedit et, quam aequissimo loco potest, <sup>who encamps,</sup> castra communit atque haec, etsi erant exigua per se, <sup>part</sup> vix hominum milium septem, praesertim nullis cum impedimentis, tamen angustis <sup>viae</sup> viarum, quam maxime potest, contrahit eo consilio, <sup>cum</sup> ut in summam contemtionem <sup>hostibus</sup> hostibus veniat. Interim speculatoribus in omnes partes dimissis explorat, quo commodissime itinere <sup>85 III a II a</sup> valles transire possit. ]

L.—Eo die parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam <sup>and entices them to battle.</sup> factis utrique sese suo loco continent, Galli, quod ampliores copias, quae nondum convenerant, expectabant; Caesar, si forte timoris simulatione hostes in suum locum elicere posset, ut citra vallem pro castris proelio contenderet; si id efficere non posset, ut exploratis itineribus minore cum periculo vallem rivumque transiret. Prima luce hostium equitatus ad castra accedit proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar consulto equites cedere seque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiore vallo muniri portasque obstrui atque in his administrandis rebus quam maxime concursari et cum simulatione agi timoris iubet.

LI.—Quibus omnibus rebus hostes invitati copias <sup>The Gauls repulsed by a sortie.</sup> traducunt aciemque iniquo loco constituunt, nostris vero etiam de vallo deductis, propius accedunt et tela intra munitionem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt praeconibusque circummissis pronuntiari iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Romanus velit ante horam tertiam ad se transire, sine periculo licere; post id tempus non fore potestatem; ac sic nostros contempserunt, ut obstructis in speciem portis, singulis ordinibus cespitem, quod ea non posse introrumpere videbantur, alii vallum manu scindere, alii fossas complere inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portis eruptione facta equitatuque emissio celeriter hostes in fugam dat, sic uti omnino pugnandi causam resisteret nemo, magnumque ex eis numerum occidit atque omnes armis exuit, ]

LII.—Longius prosequi veritus, quod silvae paludesque intercedebant neque etiam parvulo detrimento illorum locum relinqui videbat, omnibus suis incolumibus copiis eodem die ad Ciceronem pervenit. Institutas turres, testudines munitionesque hostium admiratur; legione productâ cognoscit, non decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere: ex his omnibus iudicat rebus, quanto cum periculo et quanta cum virtute res sint administratae. Ciceronem pro eius merito legionemque collaudat; centuriones singillatim tribunosque militum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse virtutem testimonio Ciceronis cognoverat. De casu Sabini et Cottae certius ex captivis cognoscit. Postero die contione habita rem gestam proponit, milites consolatur et confirmat; quod detrimentum culpâ et temeritate legati sit acceptum, hoc aequiore animo ferendum docet, quod, beneficio deorum immortalium et virtute eorum expiato incommodo, neque hostibus diutina laetatio neque ipsis longior dolor relinquatur.

#### LABIENUS AND THE TREVERI.—CH. 53-58.

News of Caesar's victory conveyed to Labienus.

LIII.—Interim ad Labienum per Remos incredibili celeritate de victoria Caesaris fama perfertur, ut, cum ab hibernis Ciceronis milia passuum abesset circiter sexginta, eoque post horam nonam diei Caesar pervenisset, ante mediam noctem ad portas castrorum clamor oreretur, quo clamore significatio victoriae gratulatioque ab Remis Labieno fieret. Haec famâ ad Treveros perlatâ, Indutiomarus, qui postero die castra Labieni oppugnare decreverat, noctu profugit copiasque omnes in Treveros reducit. Caesar Fabium cum sua legione remittit in hiberna, ipse cum tribus legionibus circum Samarobrivam trinis hibernis hiemare constituit, et, quod tanti motus Galliae exstiterant, totam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manere decrevit. Nam illo incommodo de Sabini morte perlato omnes fere Galliae civitates de bello consultabant, nuntios legationesque in omnes partes dimittebant et, quid reliqui consilii caperent atque unde initium belli fieret, explorabant nocturnaque in locis desertis concilia habebant. Neque ullum fere totius hiemis tempus sine sollicitudine Caesaris intercessit, quin aliquem de consiliis ac motu Gallorum nuntium acciperet. In his ab Lucio Roscio, quem legioni tertiae decimae

Caesar's precautions for the winter.

Disturbed state of Gaul.

praefecerat, certior factus est, magnas Gallorum copias earum civitatum, quae Armoricae appellantur, oppugnandi sui causā convenisse neque longius milia passuum octo ab hibernis suis afuisse, sed nuntio allato de victoria Caesaris discessisse, adeo ut fugae similis discessus videretur. 123.3.2

LIV.—At Caesar principibus cuiusque civitatis ad  
*Caesar stands at bay.* se evocatis alias territando, cum se scire, quae fierent, *def. omnes* denuntiaret, alias cohortando magnam partem Galliae in officio tenuit. Tamen Senones, quae est civitas imprimis firma et magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis, Cavarinum, quem Caesar apud eos regem constituerat (cuius frater Moritasgus adventu in Galliam Caesaris, cuiusque maiores regnum obtinuerant) interficere publico consilio conati, cum ille praesensisset ac profugisset, usque ad fine insecuti regno domoque expulerunt et, missis ad Caesarem satisfaciendi causā legatis, cum is omnem ad se senatum venire iussisset, dicto audientes non fuerunt. Tantum apud homines barbaros valuit, esse aliquos repertos principes inferendi belli, tantamque omnibus voluntatum commutationem attulit, ut praeter Aeduos et Remos, quos praecipuo semper honore Caesar habuit, alteros pro vetere ac perpetua erga populum Romanum fide, alteros pro recentibus Gallici belli officiis, nulla fere civitas fuerit non suspecta nobis. Idque adeo haud scio mirandumne sit, cum compluribus aliis de causis, tum maxime, quod ei, qui virtute belli omnibus gentibus praeferebantur, tantum se eius opinionis deperdisse, ut a populo Romano imperia perferrent, gravissime dolebant.

LV.—Treveri vero atque Indutiomarus totius hiemis  
*Indutiomarus fails to arouse the Germans.* nullum tempus intermiserunt, quin trans Rhenum legatos mitterent, civitates sollicitarent, pecunias pollicerentur, magnā parte exercitus nostri interfectā multo minorem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ulli civitati Germanorum persuaderi potuit, ut Rhenum transiret, cum se bis expertos dicerent, Ariovisti bello et Tencterorum transitu: non esse amplius fortunam temptaturos. Hac spe lapsus Indutiomarus nihilo minus copias cogere, exercere, a finitiinis equos parare, exules damnatosque tota Gallia magnis praemiis ad se allicere coepit. *But the Gauls flock to his standard.* Ac tantam sibi iam his rebus in Gallia auctoritatem comparaverat, ut undique ad eum legationes concurrerent, gratiam atque amicitiam publice privatimque peterent.

LVI.—Ubi intellexit, ultro ad se veniri, alterā <sup>inferi</sup> ex parte Senones Carnutesque conscientiā facinoris instigari, alterā Nervios Aduatucosque bellum Romanis parare, neque sibi voluntariorum copias defore, si ex finibus suis progredi coepisset, armatum concilium indicit. Hoc more Gallorum est initium belli; quo lege communi <sup>caus</sup> omnes puberes armati convenire consuerunt; qui ex iis novissimus convenit, in conspectu multitudinis omnibus cruciatibus affectus necatur. In eo concilio Cingetorigem, alterius principem factionis, generum suum, quem supra demonstravimus Caesaris secutum fidem ab eo non discessisse, hostem iudicat bonaque eius publicat. His rebus confectis in concilio pronuntiat, arcessitum se a Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque compluribus Galliae civitatibus; huc iturum per fines Remorum eorumque agros populaturum ac, priusquam id faciat, castra Labieni oppugnaturum. Quae fieri velit, praecipit.

LVII.—Labienus, cum et loci <sup>locus</sup> natura et manu munitissimis castris sese teneret, de suo ac legionis periculo nihil timebat; ne quam occasionem rei bene gerendae dimitteret, cogitabat.

Itaque a Cingetorige atque eius propinquis oratione Labienus sets <sup>place</sup> a trap for Indutiomarus. Indutiomari cognitā, quam in concilio habuerat, nuntios mittit ad finitimas civitates equitesque undique evocat: his certum diem conveniendi dicit. Interim prope cotidie cum omni equitatu Indutiomarus sub castris eius vagabatur, alias ut situm castrorum cognosceret, alias colloquendi aut territandi causā; equites plerumque omnes tela intra vallum coniciebant. Labienus suos intra munitionem continebat timorisque opinionem, quibuscumque poterat rebus, augebat.

LVIII.—Cum maiore in dies contemptione Indutiomarus ad castra accederet, nocte una intromissis equitibus omnium finitimarum civitatum, quos <sup>ad invicem</sup> arcessendos curaverat, tanta diligentia omnes suos custodiis intra castra continuit, ut nulla <sup>ratione</sup> ea res enuntiari aut ad Treveros perferri posset. Interim ex consuetudine cotidiana Indutiomarus ad castra accedit atque ibi magnam partem diei consumit; equites tela coniciunt et magna cum contumelia verborum nostros ad pugnam evocant. Nullo ab nostris dato responso, ubi visum est, sub vesperum dispersi ac dissipati

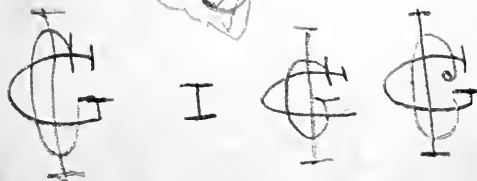
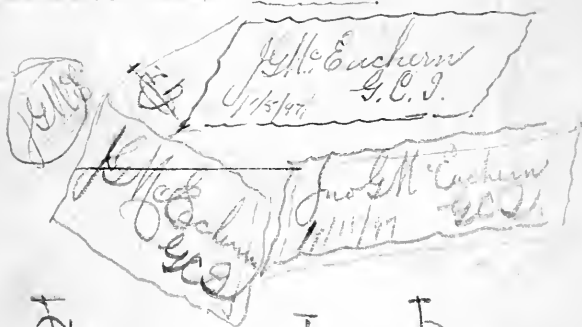
IMP.

discedunt. Subito Labienus duabus portis omnem equitatum emittit; praecipit atque interdicat, proteritis hostibus A sortie; Indutiomarus slain. atque in fugam coniectis—quod fore, sicut accidit.

videbat—unum omnes peterent Indutiomarum, ne quis quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfectum viderit, quod morā reliquorum spatium nactum illum effugere nolebat; magna proponit iis, qui occiderint, praemia; submittit cohortes equitibus subsidio. Comprobat hominis consilium fortuna, et cum unum omnes peterent, in ipso fluminis vado deprehensus Indutiomarus interficitur caputque eius refertur in castra; redeuntes equites, quos possunt, consectantur atque occidunt. Hāc re cognitā omnes

The revolt collapses. Eburonum et Nerviorum, quae convenerant, copiae discedunt, pauloque habuit post id factum Caesar quietiorem Galliam.

*Handwritten:* N.B. wrote out an account of Indutiomarus



## EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION

### INTRODUCTORY TO

### BOOK VI.

#### Exercise 1.

1. Multis de causis Caesar motum Galliae exspectat.
2. Per legātos delectum habēre instituit.
3. Ab Pompeio petit ut milites ad signa convenire iubēret.
4. Pompeius ad urbem cum imperio remanebat.
5. Magni intererat magnas vidēri facultates Italiae.
6. Hoc Pompeius reipublicae et amicitiae tribuit.
7. Ita celeriter confectus est delectus et tres lēgiones constitutae.
8. Multum populi Romani disciplina poterat.

#### Exercise 2.

1. Magni interest. Magni interesse existimavit.
2. Confectus est delectus. Quid potest disciplina Romanorum?
3. Delectu confecto, Gallos docuit quid disciplina posset.
4. Adductae sunt legiones tres. Legionibus tribus adductis duplicatus est cohortium numerus.
5. Interfecto Indutiomaro, Trevēri Germanos sollicitant; pecuniam pollicentur; Amborigem sibi adiungunt.
6. Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar, hieme nondum confectā, cum legionibus quattuor in fines Nerviorum contendit.
7. Vastatis eorum agris, in deditionem venire atque obsides dāre eos coēgit.
8. Eo confecto negotio, in hiberna legiones reduxit.

#### Exercise 3.

1. Undique bellum parabatur. Bellum undique parari videbat.



2. Senōnes ad imperatum non veniunt. Senones non venire intellegebat, consilia cum finitimis communicare ; Germanos a Treveris sollicitari.

3. A Caesare de bello cogitatum est.

4. Mihi de bello cogitandum (est). Sibi de bello cogitandum esse putavit.

5. Omnia postponenda sunt ; concilium Lutetiam transferendum.

**Exercise 4.** (*See Chaps. 3 and 4.*)

1. Concilium Galliae primo vere indictum est. Eo Senōnes, Carnutes Trévérique non veniunt.

2. Hoc initium belli esse arbitratus, concilium ad Parisios, qui confines erant Senonibus, transfert.

3. Concilium Lutetiam translatum est. Ad oppidum Parisiorum concilium transferre Caesar constituit.

4. Eodem die cum legionibus in Senones proficiscitur.

5. Cognito eius adventu, Acco qui princeps fuit, iubet in oppida multitudinem convenire.

6. Iis id conantibus adesse Romanos nuntiatur.

7. Legatos deprecandi causā mittunt.

8. Libenter Caesar, petentibus Aeduis, dat veniam.

9. Eodem Carnutes legatos mittunt, usi deprecatoribus Remis. Eadem ferunt responsa.

**Exercise 5.** (*See Chaps. 5 and 6.*)

**CAESAR SUBDUES THE MENAPII.**

Hac parte Galliae pacata, in bellum Trevērorum insistit. Cavarinum cum equitatu Senonum secum proficisci iubet. Erant Menapii propinqui Eburonum finibus, paludibus silvisque muniti. Qui uni legatos numquam miserant. Cum his erat hospitium Ambiorigi. Item per Trevēros venerat Germanis in amicitiam.

Haec illi detrahenda esse auxilia existimabat. Hoc inito consilio, impedimenta duasque legiones in Trevēros mittit. Ipse cum legionibus expeditis quinque in Menapios proficiscitur. Menapii, aedificiis vicisque incensis, magnoque hominum atque pecōris capto numero, legatos ad eum pacis petendae causā mittunt.

**Exercise 6.** (Chaps. 6 and 7.)

1. Magno hominum numero potitur.
2. "Vos hostium habebo numero, si Ambiorigem finibus vestris recēperitis."
3. Hostium eos se habiturum esse numero, si Ambiorigem finibus suis recēpissent dixit.
4. Commium custodis loco in Menapiis relinquit.
5. Dum haec a Caesare geruntur, Trevēri magnis coactis copiis Labienum adoriri parabant, iamque ab eo non longē aberant, cum duas venisse legiones cognoscunt. Positis castris auxilia exspectare constituunt.
6. Temeritate hostium erit aliqua dimicandi facultas.
7. Fore aliquam dimicandi facultatem speravit Labienus.

**Exercise 7.** (Chap. 7.)

1. Praesidium cohortium impedimentis relictum est.
2. Hostes flumen non transibunt. Neque hostes transituros existimabat.
3. Loquitur in consilio palam. "Germani," inquit, "adpropinquant. Ego meas exercitūsque fortunas in dubium non devocabo et cras (*to-morrow*) castra movebo."
4. Germanos dixit adpropinquare. Sese suas exercitūsque fortunas in dubium non devocaturum et postero die castra moturum.
5. Quid est Labieni consilii? Labienus quid sui sit consilii proponit.
6. Ut timōris det suspicionem, magno strepitu castra movēri iubet.
7. Quo facilius timoris det suspicionem, maiore, quam consuetudo fert, strepitu castra moveri iubet.

**Exercise 8.***(Chap. 8.)***LABIENUS ROUTS THE TREVERI.**

Galli, cohortati inter se, ne praedam ex manibus dimitterent flumen transire non dubitant. (Longum esse dixerunt auxilium expectare, neque suam pati dignitatem ut exigua manu adoriri non audeant). Labienus, usus simulatione itineris, progrediebatur. Tum, "Habetis," inquit, "milites, quam petistis, facultatem : hostem iniquo loco tenetis : praestate ducibus nobis virtutem vestram atque Caesarem adesse existimate."

Nostri clamore sublato hostes in fugam coniēcērunt. Quos, Labienus consecutus, magno numero interfecto, compluribus captis, civitatem rēcēpit. Caesar, postquam in Treveros vēnit, Rhenum transire constituit.

---



CN. POMPEIUS MAGNUS, CAESAR'S RIVAL.

C. IULI CAESARIS  
DE BELLO GALLICO  
COMMENTARIORUM  
LIBER SEXTUS.

*SIXTH CAMPAIGN*—53 *B.C.*—CAESAR BESET BY REBELLIOUS  
GAULS AND THEIR GERMAN ALLIES.

CH. 1-8.—COMMOTIONS LED BY THE TREVERI.

CH. 9-28.—CAESAR A SECOND TIME CROSSES THE RHINE.

CH. 29-44.—CAESAR PUNISHES THE REBELS AND PURSUES AM-  
BIORIX.

I.—Multis de causis Caesar maiorem Galliae notum  
expectans per Marcum Silanum, Caium Antistium  
Reginum, Titum Sextium legatos dilectum habere in-  
stituit; simul ab Cnaeo Pompeio proconsule petit,  
quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperio rei publicae causā re-

As an object  
lesson to the  
Gauls Caesar  
increases his  
forces.

manēret, quos ex Cisalpina Gallia consulis sacramento rogavisset, ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci iubēret, magni interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opinionem Galliae existimans, tantas vidēri Italiae facultates, ut, si quid esset in bello detrimēti acceptum, non modo id brevi tempore sarciri, sed etiam maioribus augēri copiis posset. Quod cum Pompeius et rei publicae et amicitiae tribuisset, celeriter confecto per suos dilectu tribus ante exactam hiemem et constitutis et adductis lēgionibus duplicatoque earum cohortium numero, quas cum Q. Titurio amiserat, et celeritate et copiis docuit quid populi Romani disciplina atque opes possent.

The Treveri stir up war, aided by Ambiorix.

II.—Interfecto Indutiomaro, ut docuimus, ad eius propinquos a Trevēris imperium defertur. Illi finitimos Germānos sollicitare et pecuniam polliceri non desistunt. Cum ab proximis impetrare non possent, ultiores temptant. Inventis nonnullis civitatibus iure iurando inter se confirmant obsidibusque de pecunia cāvent; Ambiorigem sibi societate et foedere adiungunt. Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar, cum undique bellum parari vidēret, Nervios, Aduatucos, Menapios adiunctis Cisrhenanis omnibus Germānis esse in armis, Senōnes ad imperatum non venire et cum Carnutibus finitimisque civitatibus consilia communicare, a Treveris Germanos crebris legationibus sollicitari, maturius sibi de bello cogitandum putavit.

Caesar quells the Nervii and calls a council at Paris.

III.—Itaque nondum hieme confectā proximis quatuor coactis lēgionibus, de improvviso in fines Nerviorum contendit et, priusquam illi aut convenire aut profugere possent, magno pecōris atque hominum numero capto atque eā praedā militibus concessā vastatisque agris in deditionem venire atque obsides sibi dare coēgit. Eo celeriter confecto negotio rursus in hiberna legiones reduxit. Concilio Galliae primo vēre, ut instituerat, indicto, cum reliqui praeter Senones, Carnutes Treverosque venissent, initium belli ac defectionis hoc esse arbitratus, ut omnia postponere videretur, concilium Lutetiam Parisiorum transfert. Confines erant hi Senonibus civitatemque patrum memoriā coniunxerant, sed ab hoc consilio afuisse existimabantur. Hāc re pro suggestu pronuntia'tā eodem die cum legionibus in Senones proficiscitur magnisque itineribus eo pervēnit.

The Senones  
submit.

IV.—Cognito eius adventu Acco, qui princeps eius consilii fuerat, iūbet in oppida multitudinem convenire. Conantibus, priusquam id effici posset, adesse Romanos nuntiatur. Necessario sententia desistunt legatosque deprecandi causa ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Aeduos, quorum antiquitas erat in fide civitās. Libenter Caesar petentibus Aeduis dat veniam excusationemque accipit, quod aestivum tempus instantis belli, non quaestionis esse arbitratur. Obsidibus imperatis centum, hos Aeduis custodiendos tradit. Eodem Carnutes legatos obsidesque mittunt usi deprecatoribus Remis, quorum erant in clientēla: eadem ferunt responsa. Peragit concilium Caesar equitesque imperat civitatibus.

Likewise the  
Carnutes.

March against  
the Menapii.

V.—Hac parte Galliae pacatā totus et mente et animo in bellum Treverorum et Ambiorigis insistit. Cavarinum cum equitatu Senōnum secum proficisci iubet, ne quis aut ex huius iracundia aut ex eo, quod meruerat, odio civitatis motus existat. His rebus constitutis, quod pro explorato habebat, Ambiorigem proelio non esse concertaturum, reliqua eius consilia animo circumspiciebat. Erant Menapii propinqui Eburo-  
num finibus, perpetuis paludibus silvisque muniti, qui uni ex Gallia de pace ad Caesarem legatos numquam miserant. Cum his esse hospitium Ambiorigi sciebat; item per Treveros vēnisse Germanis in amicitiam cognoverat. Haec prius illi detrahenda auxilia existimabat, quam ipsum bello lacesseret, ne dēspērātā salute aut se in Menapios abdēret aut cum Transrhenanis congredi cogeretur. Hoc inīto consilio totius exercitūs impedimenta ad Labienum in Treveros mittit duasque ad eum lēgiones proficisci iūbet; ipse cum legionibus expeditis quinque in Menapios profiscitur. Illi nullā coactā manu loci praesidio freti in silvas paludesque confugiunt suaeque eodem conferunt.

The Menapii  
detached from  
Ambiorix.

VI.—Caesar partitis copiis cum Caio Fabio legato et Marco Crasso quaestore celeriterque effectis pontibus adit tripertito, aedificia vicosque incendit, magno pecoris atque hominum numero potitur. Quibus rebus coacti Menapii legatos ad eum pacis petendae causā mittunt. Ille obsidibus acceptis hostium se habiturum numero confirmat, si aut Ambiorigem aut eius legatos finibus suis recepissent. His confirmatis

rebus Commium Atrebatem cum equitatu custodis loco in Menapiis relinquit, ipse in Treveros proficiscitur. ✓

VII.—Dum haec a Caesare geruntur, Treveri magnis Labienus and the Treveri. coactis peditatus equitatusque copiis Labienum cum una legione, quae in eorum finibus hiemaverat, adoriri parabant; iamque ab eo non longius <sup>115</sup> ~~bidi~~ <sup>viam</sup> ~~viam~~ aberant, cum duas venisse legiones missu Caesaris cognoscunt. Positis castris a milibus passuum quindecim auxilia Germanorum expectare constituunt. Labienus hostium cognito consilio, sperans temeritate eorum fore aliquam dimicandi facultatem, praesidio quinque cohortium impedimentis relicto, cum viginti quinque cohortibus magnoque equitatu contra hostem proficiscitur et mille passuum intermisso spatio castra communit. Erat inter Labienum atque hostem difficili transitu flumen ripisque praeruptis. Hoc neque ipse transire habebat in animo neque hostes transituros existimabat. Augebatur auxiliorum cotidie spes. Loquitur in consilio palam, quoniam Germani adpropinquare dicantur, sese suas exercitusque fortunas in dubium non devocaturum et postero die prima luce castra moturum. Celeriter haec ad hostes deferuntur, ut ex magno Gallorum equitum numero nonnullos Gallicis rebus favere natura cogeat. Labienus noctu tribunis militum primisque ordinibus convocatis, quid <sup>113</sup> ~~sui~~ sit consilii, proponit et, quo facilius hostibus timoris <sup>115</sup> ~~det~~ <sup>perp</sup> suspicionem, <sup>113</sup> ~~maiore~~ <sup>maior</sup> strepitu et tumultu, quam populi Romani fert consuetudo, castra moveri iubet. His rebus fugae similem profectionem effecit. Haec quoque per exploratores ante lucem in tanta propinquitate castrorum ad hostes deferuntur.

Victory of Labienus.

VIII.—Vix agmen novissimum extra munitiones processerat, cum Galli cohortati inter se, “ne speratam praedam ex manibus dimitterent; longum esse perterritis Romanis Germanorum auxilium expectare, neque suam pati dignitatem, ut tantis copiis tam exiguum manum, praesertim fugientem atque impeditam, adoriri non audeant,” flumen transire et iniquo loco committere proelium non dubitant. Quae fore suspicatus Labienus, ut omnes citra flumen eliceret, eadem usus simulatione itineris placide progrediebatur. Tum praemissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumultu quodam collocatis, *Habetis, inquit, milites, quam petistis, facultatem: hostem impedito atque* *similis takes a in is dendi character*

*place*  
*56*  
iniquo loco tenetis; praestate eandem nobis ducibus virtutem, quam *after from*  
saepenumero imperatori praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec *dent*  
coram cernere existimate. Simul signa ad hostem converti aciem-  
 que dirigi iubet et paucis turmis praesidio ad impedimenta dimissis *absolut*  
 reliquos equites ad latera disponit. Celeriter nostri clamore *124 d*  
 sublato pila in hostes immittunt. Illi, ubi praeter spem, quos *pump*  
 fugere credebant, infestis signis ad se ire viderunt, impetum modo  
 ferre non potuerunt ac primo concursu in fugam coniecti proximas  
 silvas petiverunt, Quos Labienus equitatu consecutus, magno  
 numero interfecto, compluribus captis, paucis post diebus civitatem  
 recepit. Nam Germani, qui auxilio veniebant, percepta Trevero-  
 rum fuga sese domum receperunt. Cum his propinqui Indutiomari,  
 qui defectionis auctores fuerant, comitati eos ex civitate excesser-  
 unt. Cingetorigi, quem ab initio permansisse in officio demonstra-  
 vimus, principatus atque imperium est traditum.

## CAESAR A SECOND TIME CROSSES THE RHINE — CH. 9-28.

IX.—Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Treveros vēnit, duabus  
 de causis Rhenum transire constituit; quarum una erat, quod  
 auxilia contra se Treveris miserant, altera, ne ad eos Ambiorix  
 receptum haberet. His constitutis rebus paulum supra eum locum,  
 quo ante exercitum traduxerat, facere pontem instituit. Nota atque  
 instituta ratione magno militum studio paucis diebus opus efficitur.  
 Firmo in Treveris ad pontem praesidio relicto, ne quis ab his  
 subito motus oreferetur, reliquas copias equitatumque traducit. \* Ubi,  
 qui ante obsides dederant atque in deditiōnem venerant purgandi  
 sui causa ad eum legatos mittunt, qui doceant, neque auxilia ex sua  
 civitate in Treveros missa neque ab se fidem laesam petunt atque  
 orant, ut sibi parcat, ne communi odio Germanorum innocentes pro-  
nocentibus poenas pendant; si amplius obsidum vellet, dare  
 pollicentur. Cognita Caesar causa reperit, ab Suebis auxilia missa  
 esse; Ubiorum satisfactionem accipit, aditus viasque in Suebos  
 perquirir.

X.—Interim paucis post diebus fit ab Ubiis certior,

The Suebi re-  
 treat before  
 him.

Suebos omnes in unum locum copias cogere atque iis  
 nationibus, quae sub eorum sint imperio, denuntiare,  
 ut auxilia peditatus equitatusque mittant. His cogni-  
 tis rebus rem frumentariam providet, castris idoneum locum

*after idoneum*  
 they converted the land  
 to provide seed for the  
 crops

deligit; Ubiis imperat, ut pecora deducant suaque omnia ex agris in oppida conferant, sperans barbaros atque imperitos homines inopia cibarium adductos ad iniquam pugnandi condicionem posse deduci; mandat, ut crebros exploratores in Suebos mittant, quaeque apud eos gerantur, cognoscant. Illi imperata faciunt et paucis diebus intermissis referunt: Suebos omnes, posteaquam certiores nuntii de exercitu Romanorum venerint, cum omnibus suis sociorumque copiis, quas coëgissent, penitus ad extremos fines se recepisse: silvam esse ibi infinita magnitudine, quae appellatur Bacenis; hanc longe introrsus pertinere et pro nativo muro obiectam Cheruscos ab Suebis Suebosque ab Cheruscis iniuriis incursionibusque prohibere: ad eius initium silvae Suebos adventum Romanorum expectare constituisse.

#### GAUL AND GERMANY COMPARED. THE GAULS—CH. II-20.

Factions and parties in Gaul.

XI.—Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, non alienum esse videtur de Galliae Germaniaeque moribus et, quo differant hae nationes inter sese, proponere. In Gallia non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pagis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiones sunt, earumque factionum principes sunt, qui summam auctoritatem eorum iudicio habere existimantur, quorum ad arbitrium iudiciumque summa omnium rerum consiliorumque reseat. Itaque eius rei causa antiquitus institutum videtur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiorum auxilium egeret: suos enim quisque opprimi et circumveniri non patitur, neque, caliter si faciat, ullam inter suos habet auctoritatem. Haec eadem ratio est in summa totius Galliae; namque omnes civitates in partes divisae sunt duas.

The rivals for supremacy. Aedui and Sequani.

XII.—Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis principes erant Aedui, alterius Sequani. Hi cum per se minus valerent, quod summa auctoritas antiquitus erat in Aeduis magnaeque eorum erant clientelae, Germanos atque Ariovistum sibi adiunxerant eosque ad se magnis iacturis pollicitationibusque perduxerant. Proeliis vero compluribus factis secundis atque omni nobilitate Aeduorum interfecta tantum potentia antecesserant, ut magnam partem clientium ab Aeduis ad se traducerent obsidesque ab iis principum

n.B. This sentence introduces a general type applicable to any time. The Const. part of the sentence is expressed in a descriptive or a less certain manner. The Pres. subj. of the main clause is also

filios acciperent et publice iurare cogerent, nihil se contra Sequanos consilii inituros, et partem finitimi agri per vim occupatam possiderent Galliaeque totius principatum obtinerent. Qua necessitate adductus Divitiacus auxilii petendi causa Romam ad senatum profectus imperfecta re redierat. Adventū Caesaris facta commutatione rerum, obsidibus Aeduis redditis, veteribus clientelis restitutis, novis per Caesarem comparatis, quod hi, qui se ad eorum amicitiam aggregaverant, meliore condicione atque aequiore imperio se uti videbant, reliquis rebus eorum gratia dignitateque amplificata, Sequani principatum dimiserant. In eorum locum Remi successerant; quos quod adaequare apud Caesarem gratia intellegebatur, ii, qui propter veteres inimicitias nullo modo cum Aeduis coniungi poterant, se Remis in clientelam dicabant. Hos illi diligenter tuebantur: ita et novam et repente collectam auctoritatem tenebant. Eo tum statu res erat, ut longe principes haberentur Aedui, secundum locum dignitatis Remi obtinerent.

**IMP** XIII.—In omni Gallia eorum hominum, qui aliquo  
 Two classes: sunt numero atque honore, genera sunt duo. Nam  
 the Druids and plebes paene servorum habetur loco, quae nihil audet  
 the Equites or Nobles. per se, nullo adhibetur consilio. Plerique, cum aut aere  
 alieno aut magnitudine tributorum aut iniuria potentiorum premuntur, sese in servitutem dicant nobilibus, quibus in hos eadem omnia sunt iura, quae dominis in servos. Sed de his duobus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illi rebus divinis intersunt,

**The Druids.** sacrificia publica ac privata procurant, religiones interpretantur : ad eos magnus adolescentium numerus disciplinae causa concurrit, magnoque hi sunt apud eos honore. Nam

**Their power.** fere de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt, et si quod est admissum facinus, si caedes facta, si de finibus controversia est, iidem decernunt, praemia poenasque constituunt ; si qui aut privatus aut populus eorum decreto non stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. Haec poena apud eos est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hi numero impiorum ac sceleratorum habentur, his omnes decedunt, aditum sermonemque defugiunt, ne quid ex contagione incommodi accipiant, neque his petentibus ius redditur neque honos ullus communicatur. His autem omnibus druidibus praeest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem.

Hoc mortuo aut, si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit, aut, si sunt plures pares, suffragio druidum, nonnunquam etiam armis de principatu contendunt. Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regio totius Galliae media habetur, considunt in loco consecrato. Huc omnes undique, qui controversias habent, conveniunt eorumque decretis iudiciisque parent. Disciplina in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translata esse existimatur, et nunc, qui diligentius eam rem cognoscere volunt, plerumque illo discendi causa proficiscuntur.

XIV.—Druides a bello abesse consuerunt neque *Their training.* tributa una cum reliquis pendunt, militiae vacationem omniumque rerum habent immunitatem. Tantis excitati praemiis et sua sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ediscere dicuntur. Itaque annos nonnulli vicanos in disciplina permanent. Neque fas esse existimant ea litteris mandare, cum in reliquis fere rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Graecis litteris utantur. Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgum disciplinam efferri velint neque eos, qui discunt, litteris confisos minus memoriae studere; quod fere plerisque accidit, ut praesidio litterarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant.

In primis hoc volunt persuadere, non interire animas, *Their beliefs.* sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios, atque hoc maxime ad virtutem excitari putant, metu mortis neglecto. Multa praeterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de deorum immortalium vi ac potestate disputant et iuventuti tradunt.

XV.—Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum est usus *The Nobles.* atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod fere ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solebat, uti aut ipsi iniurias inferrent aut illatas propulsarent) omnes in bello versantur, atque eorum ut quisque est genere copiisque amplissimus, ita plurimos circum se ambactos clientesque habet. Hanc unam gratiam potentiamque noverunt.

XVI.—Natio est omnis Gallorum admodum dedita *Religion of the Gauls.* religionibus, atque ob eam causam, qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis quique in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut pro victimis homines immolant aut se immolatu-  
 and the more they are devoted to religion, the more they are devoted to the gods, and the more they are devoted to the gods, the more they are devoted to the gods.

vovent administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus utuntur, quod, pro  
vita hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur, non posse deorum im-  
mortalium numen placari arbitrantur, publiceque eiusdem generis  
habent instituta sacrificia. Alij immani magnitudine simulacra  
habent, quorum contexta viminibus membra vivis hominibus com-  
plent; quibus succensis circumventi flamma exanimantur homines.  
Supplicia eorum, qui in furto aut in latrocinio aut aliqua noxia sint  
comprehensi, gratiora dis immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum  
eius generis copia defecit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia descend-  
unt.

Their gods.

XVII.—Deum maxime Mercurium colunt; huius  
sunt plurima simulacra, hunc omnium inventorem  
artium ferunt, hunc viarum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestus  
pecuniae mercaturasque habere vim maximam arbitrantur; post  
hunc Apollinem et Martem et Iovem et Minervam. De his eandem  
fere, quam reliquae gentes, habent opinionem: Apollinem morbos  
depellere, Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia tradere, Iovem  
imperium caelestium tenere, Martem bella regere. Huic, cum  
proelio dimicare constituerunt, ea, quae bello ceperint, plerumque  
devovent; cum superaverunt, animalia capta immolant reliquasque  
res in unum locum conferunt. Multis in civitatibus harum rerum  
extructos tumulos locis consecratis conspicari licet; neque saepe  
accidit, ut neglecta quispiam religione aut capta apud se occultare  
aut posita tollere auderet, gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum  
cruciatu constitutum est.

XVIII.—Galli se omnes ab Dite patre prognatos praedicant  
idque ab druidibus proditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis  
temporis non numero dierum, sed noctium finiunt; dies natales et  
mensium et annorum initia sic observant, ut noctem dies subsequa-  
tur. In reliquis vitae institutis hoc fere ab reliquis differunt, quod  
suos liberos, nisi cum adoleverunt, ut munus militiae sustinere pos-  
sint, pulam ad se adire non patiuntur (filiumque puerili aetate in  
publico in conspectu patris assistere turpe ducunt).

XIX.—Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxoribus dotis nomine accep-  
erunt, tantas ex suis bonis aestimatione facta cum doti-  
bus communicant. Huius omnis pecuniae coniunc-  
tionis ratio habetur fructusque servantur; uter eorum

Marriage and  
funeral cus-  
toms.

vita superavit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorum <sup>des</sup> temporum pervenit. Viri in uxores, sicuti in liberos, vitae necisque habent potestatem; et cum pater familiae illustriore loco natus de- <sup>23. a</sup> cessit, eius propinqui conveniunt et, de morte si res in suspicionem venit, de uxoribus in servilem modum quaestionem habent et, si compertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis excruciatas interficiunt. Funera sunt pro cultu Gallorum magnifica et sumptuosa; omniaque, quae vivis cordi fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt, etiam animalia, ac paulo supra hanc memoriam servi et clientes, quos ab iis dilectos esse constabat, iustis funeribus confectis una cremabantur.

XX.—Quae civitates commodius suam rem publi-

**Laws against gossiping.**

cam administrare existimantur, habent legibus sanctum  
si quis quid de re publica a finitimis rumore aut fama  
i ad magistratum deferat neve cum quo alio communi  
epe homines temerarios atque imperitos falsis rumoribus  
facinus impelli et de summis rebus consilium capere  
t. Magistratus, quae visa sunt, occultant, quaeque esse  
averunt, multitudini produnt. De re publica nisi per  
qui non conceditur. *Sub voce*

THE GERMANS.—CH. 21-24.

### Their Gods.

XXI.--Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt. Nam neque druides habent, qui rebus divinis

praesint, neque sacrificiis student. Deorum numero eos solos  
ducunt, quos cernunt et quorum aperte opibus iuvantur, Solem et  
Vulcanum et Lunam, reliquos ne fama quidem acceperunt. Vita

Hardy lives.

omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei militaris consistit; ab parvulis labori ac duritiae student. Qui

diutissime impuberes permanserunt, maximam inter suos ferunt  
laudem : hoc ali staturam, ali vires nervosque confirmari putant.  
In fluminibus perluuntur et pellibus aut parvis renorum tegimentis  
utuntur, magna corporis parte nuda.

Land tenure.

XXII.—Agriculturae non student, maiorque pars eorum victus in lacte, caseo, carne consistit. Neque prius modum certum aut fines habet proprios, sed magis-

tratus ac principes in annos singulos gentibus cognationibusque hominum, qui tum una coierunt, quantum et quo loco visum est agri, attribuunt atque anno post alio transire cogunt. <sup>by 42 ff.</sup> ~~Eius rei~~ multas afferunt causas: ne assidua consuetudine capti studium belli gerendi agricultura commutent; ne latos fines parare studeant potentioresque humiliores possessionibus expellant; ne accuratius ad frigora atque aestus vitandos aedificent; ne qua oriatur pecuniae cupiditas, qua ex re factiones dissensionesque nascuntur; ut animi aequitate plebem contineant, cum suas quisque opes cum potentissimis aequari videat. 164

Habits in war.

XXIII.—Civitatibus maxima laus est quam latissime circum se vastatis finibus solitudines habere. Hoc

proprium virtutis existimant, expulsos agris finitimos cedere neque quemquam prope audere consistere; simul hoc se fore tutiores arbitrantur, repentinae incursionis timore sublato. <sup>multis</sup> Cum bellum

civitas aut illatum defendit aut infert, magistratus, qui ei bello praesint, ut vitae necisque habeant potestatem, deliguntur. In pace nullus est communis magistratus, sed principes regionum atque pagorum inter suos ius dicunt controversasque minuunt. Latro-

Brigandage no disgrace.

cinia nullam habent infamiam, quae extra fines cuiusque civitatis fiunt, atque ea iuventutis exercendae ac desidia minuendae causa fieri praedicant. Atque ubi

quis ex principibus in concilio dixit se ducem fore, qui sequi velint, <sup>by 42 ff.</sup> profiteantur, consurgunt ii, qui et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ab multitudine collaudantur; qui ex his secuti non sunt, desertorum ac proditorum numero ducuntur, omniumque <sup>by 42 ff.</sup> his rerum postea fides derogatur. Hospitem violare fas non putant; qui quacumque de causa ad eos venerunt, ab iniuria prohibent, sanctos habent, hisque omnium domus patent victusque communicatur. Int.

The Germans contrasted with the Gauls in bravery.

XXIV.—Ac fuit antea tempus, cum Germanos Galli virtute superarent, ultro bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrique inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Ger-

maniae sunt, loca circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratostheni et quibusdam Graecis fama notam esse video, quam illi Orcyniam

whenever a state wages an offensive

appellant, Volcae Tectosages occupaverunt atque ibi consederunt; quae gens ad hoc tempus his sedibus sese continet summamque habet iustitiae et bellicae laudis opinionem. Nunc quod in eadem inopia, egestate, patientia Germani permanent, eodem victu et cultu corporis utuntur, Gallis autem provinciarum propinquitas et transmarinarum rerum notitia multa ad copiam atque usus largitur, paulatim assuefacti superari multisque victi proeliis, ne se quidem ipsi cum illis virtute comparant.

#### THE HERCYNIAN FOREST.

*Its extent.*

XXV.—Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae supra demonstrata est, latitudo novem dierum <sup>iter</sup> expedito patet; non enim aliter finiri potest, neque mensuras itinerum noverunt. Oritur ab Helvetiorum et Nemetum et Rauracorum finibus rectaque fluminis Danuvii regione pertinet ad fines Dacorum et Anartium; hinc se flectit sinistrorsus diversis ab flumine regionibus multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit; neque quisquam est huius Germaniae, qui se aut adisse ad initium eius silvae dicat, cum dierum iter sexaginta processerit, aut, quo ex loco oriatur, acceperit; multa in eâ genera ferarum nasci constat, quae reliquis in locis visa non sint: ex quibus quae maxime differant ab ceteris et memoriae prodenda videantur, haec sunt.

*Its denizens;  
the reindeer.*

XXVI.—Est bos cervi <sup>Descriptio.</sup> figura, cuius a media fronte inter aures unum cornu existit excelsius magisque directum his, quae nobis nota sunt, cornibus; ab eius summo sicut palmae ramique late diffunduntur. Eadem est feminae marisque natura, eadem forma magnitudoque cornuum. ✓

*The elk.*

XXVII.—Sunt item, quae appellantur alces. Harum est consimilis capris figura et varietas pellium, sed magnitudine paulo antecedunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crura sine nodis articulisque habent, neque quietis causa procumbunt neque, si quo afflictæ casu conciderunt, erigere sese aut sublevare possunt. His sunt arbores pro cubilibus: ad eas se applicant atque ita paulum modo reclinatae quietem capiunt. Quarum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum a venatoribus, quo se recipere consueverint, omnes eo loco aut ab radicibus subruunt aut accidunt

arbores, tantum ut summa species earum stantium relinquatur. Huc cum se consuetudine reclinaverunt, infirmas arbores pondere affligunt atque una ipsac concidunt.

XXVIII.—Tertium est genus eorum, qui uri appell-  
 Bos primi- antur. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo infra elephantos,  
 genius. specie et colore et figura tauri. Magna vis eorum est  
 et magna velocitas, neque homini neque ferae, quam conspexerunt,  
 parcunt. Hos studiose foveis captos interficiunt; hoc se labore  
 durant adulescentes atque hoc genere venationis exercent, et qui  
 plurimos ex his interfecerunt, relatis in publicum cornibus, quae  
 sint testimonio, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuescere ad  
 homines et mansuefieri ne parvuli quidem excepti possunt. Ampli-  
 tudo cornuum et figura et species multum a nostrorum boum corni-  
 bus differt. Haec studiose conquisita ab labris argento circumclu-  
dunt atque in amplissimis epulis pro poculis utuntur.

#### CAESAR AGAIN IN GAUL. HE PUNISHES THE REBELS.

CH. 29-44.

XXIX.—Caesar, postquam per Ubios exploratores  
 Caesar's return comperit, Suebos sese in silvas recepis-  
 from se, inopiam  
 Germany. frumenti veritus, quod, ut supra demonstravimus,  
 minime omnes Germani agri culturae student, con-  
 stituit non progredi longius; sed, ne omnino metum reditus sui  
 barbaris tolleret atque ut eorum auxilia tardaret, reducto exercitu  
 partem ultimam pontis, quae ripas Ubiorum contingebat, in longi-  
 tudinem pedum ducentorum rescindit atque in extremo ponte  
 turrim tabulatorum quattuor constituit praesidiumque cohortium  
 duodecim pontis tuendi causa ponit magnisque eum locum muni-  
 tionibus firmat. Ei loco praesidioque Caium Volcatium Tullum  
 adolescentem praefecit. Ipse, cum maturescere frumenta incipe-  
 rent, ad bellum Ambiorigis profectus per Arduennam silvam, quae  
 est totius Galliae maxima atque ab ripis Rheni firibusque Trevero-  
 rum ad Nervios pertinet milibusque amplius quingentis in longitu-  
 dinem patet, Lucium Minucium Basilum cum omni equitatu  
 praemittit, si quid celeritate itineris atque opportunitate temporis  
 proficere posset; monet, ut ignes in castris fieri prohibeat, ne qua  
 eius adventus procul significatio fiat; sese confestim subsequi dicit.

## XXX.—Basilus, ut imperatum est, facit. Celeriter

Pursuit of Ambiorix: a hair-breadth escape.

contraque omnium opinionem confecto itinere multos in agris inopinantes deprehendit: eorum indicio ad ipsum Ambiorigem contendit, quo in loco cum paucis equitibus esse dicebatur. Multum cum in omnibus rebus, tum in re militari potest fortuna. Nam sicut magno accidit casu, ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparatum incideret, priusque eius adventus ab omnibus videretur, quam fama ac nuntius afferretur, sic magnae fuit fortunae, omni militari instrumento, quod circum se habebat, erepto, redis equisque comprehensis ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hoc quoque factum est, quod aedificio circumdato silva, ut sunt fere domicilia Gallorum, qui vitandi aestus causa plerumque silvarum ac fluminum petunt propinquitates, comites familiaresque eius angusto in loco paulisper equitum nostrorum vim sustinuerunt. His pugnantis illum in equum quidam ex suis intulit: fugientem silvae texerunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum et ad vitandum multum fortuna valuit.

## XXXI.—Ambiorix copias suas iudicione non con-

A 'sauve qui peut'; suicide of Catuvoleus.

duxerit quod proelio dimicandum non existimavit, an tempore exclusus et repentino equitum adventu prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitu subsequi crederet, dubium est. Sed certe dimissis per agros nuntiis sibi quemque consulere iussit. Quorum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentes paludes profugit; qui proximi Oceano fuerunt, hi insulis sese occultaverunt, quas aestus efficere consueverunt; multi ex suis finibus egressi se suaeque omnia alienissimis crediderunt. Catuvoleus, rex dimidiae partis Eburonum, qui una cum Ambiorige consilium inierat, aetate iam confectus, cum laborem belli aut fugae ferre non posset, omnibus precibus detestatus Ambiorigem, qui eius consilii auctor fuisset, taxo, cuius magna in Gallia Germaniaeque copia est, se exanimavit.

## XXXII.—Segni Condrusique, ex gente et numero

Segni and Condrusi submit. Quintus Cicero is left in camp at Aduatuna.

Germanorum, qui sunt inter Eburones Treverosque, legatos ad Caesarem miserunt oratum, ne se in hostium numero duceret neve omnium Germanorum, qui essent citra Rhenum, unam esse causam iudicaret; nihil se de bello cogi

tasse, nulla Ambiorigi auxilia misisse. Caesar explorata re quaesitione captivorum, si qui ad eos Eburones ex fuga convenissent, ad se ut reducerentur, imperavit: si ita fecissent, fines eorum se violaturum negavit. Tum copiis in tres partes distributis impedimenta omnium legionum Aduatucam contulit. Id castelli nomen est. Hoc fere est in mediis Eburonum finibus, ubi Titurius atque Aurunculeius hiemandi causa consederant. Hunc cum reliquis rebus locum probarat, tum quod superioris anni munitiones integrae manebant, ut militum laborem sublevaret. Praesidio impedimentis legionem quartam decimam reliquit, unam ex his tribus, quas proxime conscriptas ex Italia traduxerat. Ei legioni castrisque Quintum Tullium Ciceronem praeficit ducentosque equites attribuit.

## CAESAR GOES ON A SEVEN DAYS' EXCURSION TO THE SCHELDT.

XXXIII.—Partito exercitu Titum Labienum cum legionibus tribus ad Oceanum versus in eas partes, quae Menapios attingunt, proficisci iubet, Caium Trebonium cum pari legionum numero ad eam regionem, quae ad Aduatucos adiacet, depopulandam mittit, ipse cum reliquis tribus ad flumen Scaldem, quod influit in Mosam, extremasque Arduennae partes ire constituit, quo cum paucis equitibus profectum Amborigem audiebat. Discedens post diem septimum sese reversurum confirmat, quam ad diem ei legioni, quae in praesidio relinquebatur, deberi frumentum sciebat. Labienum Treboniumque hortatur, si rei publicae commodo facere possint, ad eum diem revertantur, ut rursus communicato consilio exploratisque hostium rationibus aliud initium belli capere possent.

XXXIV.—Erat, ut supra demonstravimus, manus certa nulla, non oppidum, non praesidium, quod se armis defenderet, sed in omnis partis dispersa multitudo. Ubi cuique aut vallis abdita aut locus silvestris aut palus impedita spem praesidii aut salutis aliquam offerebat, consederat. Haec loca vicinitatibus erant nota, magnamque res diligentiam requirebat non in summa exercitus tuenda (nullum enim poterat universis ab perterritis ac dispersis periculum accidere), sed in singulis militibus conservandis; quae tamen ex parte res ad salutem exercitus pertinebat. Nam et praedae cupiditas multos longius

evocabat, et silvae incertis occultisque itineribus confertos adire prohibebant. Si negotium confici stirpemque hominum scelatorum interfici vellet, dimittendae plures manus diducendique erant milites; si continere ad signa manipulos vellet, ut instituta ratio et consuetudo exercitus Romani postulabat, locus ipse erat praesidio barbaris, neque ex occulto insidiandi et dispersos circumveniendi singulis deerat audacia. Ut in eius modi difficultatibus, quantum diligentia provideri poterat, providebatur, ut potius in nocendo aliquid praetermitteretur, etsi omnium animi ad ulciscendum ardebant, quam cum aliquo militum detrimento noceretur.

Promises of booty, Dimittit ad finitimas civitates nuntios Caesar: omnes evocat spe praedae ad diripiendos Eburones, ut potius in silvis Gallorum vita quam legionarius miles periclitetur, simul ut magna multitudine circumfusa pro tali facinore stirps ac nomen civitatis tollatur. Magnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

CICERO BESIEGED BY THE SUGAMBRI IN CAESAR'S ABSENCE.  
CH. 35-41.

Raid of the  
Sugambri.

XXXV.—Haec in omnibus Eburonum partibus gebantur, diesque appeteat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedimenta legionemque reverti constituerat. Hic, quantum in bello fortuna possit et quantos afferat casus, cognosci potuit. Dissipatis ac perterritis hostibus, ut demonstravimus, manus erat nulla, quae parvam modo causam timoris afferret. Trans Rhenum ad Germanos pervenit fama, diripi Eburones atque ultro omnes ad praedam evocari. Cogunt equitum duo milia Sugambri, qui sunt proximi Rheno, a quibus receptos ex fuga Tencteros atque Usipetes supra docuimus. Transeunt Rhenum navibus ratibusque triginta milibus passuum infra eum locum, ubi pons erat perfectus praesidiumque ab Caesare relictum; primos Eburonum fines adeunt; multos ex fuga dispersos excipiunt, magno pecoris numero, cuius sunt cupidissimi barbari, potiuntur. Invitati praeda longius procedunt. Non hos palus in bello latrociniiisque natos, non silvae morantur. Quibus in locis sit Caesar, ex captivis quaerunt; profectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cognoscunt. Atque unus ex captivis, Quid vos, inquit. *hanc miseram ac tenuem sectamini praedam, quibus licet iam esse fortunatissimis? Tribus horis Aduatucam venire potestis: huc omnes suas fortunas*

*exercitus Romanorum contulit; praesidii tantum est, ut ne murus quidem cingi possit neque quisquam egredi extra munitiones audeat. Oblata spe Germani, quam nacti erant praedam, in occulto relinquunt; ipsi Aduatucam contendunt usi eodem duce, cuius haec indicio cognoverant.*

X XXXVI.—Cicero, *qui* omnes superiores dies prae-  
 Ciceo relaxes his precautions. ceptis Caesaris cum summa diligentia milites in castris  
 continuisset ac ne calonem quidem quemquam extra = *ullum*  
 munitionem egredi passus esset, septimo die, diffidens, de numero  
 dierum Caesarem fidem servaturum, quod longius progressum audiebat neque ulla de reditu eius fama afferebatur, simul eorum per-  
 motus vocibus, qui illius patientiam paene obsessionem appellabant, si quidem ex castris egredi non liceret, nullum eius modi casum  
 exspectans, quo, novem oppositis legionibus maximoque equitatu  
 dispersis ac paene deletis hostibus, in milibus passuum tribus  
*offendi posset.* offendi posset, quinque cohortes frumentatum in proximas segetes  
 mittit, quas inter et castra unus omnino collis intererat. Complures  
 erant ex legionibus aegri relict; ex quibus qui hoc spatio dierum  
 convaluerant, circiter trecenti, sub vexillo una mittuntur; magna  
 praeterea multitudo calonum, magna vis iumentorum, quae in castris  
 subsederant, facta potestate sequitur.

XXXVII.—Hoc ipso tempore et casu Germani  
 Is surprised by the Sugambri. equites interveniunt protinusque eodem illo, quo  
 venerant, cursu ab decumana porta in castra irrum-  
 pere conantur, nec prius sunt visi obiectis ab ea parte silvis, quam  
 castris adpropinquarent, usque eo, ut, qui sub vallo tenderent mer-  
 catores, recipiendi sui facultatem non haberent. Inopinantes  
 nostri re nova perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum cohors  
 in statione sustinet. Circumtunduntur ex reliquis hostes partibus,  
 si quem aditum reperire possent. Aegre portas nostri tuentur;  
 reliquos aditus locus ipse per se munitioque defendit. Totis trepi-  
 datur castris, atque alius ex alio causam tumultus quaerit; neque  
 quo signa ferantur, neque quam in partem quisque conveniat,  
 provident. Alius castra iam capta pronuntiat, alius deleto exercitu  
 atque imperatore victores barbaros venisse contendit; plerique  
 novas sibi ex loco religiones fingunt Cottaeque et Titurii calamita-

tem, qui in eodem occiderint castello, ante oculos ponunt. Tali timore omnibus perterritis, confirmatur opinio barbaris, ut ex captivo audierant, nullum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere nituntur seque ipsi adhortantur, ne tantam fortunam ex manibus dimittant.

The camp is saved.

XXXVIII.—Erat aeger cum praesidio relictus Publius Sextius Baculus, qui primum pilum ad Caesarem duxerat, cuius mentionem superioribus proeliis fecimus, ac diem iam quintum cibo caruerat. Hic diffusus suae atque omnium saluti inermis ex tabernaculo prodit; videt imminere hostes atque in summo esse rem discrimine: capit arma a proximis atque in porta consistit. Consequuntur hunc centuriones eius cohortis, quae in statione erat; paulisper una proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus Sextium gravibus acceptis vulneribus; aegre per manus tractus servatur. Hoc spatio interposito reliqui sese confirmant tantum, ut in munitionibus consistere audeant speciemque defensorum praebeant.

Return of the foraging parties. The Sугамбрі fall upon them.

XXXIX.—Interim confecta frumentatione milites nostri clamorem exaudiunt; praecurrunt equites; quanto res sit in periculo, cognoscunt. Hic vero nulla munitio est, quae perterritos recipiat: modo conscripti atque usus militaris imperiti ad tribunum militum centurionesque ora convertunt; quid ab his praecipiat, expectant. Nemo est tam fortis, quin rei novitate perturbetur. Barbari signa procul conspicati oppugnatione desistunt; redisse primo legiones credunt, quas longius discessisse ex captivis cognoverant; postea despecta paucitate ex omnibus partibus impetum faciant.

They fight their way into camp.

XL.—Calones in proximum tumultum procurrunt. Hinc celeriter deiecti se in signa manipulosque coniciunt; eo magis timidos perterrent milites. Alii, cuneo facto, ut celeriter perrumpant, censent, quoniam tam propinqua sint castra, et, si pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquos servari posse confidunt; alii, ut in iugo consistent atque eundem omnes ferant casum. Hoc veteres non probant milites, quos sub vexillo una profectos docuimus. Itaque inter se cohortati

duce Caio Trebonio, equite Romano, qui eis erat praepositus, per medios hostes perrumpunt incolumesque ad unum omnes in castra perveniunt. Hos subsecuti calones equitesque eodem impetu militum virtute servantur. At ii, qui in iugo constiterant, nullo etiam nunc usu rei militaris percepto, neque in eo, quod probaverant, consilio permanere, ut se loco superiore defenderent, neque eam, quam prodesse aliis vim celeritatemque viderant, imitari potuerunt, sed se in castra recipere conati iniquum in locum demiserunt. Centuriones, quorum nonnulli ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legionum virtutis causa in superiores erant ordines huius legionis traducti, ne ante partem rei militaris laudem amitterent fortissime pugnantes conciderunt. Militum pars, horum virtute summotis hostibus, praeter spem incolumis in castra pervenit, pars a barbaris circumventa periit.

## CAESAR RE-APPEARS ON THE SCENE.

**The Sugambri retire.** XLI.—Germani desperata expugnatione castrorum, quod nostros iam constitisse in munitionibus videbant, cum ea praeda, quam in silvis deposuerant, trans Rhenum sese receperunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror, ut ea nocte, cum Caius Volusenus missus cum equitatu ad castra venisset, fidem non faceret, adesse cum incolumi Caesarem exercitu. Sic omnino animos timor praeoccupaverat, ut paene alienata mente deletis omnibus copiis equitatum se ex fuga recepisse dicerent neque incolumi exercitu Germanos castra oppugnatos fuisse contenderent. Quem timorem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

**Return of Caesar to Adnatuca.** XLII.—Reversus ille, eventus belli non ignorans unum, quod cohortes ex statione et praesidio essent emissae, questus (ne minimo quidem casu locum relinquere debuisset), multum fortunam in repentino hostium adventu, potuisse iudicavit, multo etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipso vallo portisque castrorum barbaros avertisset. Quarum omnium rerum maxime admirandum videbatur, quod Germani, qui eo consilio Rhenum transierant, ut Ambiorigis fines depopularentur, ad castra Romanorum delati optatissimum Ambiorigi beneficium obtulerunt.

Ambiorix baffles a final pursuit.

### XLIII.—Caesar rursus ad vexandos hostes profectus

magno coacto numero ex finitimis civitatibus in omnes partes dimittit. Omnes vici atque omnia aedificia, quae quisque conspexerat, incendebantur; praeda ex omnibus locis agebatur; frumenta non solum a tanta multitudine iumentorum atque hominum consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempore atque imbribus procubuerant, ut, si qui etiam in praesentia se occultassent, tamen <sup>agunt</sup> ~~his~~ deducto exercitu rerum omnium inopia pereundum <sup>causa</sup> ~~videretur~~. Ac saepe in eum locum ventum est tanto in omnes partes <sup>105</sup> ~~diviso~~ equitatu, ut modo visum ab se Amborigem in fuga <sup>106</sup> ~~circumspicerent~~ captivi nec plane etiam abisse ex conspectu contenderent, ut spe consequendi illata atque infinito labore suscepto, qui se summam ab Caesare gratiam inituros <sup>196</sup> ~~putarent~~, paene naturam studio ~~vincerent~~, semperque paulum ad summam felicitatem defuisse ~~videretur~~, atque ille ~~latebris~~ aut ~~salibus~~ se eriperet et noctu occultatus alias regiones partesque ~~peteret~~ non ~~maiore~~ equitum praesidio quam quattuor, quibus solis vitam suam committere audebat.

Execution of Acco for treason. Caesar crosses the Alps to Italy.

### XLIV.—Tali modo vastatis regionibus exercitum

Caesar duarum cohortium <sup>198</sup> ~~damno~~ ~~turocohorum~~ Remorum <sup>199</sup> ~~reducit~~, concilioque in eum locum Galliae indicto de coniuratione Senonum et Carnutum quaestionem habere instituit et de Accone, qui princeps <sup>200</sup> ~~eius~~ consilii fuerat, graviore sententia pronuntiata ~~more~~ maiorum supplicium sumpsit. Nonnulli iudicium veriti profugerunt. Quibus cum aqua atque igni ~~interdixisset~~, duas legiones ad fines Treverorum, duas in Lingonibus, sex reliquas in Senonum finibus Agendici in hibernis collocavit frumentoque exercitui proviso, ut instituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

Thursday Feb. 27, 1890

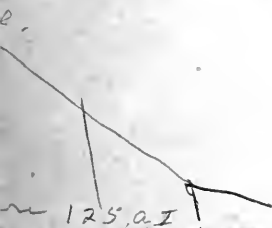
Vertical End Disc

~~Horizontal~~ attention

from

Calibra - arum

## NOTES.



Relation of all clauses

intendant	}	depends on Circumstances
inherent		
redemptive	}	depend " Antecedent
circumstantial		
inherent	}	depend on vertical Est
perfect		



# NOTES.

## BOOK V.

N.B.—In the grammatical references, F. means First Latin Book ; P., Primary Latin Book. In the case of the former, the numbers refer to *pages* ; of the latter, to the *sections* of Part III., except where otherwise indicated.

### CHAPTER I.

*Lucio Domitio, Appio Claudio consulibus* : abl. abs. : F. 102, 3. Note : P. 85 (o). The *et* is often omitted between the names of consuls in this phrase. The year was A.U.C. 700 ; B.C. 54. The Romans marked their year by the names of the consuls in office ; the Athenians by the name of the chief archon, hence called ἀρχων ἐπώνυμος ; the Spartans by the first of the Ephors ; the Argives by the priestesses or Juno.

*ab hibernis* : among the Belgae : B. IV., c. 38.

*in Italiam=in Galliam Cisalpinam*. Caesar as proconsul could not leave Gaul without the permission of the Senate. Italy Proper did not include *Liguria, Gallia Cisalpina* and *Illyricum*. Caesar generally spent his winters at *Luca*, a town on the borders of Italy Proper. "Here he could hold easy communication with his partisans at home. Lucca during his residence was more like a regal court than the headquarters of a Roman Proconsul. At one time 200 senators were counted among his visitors ; 120 lictors indicated the presence of the numerous magistrates who attended his levées. Both Pompey and Crassus came here to hold a conference with him." Liddell's Hist. of Rome, p. 663.

*consuerat=consueverat* : note that *consuevi, meminī, odi, coepi, novi* are perfects with a present meaning, the pluperfect having the meaning of an imperfect : hence, "was accustomed."

*legatis* : Caesar put a *legatus* over each legion.

*quam plurimas* : generally explained by *tam plurimas quam illi possent plurimas facere*. For *possent* see F. 206, 4 ; P. 106.

*modum formamque* : the former applies to "the shape" generally, the latter to "the form" particularly.

*subductiones* : "hauling up" on land, or "beaching" ; cp. B. IV., c. 29 : *in aridum subduxerat*. The plural is used, for more than one vessel is referred to. The word *deducere* is applied "to take down" the vessels to the sea.

*humiliores* sc. *naves*: the vessels were more flat than usual, with less elevation above the water, and with less depth of hold.

*in nostro mari*: the Mediterranean. So Plato (Phaedrus, 113, A.) calls the Mediterranean ἡ παρ' ἡμῶν θάλασσα. The classical meaning of *mediterraneus* is "inland" i.e., "far from the sea."

*id eo magis*, scil. *facit*: "he does this the more for the following reason."

*minus magnos*: the waves in the channel were shorter than in the ocean, not for the reason that Caesar gives, but because of the narrowness of the channel, the varied character of the coast, and the meeting of opposing currents.

*ad onera—transportandam*: with *onera* supply *transportanda* implied in *transportandam*.

*maribus*: said to be the only example of the ablative plural of *mare*. The plur. here refers to different parts of the Mare Internum or "Mediterranean."

*actuarias* predicate: scil. *naves*. These were vessels propelled by oars and sails.

*feri*: what is the usual construction after *imperat*? F. 181, 3; P. II., 27.

*usui*: dative of purpose: F. 134, 1; P. 82 (c).

*ad armandas naves*: "for rigging out the vessels" cp. ὀπλίζειν in Greek: Hom. Od. 17, 288: νῆες ὀπλίζομεναι. He may refer to the fact that Spain supplied broom plant for cables, and metal for anchors.

*conventibus*: the proconsul held assizes or courts of justice in the principal cities of the province. In public or important causes he generally acted as judge, but in minor matters he delegated this power to his *quaestor* or to the *legati*. For convenience the provinces were divided into circuits (*conventus*).

*Provinciae*: Caesar's province.

*Galliae citerioris*: trace on the map *Gallia citerior* and *Gallia ulterior*.—*imperat*: what two meanings has *impero* and what two constructions? Translate, *militibus imperat*: *milites provinciae imperat*.

*qui doceant*=*ut ei doceant*: F. 184, 1; P. II., 25.

*paratos—satisfacere*: "that they were ready to make amends by all reasonable means for their wrong doing." The infinitive after *paratus* for the gerund or gerundive with *ad* is irregular. Zumpt explains the infinitive in such cases as the present by supposing that *paratus esse* equivalent to a single verb as *volo* which takes the infinitive.

*cos* i.e. *obsides*.

*ad certam diem*: when predetermination of future time is used we often find *ad* with accusative. Translate: *ad posterum diem senatum convocat*: *postero die senatum convocat*. It is rare that *dies* is feminine in such a case.

*nisi—fecerint*: the time of the verb is considered with reference to the act implied in *persecuturum*.

*arbitros dat*: "he appoints assessors." These *arbitri* based their decisions on equity. —*litem aestimare*: "assess the costs." —*poenam*: to be paid by the Pirustae over and above restitution.

*qui=ut ei*: see above *qui doceant*.

## CHAPTER II.

*revertitur*: generally *reverti* is to return on one's journey: *redire* after the journey has been finished.

*inde=ex Gallia citeriore*. Long estimates that Caesar must have travelled over 2,000 miles. In the beginning of the year he left his army in Belgium, passed through Transalpine Gaul, held court in Cisalpine Gaul, went to Illyricum and settled disputes there, returned to Belgium in May or June.

*cum*: explain fully the force of *cum* with indic. and subj.: F. 203; P. 99 (f), v.

*in—inopia*: since the verb *sum* has no present participle, the prepositional ablative absolute is often used for it: cp. B. IV., c. 33., *in declivi ac praecipiti loco*: B. I., 33., *in tanto imperio*: B. II., 22., *in tanta iniquitate*. Translate here: "although they were in the greatest scarcity of all materials."

*cujus*: here *quod* would be more correct. Though the relative is often attracted into the case of its antecedent in Greek, it is not so common in Latin: yet we have in Hor., Sat. I. 6, 15, *judice quo nosti*: Ter. Heaut. I., 1, 36, *haec quidem causa qua dixi tibi*. Others explain the construction = *cujus generis naves*.

*instructas*: "fully rigged"; others read *constructas*.

*neque—possent*: literally: "and that they were not far from being able to be launched within a few days," i.e. "and that they were almost ready for launching within a few days." Note the redundant negative contained in *quin*: F. 185, 2, and 188, 6; P. II., 156-158.

*paucis diebus*: time within which is expressed by the abl. or by *intra* or *inter* with acc.: F. 82, 2; P. 85 (b).

*colaudatis*: bring out the force of *con* in translation.

*quid velit*: dependent questions are put in the subjunctive: F. 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

*portum Itium*: probably *Boulogne (Gesoriacum)* is meant. At the head of the harbour of Boulogne there is a small French village by the name of *Isques*. Others say *Ambleteuse*; others still say *Wissant*.

*quo ex portu* : often the antecedent is expressed in the relative clause.

*milium triginta* : a Roman *passus* was a double step from the *toe* of the left to the *toe* of the left, *i.e.*, two steps, and measured 4 ft. 10½, so that a Roman mile would be 1,000 *passus* or 1618 yards.

*huic rei* : "for carrying out this object."

*expeditis* : "unencumbered with baggage," opposed to *impeditus*.

### CHAPTER III.

*haec civitas* : *i.e.* of the Treveri.

*plurimum—valet* : "is the most powerful." Strictly *plurimum* is a neut. cognate acc. used adverbially.

*supra* : B. II., 24 ; III., II.

*Indutiomarus* was opposed to the Romans. Caesar induced the leading men of the state to side with *Cingetorix*, the son-in-law, but rival of *Indutiomarus*. The latter took up arms against the Romans, but was slain by Labienus : B. v., 7.

*alter* : *Cingetorix*. Distinguish *alter* and *alius*.

*cognitum est—venit* : since the action expressed by *cognitum est* would be over before that expressed by *venit*, it would be natural to expect the pluperfect, *cognitum erat*. The Latin idiom, however, with *ut primum*, *quum primum*, *simul ac*, *simul atque*, all meaning, "as soon as," requires the perfect historical, not the pluperfect as might be expected from the succession of the actions indicated by these conjunctions.

*gererentur* : subjunctive of dependent question : F. 176, 2 ; P. 99 (d).

*cogere*, join this with *instituit*, "set about collecting."

*iisque* : the *-que* joins *cogere* and *parare*.

*Arduennam* : the word is from the Keltic *ar-denn*, "the deep," or from *ard*, "hard," and *venna*, "a pasture" : now the forest of *Ardennes*, a vast forest in the N. W. of France and Belgium. The forest of *Arden* at Stratford is part of the same wood.

*ingenti magnitudine* : abl. of description : F. 131, 9 ; P. 85 (c).

*nonnulli* : distinguish in meaning *nonnulli* "some" : *nulli non*, "every" ; so, also *non nemo*, *nemo non* ; *non nunquam*, *nunquam non* : *non nusquam*, *nusquam non*.

*privatim* : "individually."

*civitati consulere* : distinguish in meaning *consulere aliquem*, *consulere illicui*, *consulere in aliquem*.

*veritus ne* : F. 185, 3 ; P. II., 154.

*sese* : oblique narration is often introduced with *dixit* or some similar word omitted. Give rules for *oblique* narration : F. 205-209 ; P. 106. Change this into *direct* narration.

*quo facilius* : why not *ut facilius* ? F. 183, 5 ; P. II., 26.

*laberetur* : literally "might fall off" from their allegiance, i.e., "might revolt."

*in sua potestate* : "at his mercy."

## CHAPTER IV.

*dicerentur* : subjunctive of dependent question : F. 176, 2 ; P. 99 (d).

*evocaverat* scil. *Caesar*.

*in officio* : "in allegiance."

*nihilo tamen secius* : "none the less however." The comparative *secius* is rare because the positive *secus* has a comparative meaning. *secus* is from *sequor* and primarily means "after," then "less," so that *nihilo secius* means "less by nothing," i.e. nevertheless.

*quod—valere* : "because he was of opinion that this was done by him (Caesar), not merely according to the deserts of this one (*Cingetorix*), but also he thought it was of great advantage that the influence of that one should be very great among his own countrymen." Note that *quum—tum = et—et. —merito* : F. 71, 3. —*magni* : F. 150, 2 ; 166, 3 ; P. 81 (g).

*perspexisset* : virtual *oblique* narrative, hence subjunctive in dependent clause : F. 206, 4 ; P. 106. It may be explained as causal subj., *cum = cum eius* : F. 198, 4 ; P. 99, (g) iii.

*graviter tulit* : "greatly annoyed."

*qui=quippe qui* : "whereas he had already been" : F. 198, 4, Note : P. 99, (g) iii.

*inimico animo* : abl. of description : F. 131, 9 ; P. 85 (c).

*hoc dolori* : "at this grievance." —*exarsit* from *exardesco*.

## CHAPTER V.

*Meldis* : the *Meldi* or *Meldae* were a people bordering on *Gallia Belgica*. Their territory lay at the junction of the *Sequana* (*Seine*), and the *Arar* (*Marne*).

*revertisse* : in the present and derived tenses *revertor* is the form : in the perfect and derived tenses the active form alone is used in the ante-Augustan writers. Distinguish in meaning *revertor*, to return on one's way, and *redeo*, to return after attaining one's object.

*obsidum loco*: when joined with the genitive, *loco* has a semi-prepositional force, "instead of," "as." So we have *in numero*: cp. *criminis loco*, "as a charge," *praemii loco*, "as a reward." It seems a substitute for the dative of purpose, which, however, is restricted to semi-abstract nouns.

*quod—verbatur*: when does *quod* take the indicative and when the subjunctive? F. 198, 2; P. 99 (g), i.

*quum—abesset*: when does *quum* take the indicative and when subjunctive? F. 203; 188, 3; 196, 7; P. 99 (f), (g) and (i).

## CHAPTER VI.

*Dumnorix* had conspired against the Romans in 58 B.C., and was pardoned by the entreaties of his brother Divitiacus (B. I., 20). Fearing that he might a second time stir up strife, Caesar desired to take him to Britain. His name is said to be derived from *domun-rig*, "king of the world."

*antea*: B. I., 3, 18.

*in primis*: "particularly."

*quod—cognoverat*: give the syntax of *quod*: F. 198, 2; P. 99 (g), i.

*eum*, scil. *esse*.

*animi—auctoritatis*: genitive of description: F. 130, 7, 8; P. 81 (e).

*accedebat huc*: "there was the further consideration that," literally, "to this was added that." The subject of *accedebat* is the clause *quod dixerat* and *sibi deferri* is in apposition to *quod* governed by *dixerat*.

*graviter ferebant*: as the Aedui annually elected a magistrate called *Vergobretus*, so called from the Keltic *Féar-go-breith*, "a man for judging," or *Guer-g-breath*, "strong in judgment," they naturally were annoyed that this right of election had been taken out of their hands: B. I., 16. Caesar (B. VII., 33) states that the person holding this office could not leave the state during his term of office, and that no person could be elected, if a living member of the family held the post.

*neque*: "and yet—not."

*recusandi—causa*: "to protest or urge any plea against it."

*quod timeret*: gives not Caesar's reasons but those of *Dumnorix*: "because, he said, he feared." F. 198, 2; P. 99, (g), i.

*religionibus*: "religious scruples." The root—*LIG* (cp. *ligare*), points to the binding or constraining force of the unseen world.

*id*: the request to be left behind.

*sevocare*: "to hold secret meetings": from *se*, *vocare* to call apart to some spot.

*coepit*: what verbs are perfect-present? F. 145; P. 72 (a), (b). Explain the construction in *principes sollicitari coepti sunt*; *principes sollicitare coepit*.

*territare*: either a historical infinitive or supply *coepit*. Bring out the force of the *frequentative*. F. 303 (b); P. 75, iii.

*feri*, scil., *dixit*. Note the *litotes* in *non sine causa*.

*nobilitate*: abl. of separation. F. 158, 2; P. 85 (h).

*in—Galliae*: “in the presence of the Gauls”: cp. *in conspectu imperatoris*: B. II., 25.

*interficere—vereretur*: verbs of fearing take the infinitive in the sense “to be afraid,” “not to have the courage” to do anything.—*interficere*, to kill in any manner, and from any motive: *necare*, implies cruelty or injustice.

*fidem—interponere*: “he pledged his own word to the rest,” *i.e.*, to those not in the power of Caesar.

*iusiurandum* and *iuramentum*, a civil oath: *sacramentum*, a military oath by which the soldier binds himself to serve the State.

## CHAPTER VII.

*quod—tribuerat*: B. I., 33. Explain the indicative with *quod*: F. 198, 2; P. 99 (g), i.

*posset*: scil. *Caesar eum coercere et detertere*.

*longius*: “too far”: F. 58, 5.

*amentiam*: “a person is said to be *amens* when he acts without reason like an idiot: he is said to be *demens* when he acts like a madman.” —Döderlein.

*prospiciendum*: scil, *statuebat*.

*ne—posset*: scil. *amentia*: “to prevent his folly harming him or the state to any degree”: —*ne*: F. 185, 3; P. II., 29. —*quid*: acc. of extent or degree.

*itaque commoratus*: “therefore *seeing* he had to stay”: or some take it “*during* his stay.”

*Corus*: the N. W. wind: also written *Caurus*: unfavourable to any one setting out from Boulogne.

*partem*: acc. of extent. F. 69, 9; P. 83 (c).

*temporis=anni*

*dabat operam*: “he was careful.”

*milites=pedites*: as often in Caesar seeing that the *foot* formed the main strength of the Romans: see Introduction, *Army*.

*conscendere in naves*: we also find in Caesar *conscendere naves*.

*impeditis animis*: “when their attention was distracted”: cp. Cic. Leg., I, 3, 8, *impedito animo*.

*insciente Caesare* : "without Caesar's knowledge : " abl. absolute.

*domum* : explain construction : F. 85, 1 ; P. II., 93, (a).

*intermissa—postpositis* : "giving up his departure and every thing else."

*retrahi imperat* : the more usual construction would be *ut retrahatur* : F. 181, 3 ; P. II., 27, 28.

*si faciat* : "if he should offer resistance."

*pro sano* : "like a sane man."

*praesentis*, scil. *Caesaris*.

*neglexisset* : what would this be in direct narrative ?

*manu* : "in a hand to hand fight" : cp. Livy II., 46 ; *pugna iam ad manus venerat*.

*civitatis* : predicate genitive : F. 124 ; P. 81 (a).

## CHAPTER VIII.

*continente* : words in—*ans*,—*ens*, when used as substantive or as actual participle, especially in the construction of the abl. abs. have *e*—in the abl. sing. We have with *continens*, however, *continenti* and *continente*.

*pro tempore et pro re* : "according as time and circumstances would permit."

*pari numero quem = eodem numero quem* : i.e. 2,000 : ch. 5.

*solis occasu* : another rendering is *ad solis occasum*. The date of the first expedition is fixed at the 18th or 20th of July.

*Africo* : called by the Greeks *Αίψ*, as blowing from Libya. The S.W. wind is still called by the Italians *Africo* or *Gherbino*.

*intermisso* : "having calmed down."

*longius* : Caesar probably passed the South Foreland and on the return of the tide he made his way to the shore.

*remis contendit—caperet* : "he strove to reach by rowing." As to the port from which Caesar sailed many conflicting opinions are held. Mr. Airy contends that Caesar started from the *estuary of the Somme*, and landed at the beach of *Pevensey*, on the coast of Sussex, near the spot where William the Conqueror disembarked eleven centuries afterwards. Mommisen favors the idea that the infantry embarked at *Amblecuse* (which he identifies with *portus Itius*), and the cavalry at *Wissant*, east of Cape *Griz-Nez* (Hist. of Rome, IV., 7). Strabo also gives *portus Itius* as the place of embarkation on the first expedition. Others say that the infantry started from Gesoriacum (*Boulogne*), and the cavalry at *Amblecuse*.

*admodum* : properly, "according to measure" i.e. "in as great a measure as can be." In combination with numerals it denotes *approximation* and occurs frequently in Livy and Curtius. In Cicero we find it only

in the phrase *nihil admodum*, "in reality, nothing at all." Translate: "was highly praiseworthy."

*non—labore*; "since they made no relaxation in their exertions in rowing."

*accessum—navibus*: "all the ships reached Britain:" for the dative, See F. 164, 2, note; P. 82 (d), ii.

*cum*: "though": F. 196, 7; P. 99 (i). iii.

*annotinis*: scil. *navibus*: some say "added to the ships used in the former year": others, "added to the provision ships."

*quas—fecerat*: "which each one had chartered for his own service." Some explain *sui commodi* as governed by *causā* understood. It is not usual to have the omission of *causa* except with the genitive of the gerund. It is then explained as an imitation of the Greek idiom when *ἐνεκα* or *ἐνέπρ* is omitted: cp. IV., 17: *si naves deiciendi operis essent a barbaris missae*. The omission of *causa* with a substantive is perhaps nowhere else found in a prose writer.

*amplius octingentis*: the nominative *octingentae* would be more regular: P. III., 85 (f), and II., 123, c., 2.

*ac—abdiderant*: distinguish in meaning *in loca superiora* and *in locis superioribus*, *se abdere*.

## CHAPTER IX.

*exposito exercitu*: the full expression is *exercitum ex navibus in terram exponere*.

*castris* governed by *idoneo*: what adjectives govern a dative? F. 60, 2; P. 82 (e), v.

*consedissent*: subjunctive of dependent question: F. 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

*cohortibus decem*: not a legion, but two cohorts from each of the five legions.

*qui—essent*: "to guard the vessels": for the two datives: F. 134, 1; P. 82 (c) and (b).

*de tertia vigilia*: "in the course of the third watch": the expression implies that the third watch had been set. The Romans divided the night into four watches: *prima vigilia* from 6 to 9 p.m.: *secunda vigilia* from 9–12 p.m.: *tertia vigilia* from 12–3 a.m., and *quarta vigilia* from 3–6 a.m.

*veritus navibus*: "fearing for the ships." The dative is not common with *vereor*, though common enough with *metuo* and *timeo*.

*molli atque aperto*: "smooth and clear of rocks."

*praesidio*: dat. of purpose: F. 134, 1; P. 82 (c). *navibus* governed by *prae*—in *praefecit*. F. 120; P. 82 (e), ii.

*equitatu—essedis*: abl. of instrument.

*conspicatus est* : "caught a glimpse of" : the word *conspicor* is common in Caesar and Plautus : not common in Terence : never found in Lucretius, Vergil, or Cicero.

*ad flumen* : the *Stour* near Wye, the north bank of which is much higher (*locus superior*) than the south and would thus form a natural defence.

*se in silvas abdiderunt* : distinguish in meaning *se in silvas abdiderunt* : "they hid themselves by fleeing into the woods!" and *se in silvis abdiderunt* : "they hid themselves when in the woods."

*opere* : explained afterwards by *crebris arboribus succisis*. Such breast-works were often made in the American Civil War by felling trees.

*ipsi—propugnabant* : "they in scattered bands throw their javelins out of the woods." Others translate : "they came out of the woods in small bodies to fight" : but compare B. VII., 86 : *ex turribus propugnantes*.

*testudine facta* : "forming a *testudo*." This movement was done by the soldiers of the inner files locking their shields above their heads, while the outer files protected the sides. The resemblance of the locked shields to a tortoise shell (*testudo*) gave it the name.

*longius* : "too far."

*prosequi* : "to follow up the pursuit," "to continue in the pursuit." In the next chapter *persequor* is "to make a pursuit," "to pursue."

*munitioni castrorum* : "for fortifying the camp" : by digging a trench and throwing up a mound. As this was indispensable, *castra munire* has often the meaning of *castra locare*, *castra ponere*.

## CHAPTER X.

*postridie eius diei* : literally "on the morrow of that day."—*postridie* = *posteri die* seems to be a *locative form* for *postero die*, an ablative in ordinary Latin. The genitive *eius diei* is pleonastic and may have arisen from the analogy of the Greek in which *ὑστερος* takes a genitive : cp. B. I., 47. — *pridie eius diei* : Tacit. Ann. XV. 54 : Tacit. Hist. I., 26, *postero iduum* = *ὑστέρᾳ εἰδῶν*.

*milites* = *pedites* : as we find elsewhere in Latin.

*in expeditionem* : "as a flying column."

*aliquantum itineris* : partitive genitive : "some distance on their journey."

*extremi* : "the rear" of the detachment sent out by Caesar were still seen by those remaining in the camp.

*qui nunciarent* = *ut ei nunciarent* : F. 184, 1 ; P. II., 25.

*afflictas* : "shattered."

*in litore eiectas esse*: "were stranded on the shore." Some read *in litus*. The difference between the ablative and the accusative is that the latter would simply imply that they were driven on shore while the former would express that they were still remaining there.

*subsisterent*: "held," "kept them in position."

*concurso*: "collision."

*incommodum*: a mild way of stating the actual loss that occurred in consequence of the disaster.

## CHAPTER XI.

*legiones*: so *milites* = *pedites*.

*desistere itinere*: abl. of separation: F. 158, 2; P. 85 (h).

*revertitur*: see note V., 5.

*coram perspicit*: "he sees with his own eyes."

*sic ut*: *sic* is here superfluous. The regular construction would be to omit *sic ut* and use the accusative with the infinitive in the clause *reliquae—viderentur*, since it really depends on *cognoverat*.

*negotio*: "trouble."

*fabros*: these were not necessarily a part of the legion, though they frequently accompanied it. They were a sort of Engineer Corps who looked after the mechanical work to be done, and were under the direction of the *praefectus fabrum*. Here, in the absence of the regular *fabri*, Caesar calls for volunteers out of the legion.

*iubet—scribit*: note the force of these presents.

*nullae operae ac laboris*: "though it was a wearisome and laborious undertaking: F. 124; P. 81 (a).

*subduci*: *subducere naves* opposed to *deducere naves*.

*praesidio navibus*: for the two datives: F. 134, 1; P. 82 (c) and (b).

*eodem*: to the fortified place lately taken from the enemy.

*summa imperii*: "the whole of the command."

*huic—intercesserant*: "constant wars had sprung up between this one and the other states": for the dative *huic*: F. 120; P. 82 (e), ii.

*permoti*: in presence of the Romans the Britons forgot their broils and appointed Cassivellaunus a leader.

## CHAPTER XII.

*quos—dicunt*: "of whom the inhabitants state there is a tradition that they were born in the island itself." The original inhabitants of Britain belonged to the great Celtic family that occupied in Caesar's time all the western part of Europe. The belief that they were *autochthones* seems to

have been common among the Romans : Tacit. Agr. II.: *ceterum Britanniam qui mortales initio coluerint, indigenae an advecti. ut inter barbaros, parum competunt.* So also were the Carians according to Herodotus (B. I. 171); the Sicani (Thucy. VI. 2); the Athenians (Eurip. Ion, 29).

*maritima pars* scil. *incolitur ab iis.* So also Tacit. Agr. II.: *proximi Gallis et similes sunt;*

*nominibus* : that is, there were tribes in Britain and on the continent with the same name as the Atrebates, Belgae and Parisii.

*hominum* : "of the population."

*fere Gallicis consimilia* : with *Gallicis* scil. *aedificiis* : "like in the main these in Gaul."

*taleis examinatis* : "iron bars of ascertained weight." A good deal of discussion has arisen on this passage, because the Greek paraphrast renders the word *taleis* by *δακτυλίοις*, "finger rings." By comparing the present passages with B. VII. 33, we find *taleae* used in the sense of "bar" or "beam."—*examinatis* : cp. *examen* (= *exagimen*), "the beam of a balance : " so *ala* = *axilla* : *mala* = *maxilla*.

*nummo* : Herodotus calls the current coin *νόμισμα* (B. I. 94 ; III. 56). According to Aristotle (Ethics v. 8) the word is derived from *νόμος* because the value is fixed by *law* (*νόμος*). It is probable that the Romans introduced the word *nummus* from the Sicilian word *νόμος*, a name given to a small coin worth about five cents of our money. The earliest mint established at Rome was in 344 B.C.

*plumbum album* : "tin." Caesar here reverses facts. The *tin* mines of Britain are found near the coast chiefly in Cornwall, Devon and Wales ; while *iron* is abundant in Stafford, Shropshire, Derby, parts of York and Durham. The Scilly Islands were called *Cassiterides* or *Tin Islands* from the Greek *κασσίτερος*, "tin." It is strange that Mr. Crutwell, of Oxford (History of Roman Literature, p. 192), should make the mistake in supposing that *plumbum album* meant *lead*. "The existence of lead and iron were known to him (Caesar) ; he does not allude to tin, but its occurrence could hardly have been unknown to him."

*ejus* : refers to iron. According to official statistics, the gross annual produce of iron is 3,600,000 tons, while *tin* amounts to about 10,500 tons. The fact that Caesar gained his information from the people on the coast, where iron is scarce, may have led to this mistake.

*aere importato* : though we find *copper* in Cornwall, Devon, Stafford and Anglesey, the mines were not much worked till the last century.

*materia* : "timber."

*fagum* : *fagus* in Vergil and in Pliny is the *beech* while *φηγός* in Theophrastus is the *oak*. Both words are from *φαγεῖν*, "to eat," indicating the use of the nuts as food for primitive man. Crutwell (Hist. of Roman

Literature p. 192, note 3) says: "I am told by Professor Rolleston that Caesar is here mistaken. The pine, by which he presumably meant the Scotch fir, certainly existed in the first century B.C., and as to the *beech*, Burnham beeches were then fine young trees."

*leporem—putant*: it is not known how this belief originated. The hare was forbidden under the Mosaic law (Levit. xi., 6); possibly the absence of corn in Britain may have made the others unpalatable.

*non fas=nefas*: "impious."

*loca frigoribus*: on account of its insular position and the influence of the gulf stream. Tacitus says (Agr. 12) *caelum crebris imbris ac nebulis foedum: asperitas frigorum abest*.

### CHAPTER XIII.

*natura*: "by nature," i.e. "in shape." Caesar may have gained his knowledge of the shape of Britain from the natives or from the then extant works of the Greek writers since the island was not circumnavigated by the Romans till A.D. 84, fully a century after his time: cp. Tacit. Agr. 10: *hanc oram novissimi maris tunc primum Romana classi circumventa insulam esse Britanniam affirmant*. Strabo (IV. 5, 1) mentions also the fact that Britain is triangular and says that its longest side is parallel to Keltica and is 4,300 *stadia* in length (about 500 miles). Keltica was a name applied to the country from the mouth of the Rhine to the Pyrenees. Pomponius Mela (III., 6) compares Britain in shape to Sicily and says that one side faces Gaul, and another side, Germany.

*Cantium*: now Kent, which is said to mean "corner."

*quo—appelluntur*: "for which almost all the ships from Gaul make;" with *appellere navem*, cp. the Gk. *κέλλειν νῆα*.

*inferior* corresponds to *alter* in *alter angulus*.

*hoc—alterum*, scil. *latus*.

*quingenta*: the measurement from North Foreland to Land's End is 344 British or 356 Roman miles. Strabo's statement was evidently taken from this statement of Caesar.

*alterum vergit* scil. *latus*: cp. Tacit. Agr. 10: *Britannia in orientem Germaniae, in occidentem Hispaniae obtenditur*: "Britain lies opposite to Germany on the East, to Spain on the West." The erroneous views held by the Romans with regard to the position of Britain arose from their innate dread of long ocean voyages.

*qua ex parte*: Tacitus (Agr. 34) says that Ireland is between Britain and Spain. The word *Hibernia* is said to be derived from the Keltic *Eriu* or *Iveriu*, meaning "Western." (Max Müller Science of Language, Vol. I. p. 284.)

*dimidio minor*: "half the size," literally, "less by a half. The area of Great Britain is said to be 77,370 square miles; that of Ireland about 30,370 sq. miles.

*pari spatio atque=eodem spatio atque*: "the same distance as:" abl. characteristic: F. 131, 9; P. 85 (c); so *pari numero*: B. v. Chap. VIII. The distance from Carnsore Point in Southern Ireland and St. David's Head in Wales is 53 miles: between Fairhead in Northern Ireland and Mull of Cantire in Scotland the distance is 13 miles: the distance from Calais to Dover is 21 miles.

*Mona*: some have supposed the *Isle of Man* to be here referred to, since the position of that Island is midway between Britain and Ireland. As, however, there is no doubt about *Mona* in Tacitus (Agr. 14; Ann. XIV. 29) referring to Anglesey, Caesar may have been misinformed of its position. Besides the Isle of Man was properly called in Latin *Monopia*. According to Taylor (Words and Places), the word *Mona* is from the Celtic *monn* "a district." So we have *Maine*, *Mayenne* in France, *Mantua* in Italy, *La Mancha* in Spain, *Mansfield*, *Manchester*, the *Menai* Straits in England. Others say from Welsh *mon* "alone," or *menedh* "an island."

*complures=insulae*: Caesar, no doubt, refers to the Hebrides, Orkney or Shetland Islands, but wrongly places them in the channel between Britain and Ireland.

*nonnulli*: probably Greek geographers whose works have perished.

*bruma=brevima=brevissima*: scil. *dies*: the winter solstice. This, of course, is untrue.

*certis=mensuris*: "by accurate measures made by the water clock." The *clepsydra* (κλεψύδρα) is meant. The water clock was said to have been invented about 460 B.C. Its use was common among the Greeks. It consisted ordinarily of two globes of glass cemented together, the lower one receiving the water and having the divisions of the hours marked on it.

*ut=fert opinio*: "according to their belief" : cp. Cic. pro Fonteio 13, *ut opinio mea fert*: "as I believe."

*septingentorum milium*: the west coast of Britain is 590 British or 610 Roman miles. For descriptive genitive: F. 130, 7, 8; P. 81 (e).

*tertium*, scil., *latus*.

*hoc*: the west coast of Britain is 550 British or 570 Roman miles. This is short of the actual.

## CHAPTER XIV.

*humanissimi*: cp. Shakespeare Henry VI., I, 4, 7.

Kent, in the commentaries of Caesar writ,  
Is termed the civil'st place in all the isle.

*interiores plerique*: "the majority of the people of the inland district": *plerique* means "most people" or "the majority": *plurimi*, both "most people" or "a great many."

*vitro*: "woad," still cultivated in France and till *indigo* took its place much used in producing blue dyes.

*hoc* ; ablative of means.

*horridiore aspectu* : ablative of description : F. 131, 9 ; P. 85 (c).  
So also *capillo promisso*.

*deni duodenique* : "companies of ten and in other cases twelve." We would say "ten or twelve." This statement is generally regarded as untrue.

## CHAPTER XV.

*ita tamen ut=ita tamen conflixerunt ut*.

*omnibus partibus=in omnibus partibus* : "in every quarter."

*cupidius* : "too eagerly."

*intermisso spatio* : "after an interval of time had elapsed."

*se-eiecerunt* : "they sallied forth." The impetuous character of the Kelts was as strongly marked in Caesar's days as in later times.

*in statione* : "on sentry."

*iis primis* : the first cohorts of the legion regularly contained the finest troops.

*inter se* : "apart."

*per medios—perruperunt* scil. *hostes* : "the enemy made a dash between them." These cohorts had probably not been on the first expedition.

## CHAPTER XVI.

*cum—dimicaretur* : "when the battle was going on in sight of all and in front of the camp." For *quum* : F. 203 ; P. 99, (f), v.—*sub oculis=in conspectu*.

*intellectum est* : "it was evident to us." Supply *nobis dat. or a nobis* : F. 164, 2, note : P. 82 (d), ii.

*nostros=milites legionarios*. —*sub oculis=in conspectu*.

*ab signis discedere* : "to desert the standards" would be a violation of the *sacramentum* or military oath.

*minus aptos* : "less effective" (than others would be).

*equites—dimicare* scil. *intellectum est*.

*consulto—cederent* : "often purposely yielded."

*quum—removissent* : "when once they had drawn away."

*dispari praelio* : the heavy body armour of the Romans would hamper their movements, while the Briton armed (Tacit. Agr. 36) with a long sword and small buckler, would skilfully elude the blows of his antagonist and by his superior length of weapon would be more effective.

*et cedentibus et sequentibus* scil. *Britannis*: "to the Britons while retreating and pursuing." The meaning is that when the Britons and Romans used cavalry the danger was equalized, but when the Britons used chariots they were at an advantage.

*accedebat huc ut*: "to this was added the fact that."

*stationes dispositas*: "outposts stationed here and there."

*deinceps*: "in succession": so also *manceps*, *terriceps*, *anceps*, old nominatives used adverbially.

## CHAPTER XVII.

*rari*: "infrequently."

*lenius*=*minus acriter*: "with less spirit."

*proelio lacessere*: "to draw out to battle:" distinguish this from *proelium lacessere*: "to skirmish."

*tres legiones*: this is an unusually large number to send on a foraging expedition. Perhaps the lesson they had learned on a previous occasion (B. IV. 32) had made them more guarded.

*Caio Trebonio*: Caius Trebonius was one of Caesar's *legati*, and distinguished himself by his personal bravery when the winter quarters of Cicero were attacked by the German horse: B. VI. 40.

*advolaverunt*, scil., *hostes*.

*sic uti*—*absisterent*: i.e., *sic advolaverunt*=*tam celeriter advolaverunt*: "with such impetuosity they rushed forward that they came close up to the standards of the legions." The meaning is that the enemy dashed against those that had ventured outside the ranks to forage but did not dare to commence a regular engagement with the three legions.—*signis legionibusque* = *signis legionum* by *hendiadys*.

*neque* = *et non*

*subsidio* scil. *legionum*: "to the support of the legions:" for the case see F. 105, 9, note: P. 85 (k), iii. Translate, "as long as the cavalry trusting to the support (of the legions), now that they saw the legions in their rear, drove the enemy before them."

*neque*—*dederunt* scil., *nostri milites*: "our soldiers gave them no opportunity either to unite their forces, or to form in line, or to leap down from their war chariots."—*sui colligendi*: F. 171; P. II., 141. *Aut* after *neque* is more emphatic than a second *neque* would be.—*unquam* and *usquam* are properly used in sentences that are negative or virtually negative.

*summis copiis*: "with all their forces united:" Some translate it by "with a numerous force." The Greek paraphrast renders it by πολλῇ συνάμει.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

*fines Cassivellauni*: across the Thames in what is now Middlesex and Buckinghamshire.

*uno omnino loco*=*in uno omnino loco*. It is difficult to say which spot is meant here. *Sunbury, Conway, Westminster, Wallingford* and *Kingston* are given by different authorities.

*hoc i.e. in hoc loco*.

*alteram*=*adversam*: "on the opposite."

*præfixis*: "driven into the sloping bank," while *defixæ* refers to those driven into the bed of the stream.

*perfugis*: a person is said to be *perfuga* with regard to those to whom he flees: *transfuga*, with regard to those whom he abandons.

*præmisso*: sent up and down the south bank of the Thames to guard the advance of the legion, and to dislodge those who may be waiting to oppose them.

*ea celeritate—ierunt*: "but our soldiers pushed forward at so rapid a pace, and with so violent an onset, though their heads alone were out of the water, that, etc.": *capite solo*: abl. of measure: F. 58, 6; P. 85 (g).

## CHAPTER XIX.

*ut supra*: B. v., 17.

*contentionis*: "of continuing (the war)."

*amplioribus*: "the most of."

*millibus—quattuor essedariorum*: if each chariot contained six men besides the driver, as it seems they did, there would be about six hundred chariots.

*servabat*=*observabat*: "kept watching."

*locus*=*in locis*.

*iis regionibus*: ablative of separation: "from that district."

*viis semitisque*: *via* is the regular road; *semita* is a by-path.

*et confligebat*: "and attended with these he was wont to engage with great danger to our men."

*hoc metu*: "from fear of this," as *hoc dolore* (B. v., chap. 4).

*relinquebatur ut*: "the only alternative left to Caesar was" or "all that remained for Caesar was."

## CHAPTER XX.

*labore atque itinere*: "by toilsome marching": *hendiadys*.

*Trinobantes* occupied Essex and Suffolk. The best way of translating this involved sentence is to break it up into at least four sentences,

"Meanwhile the Trinobantes, about the most powerful state of that district, send ambassadors to Caesar and promise to surrender themselves to him, and to obey his orders. From that (state) the youthful Mandubratius, who had attached himself to Caesar, had come to him in continental Gaul. Imanuentius, the father of this (Mandubratius), had held sovereign power in that state and had been slain by Cassivellaunus, (while) he himself (Mandubratius) had escaped death by flight. They (the Trinobantes) ask (Caesar) to defend Mandubratius from all wrong-doing on the part of Cassivellaunus and to send to the state (a man) to rule it and to exercise sovereign power." See remarks on the differences between Latin and English idiom. F. p. 230; P. page 210. —*ex qua* scil. *civitate*. —*pollicentur sese—facturos*: F. 110, I; P. II., 13. —*qui praesit = talem ut praesit*: F. 184, I; P. II., 34, 55.

*his—imperat*: what two meanings and what two constructions has *impero*?

*ad numerum*: "to the full amount."

## CHAPTER XXI.

*Trinobantibus defensis*, the kindness shown by Caesar to the Trinobantes gained over the other tribes to the side of Rome. The *Cenimagni* inhabited Bedford and Cambridge; the *Segontiaci*, probably Berkshire; the *Ancalites*, Oxford and Buckingham; *Bibiocti*, Berkshire; the *Cassi*, Hertfordshire. This defection was ruinous to the British cause; even the *Cassi*, the state over which Cassivellaunus ruled, joined in it.

*oppidum*: generally supposed to be *Verulamium* or St. Albans.

*satis magnus*: "quite a large."

*autem*: "now."

*natura atque opere*: "by its natural position and especially by fortification."

*oppugnare*, "to storm": *expugnare*, "to take by storm."

*paulisper*: used of past and future time: *peruniper*, generally of future time.

*multi* scil. *Britanni*: "many of the Britons."

## CHAPTER XXII.

*in—locis*: about St. Alban's.

*ad mare*: "on the sea coast."

*quibus regionibus*: "over which district": for dative F. 120; P. 82 (e), ii.

*castra navalia*: B. v., chap. 2.

*constituisset—superesset—intelligeret*: explain these subjunctives.

*id posse* : "and that this time might easily be wasted," if further delay was made. The experience of the first expedition had taught Caesar the danger of waiting too long in Britain.

*quid penderet : tributum* was a tax paid by each individual through the tribe in proportion to a man's property : *vectigal* taxes levied in any other way. Caesar left no garrison in Britain and the tax was, consequently, never paid. The conquest of Britain was really begun under the Emperor Claudius, A.D. 43, but not completed till the reign of Domitian about 81 A.D.

## CHAPTER XXIII.

*refectas* scil. *esse* : "had been repaired."

*his deductis*, scil., *navibus*,

*duabus—commeatibus* : "in two trips :" ablative of manner.

*sic accidit uti* : "it so happened that." F. 182, 4 ; P. 99 (b), ii.

*desideraretur* : "was lost."

*inanes* : these were of two kinds, both those used in the first trip returning for another load and those made on the continent and sent across by Labienus.

*ne—excluderetur* : "that he might not be prevented from sailing by the time of the year."

*aequinoctium suberat* : Caesar sailed from Britain shortly after the middle of September, so that he had been in the island two months or over.

*necessario—collocavit* : "he necessarily stowed away his soldiers in narrower compass than usual."

*solvisset* scil. *naves*.

## CHAPTER XXIV.

*subductis* : "drawn up on shore" for the winter by means of rollers.

*concilio* : assemblies of the whole nation were often held as in B. I. 30.

*Samarobriva* : from Samara, *Somme*, briva, bridge ; so that the word means *Sommebridge* : now *Amiens*.

*Angustius provenerat* : "had turned out rather short." The plural *siccitates* refers to the "seasons of dry weather :" cp. *frigora* : B. v. Chap. 12.

*aliter ac* : after *alius*, *similis*, *aeque*, *perinde* and comparatives, *ac*=than. —*alteram*, note that *secundus* is rarely used for *second*.

*proxime* : "very recently" said of time, though it commonly is said of place.

*trans Padum* : speaking from the standpoint of Rome.

*inopiae—mederi posse*: "could he remedy the scarcity of corn." Distinguish *medeor* "to heal," referring to the skill of the physician and *sanor*, to the disease.

*millibus—centum*: this probably means that the camps were situated within a circle, having a radius of 100 miles, so that no two camps would be more than 200 miles from each other.

## CHAPTER XXV.

*summo loco natus*: "born of the highest rank": abl. of origin.

*huic* indirect object after *restituerat*.

*tertium—regnantem*: "in the third year of his reign" literally "this one reigning now the third year." Note the present participle.

*quod—pertinebat*: "because (the interests of a) great many were involved" literally "because the matter concerned a good many": supply *ea res* with *pertinebat*.

*hos—mittere scil. iubet*: "he orders (L. Plancus) to take into custody and to send to him these by whose instigation he had now learned that Tasgetius had been murdered." Note the indicative in *cognoverat* scil. *Caesar*.

## CHAPTER XXVI.

*diebus—quibus*: literally, "within about fifteen days in which" i. e. "about fifteen days after."

*ventum est* scil. *Caesari*=*Caesar venit*: F. 164, 2, note; P. 82 (d), ii.

*quum praesto fuissent*: "though they had pre-sented themselves."

*Indutiomari—impulsi*: this chief had been offended (B. v., chap. 4) by the degree of power given by Caesar to his rival Mandubratius, and had become a formidable rival.

*oppugnatum* scil. *castra*: for supine: F. 174; 2 and 3; P. 105.

*aliqui*: less common than *aliquis*: F. 132; P. 95, i.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

*ex Hispania*=*Hispaniensis*.

*sese*: put this speech into direct narration. The order is, *sese confiteri, pro beneficiis Caesaris in se, (se) debere plurimum ei &c.*

*ei*=*sibi* i. e. *Ambiorigi*.

*obsidum numero*: cp. *loco obsidum*.

*de oppugnatione*: "in regard to the storming of the camp."

*suaque—imperia* : "and that the conditions of his authority were such."

*porro* : "now" passing on to a fresh statement.

*alteri legioni subsidio* : for the two datives : F. 134, 1 ; P. 82 (c) and (d)

*quibus satisfecerit* : "and since he had done enough for them in respect of his duty to his country." Cicero (Orat. Part. 22) defines *pietas* : *iustitia erga parentes pietas nominatur*.

*habere—Caesaris* : "he had regard to what was due from him in return for the favours of Caesar."

*saluti consulat* : distinguish *aliquem consulere*, *alicui consulere*, *in aliquem consulere*.

*conductam* scil. *mercede* : "hired for pay."

*hanc* scil. *manum*.

*ipsorum esse consilium* : "that it was for themselves to consider:" *ipsorum* refers to Titurius and Cotta.

*eductos—deducere* : "to take the soldiers out of their winter quarters and conduct them either to Cicero or to Labienus."

*quod quum faciat* : "in doing this he was both acting in the interest of his state in relieving it from the (Roman) winter quarters." In this chapter carefully account for the tenses in *oblique narration*.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

*re* : "news."

*etsi—existimabant* : explain the mood in *existimabant*. F. 196 ; P. 99 (i).

*consilium* : "a council of war" consisting of the *legati*, *tribuni* and *primorum ordinum centuriones*.

*nihil—existimabant* : "thought that nothing should be done rashly, nor should they leave winter quarters without the order of Caesar."

*quantavis—docebant* : "they told them that forces of the Germans, however great, could be kept back, in case that the winter quarters were fortified." —*munitis hibernis* : abl. abs. = *si hiberna munita essent*.

*rem—testimonio* : "what had happened was a proof of this:" referring to the clause introduced by *quod*. Note the dative of purpose which is confined to abstract or semi-abstract nouns.

*re—premi* : "that there was trouble about supplies."

*quid esse levius aut turpius* : rhetorical question in oblique narrative. What would it be in direct narrative?

## CHAPTER XXIX.

*contra ea = contra* : "on the other hand."

*sero* : "when too late."—*facturos* scil. *esse se*.

*clamitabat* : "kept shouting out:" explain the force of the frequentative. F. 303, (e) ; P. 75.

*aliquid calamitatis* : "some misfortune:" partitive genitive : F. 69, 10 ; P. 81 (b).

*non—spectare* scil. *se* : "he had in view not the advice of the enemy but the real state of affairs."

*magno dolori* : see note on *testimonio*, last chapter.

*Ariovisti mortem* : Caesar nowhere tells us when or where Ariovistus died.

*tot—extincta* : "after receiving so many reverses, it (Gaul) had been reduced under the sway of the Roman people after its former glory in military greatness had been extinguished."

*quis—persuaderet* : "who would believe this?" literally, "who would persuade this to himself?" Note the rhetorical question.

*sine certa re* : "without sure information," or "unless on sure grounds."

*suam—tutam* : "his own advice was safe for either emergency."

*si—perventuros* : "if no greater difficulty came in their way, without any danger they would reach the next legion:" i.e., if the Gauls did not attack them.

*unam—salutem* : "their only hope of safety was in speedy action."

*praesens* : "immediate."

*longinqua obsidione* : ablative absolute : "if the siege were long."

## CHAPTER XXX.

*in utramque partem* : "on both sides" i.e. *pro* and *con*.

*primis ordinibus = centurionibus primorum ordinum* : the six centurions of the first cohort of the legion had the name of *primipilani* or *primipilares*. These were members of the council of war.

*acriter resisteretur* : "a fierce opposition was maintained."

*vincite* : "have your own way", literally "prevail", "conquer."

*is = talis* : "I am not the one to be" &c. : F. 188, 8, 5 ; P. II., 34, 35.

*hi reposcent* : "these men will understand the matter, and if any disaster occur, will demand satisfaction from you, Cotta."—*hi* refers to the soldiers to whom he pointed and who were near enough to hear what was said.

*qui intereant* : "inasmuch as they, if you would not hinder them, on the day after tomorrow united with (those in the) next winter-quarters, would

certainly bear along with their comrades only their share of impending danger and certainly would not die like outcast and banished men far away from the other (Romans)."

*qui=quippe qui.—si—liceat* : literally "if it is allowed through you".—*perendino* : probably derived from *πέπρω*, *dies*, "the day beyond tomorrow."

### CHAPTER XXXI.

*consurgitur* impersonal passive : "the members rise from the council" : so also *pronunciatur* below, "orders are issued."

*comprehendunt utrumque* : "they grasp the hands of both" : Cotta and Sabinus.

*rem* : "their safety."

*dat—manus* : "gives way," "yields" : offers his hands to be bound or signifies by a gesture that he makes no further resistance.

*consumitur—cogeretur* : "the remaining part of the night is spent without sleep, since each soldier examined his own effects (to see) what he might be able to carry with him, what part of his winter's stores he would be compelled to leave behind" : *circumspiceret* : F. 188, 3 ; P. 99 (g), ii. *posset—cogeretur* : F. 176, 2 ; P. 99 (d).

*omnia—augeatur* : "every reason is suggested (to prove) why there was no staying without danger, and why the danger would be increased by the lassitude and watches of the soldiers." The meaning is that the soldiers try to convince themselves by plausible arguments that their conduct for leaving was justifiable.

*ut—persuasum=ut ei proficiscerentur quibus esset persuasum* : literally, "as those would start who were convinced," or "like men convinced." Note the impersonal use of *persuasum esset*. Translate into Latin : *I am convinced*.

*agmine—impedimentis* : ablative absolute.

### CHAPTER XXXII.

*vigiliis* : "by their not retiring to rest."

*bipartito* : "at two points."

*a milibus—duobus* : "about two miles off" : for *milia passuum circiter duo ab eo loco*.

*opportuno—loco* : either the abl. abs. or governed by *in* understood. It is said that such a place is the valley of Lavarges, about two miles above Tongres.

*se—demisisset* : "had descended" : so *erigere agmen*, "to ascend" a hill.

*convallis* : a valley closely surrounded by hills, at the bottom of which the Romans were caught.

*novissimos=agmen novissimum*.

*iniquissimo* : "most unfavourable."

## CHAPTER XXXIII.

*tum demum* : "then and not till then" : so often in Caesar.

*qui—providisset* : "inasmuch as he had no foresight" : *qui=quippe qui* or *quum is* : F. 198, 4, note ; P. 99 (g), iii.

*trepidare—disponere* : historical infinitives.

*haec scil. fecit.*

*ut—viderentur* : the full construction is *ita fecit ut omnia viderentur deficere eum* : "and he acted in such a way that all his plans seemed to fail him."

*quod—coguntur* : "a thing which generally is wont to happen to those who are compelled to form their plans on the spur of the moment."  
—*quod=id quod* : *consuevit* : note the perfect present.

*at* : "however," "on the other hand" :

*qui cogitasset=quippe qui cogitavisset.*

*auctor* : "adviser."

*omnia obire* : "to attend to all his duties." Supply *officia*.

*iusserunt pronuntiare* scil. *tribunos et centuriones* : "they ordered the tribunes and centurions to pass the word." Another reading is *pronuntiari*, which is probably correct : "ordered word to be passed."

*in orbem* : "into a hollow square."

*reprehendendum non est* : "is not to be criticised."

*vulgo* : "at all points," "everywhere" : cp. the Greek paraphrast πάντοθεν.

## CHAPTER XXXIV.

*consilium* : "presence of mind."

*tota acie* : ablative of place : "along the whole line."

*illorum—praedam* : "the booty (of the Romans) belonged to them (the Gauls)" : possessive genitive.

*proinde—existimarent* : "therefore let them consider" : *existimarent* in oblique, would be *existimate* in direct narration.

*duce* : Sabinus.

*neu=neve=et ne.*

*levitate armorum* : the Gauls were generally armed with a long sword and light buckler and could easily elude the heavily armed legionaries of the Romans.

*posse* depends on *dixit* understood implied in *iubet*. The command is again taken up in *insequantur*.

## CHAPTER XXXV.

*iis = barbaris.*

*quum* : the indicative is often used with *quum* in the sense of "when-ever."

*eam partem* : the troops that left the circle to charge on the enemy were exposed to attack on all sides. "Meanwhile that portion of the square was unavoidably exposed, and javelins poured in on its unprotected flanks."

*quum—coeperant* : see note on *quum* above.

*conferti* : "being so closely packed together" : from *confercio*.

*conflictati* : "though overwhelmed."

*horam octavam* : about 2 p.m.

*primum pilum duxerat* : "who had been chief centurion" : *i.e.* the first centurion of the first cohort. He was probably now serving as a veteran. These after the expiration of their term of service were called *emeriti* or *evocati*.

*in adversum os* : "full in the face" : cp. *adversa nocte*, "with night in their teeth."

## CHAPTER XXXVI.

*Cn Pompeium* : probably a Gaul who had obtained the Roman *civitas* and adopted the *nomen* and *praenomen* of the Roman noble through whom he obtained it.

*rogatum* : supine.

*sperare—pertineat* : "(he said that) he hoped that the request might be obtained, so far as the safety of the soldiers was concerned." Note the present infinitive in *posse* depending on *sperare*. What is the usual construction and why is not the usual construction observed here?

*ipsi*, *i.e.*, Titurius.

*communicat—colloquantur* : after *communicat* supply "and suggests." Trans. : "sends word to Cotta and suggests that, if he thinks fit, they should withdraw from the fight and together hold a conference with Ambiorix."

*sperare—posse* : "(he said) that he hoped that he would be able to obtain the request for both his own safety and that of the soldiers."

## CHAPTER XXXVII.

*quos—tribunos militum = eos tribunos militum quos.*

*propius Ambiorigem* : the adverbs *propius*, *proxime*, like the preposition *prope* from which they are formed, often govern the accusative.

*iussus abire*—*ut faciant imperat.*: note the difference between the construction of *jubere* and *imperare*.

*condicionibus*: "terms;" derived from *con* and *dico*, I say; hence "agreement."

*longior consulto*: "on purpose somewhat tedious."

*ululatum*: "war cry": cp. Livy, v., 37: *nata in vanos tumultus gens (Gallorum) truci cantu clamoribusque variis horrendo cuncta compleverant cantu*.

*pauci—elapsi*: Sabinus and Cotta had a legion and a half, or about 6000 men, as the legion would not have the full complement of soldiers. At least 5000 soldiers must have perished in the battle.

## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

*re demonstrata*: "when news of the battle was laid before them."

*sui liberandi*: gerundive sing., agreeing with *sui* plural: F. 170, 3; P. 104. On the other hand *ulciscendi* is a gerund.: F. 172; P. 103.

*nihil—interfici*: "that it was not a difficult task for the legion wintering with Cicero to be surprised and slaughtered."—*negotii*: partitive genitive.

*cum Cicerone*: "under the command of Cicero."

*hiemet*: why subjunctive? F. 206, 4; P. 106.

## CHAPTER XXXIX.

*Centrones—Geidumnos*: small tribes in what is now West Flanders, dependants of the Nervii.

*eorum* = *Nerviorum*.

*huic* i.e. Cicero, whose camp was next besieged.

*quod* = *id quod*.

*lignationis—causa*: "to procure wood and materials for fortification."

*adepti* = *si adepti essent*: "if they got this victory."

## CHAPTER XL.

*mittuntur*: note the emphatic position of this word.

*portulissent* scil. *eas litteras nuntii*: note the force of *per*.

*materia*: "timber."

*admodum*: literally, "up to the amount of": it may mean "fully" or "at least."

*excitantur*: "are erected."

*perficiuntur*: note that prepositional compounds of *facio* make the passive regularly in—*ficior*.

*multo*: really an abl. of difference used adverbially: cp. Greek πολλῷ with comparatives.

*deinceps*: "one after another," "continuously." The termination is the same as in *particeps*, *princeps*.

*opus sunt*: in this case *opus* is an indeclinable noun with the force of an adjective: "necessary": *opus* may be used with every case but the dat. of the thing needed. Here *quaecumque* is nominative: so we may also have *quorumcumque opus est*, *quaecumque* (acc.) *opus est*, or *quibuscumque* (abl.) *opus est*: the person needing is, however, put in the dative.

*pila muralis*: these siege pikes were longer and heavier than the ordinary pikes.

*contabulantur*: "are built up in stories."

*pinnae—attexuntur*: "notched battlements and breastworks (made scil. *factae*) of woven osiers are attached (to the towers)."

*tenuissima valetudine*: "of very feeble health": the ablative denotes an accidental quality: the genitive, if used, would express a *habitual* quality.

*ut—cogeretur*: "so that by the rushing of the soldiers (around him) of their own accord, and their pleadings, he was forced to spare himself."

## CHAPTER XLI.

*qui—habebant*: "who had opportunity for an audience and reasons for being well disposed towards Caesar."

*potestate*: "permission."

*oppugnari*: "are now being attacked."

*Ambiorigem—causa*: "for the purpose of gaining credit they point out boastfully that Ambiorix was at hand."

*quidquam—praesidii*: "any aid": partitive genitive.

*eos*: Cicero and his troops: *his*, Caesar and the other commanders.

*hanc—consuetudinem*: this custom of wintering in Gaul.

*licere—discedere*: "they might go away from their winter quarters without any hindrance, so far as they (the Nervii) were concerned."

*velint*: for what two reasons is the subjunctive used?

*unum modo*: "only one thing."

*utantur—mittant*: the third pers. pl. subjunctive in oblique narration represents second pers. pl. imperative in direct discourse. Thus *se adiutore utantur* in oblique narration = *me adiutore utimini*: "employ me as a mediator."

*sperare impetraturos* : it is unusual for the pronoun to be omitted with the future inf. after verbs of *hoping*. Most MSS. give *sperare se*. —*se* refers to Cicero.

*pro eius iustitia* : "in accordance with his sense of justice," "such was his sense of justice."

## CHAPTER XLII.

*hac spe* : the hope of deceiving Cicero as Titurius Sabinus had been deceived.

*pedum quindecim* : "a rampart nine feet high and a ditch fifteen feet wide." The genitive of description is usual when no adjective is used. Had adjs. been used, what would have been the usual construction?

*nulla—copia* : "there being no supply of iron implements adapted for this purpose" : the ablative absolute : F. 102, 3, Note ; P. 85 (o). —*quae esset = talis ut esset*.

*minus horis tribus* : *horis* is the ablative of time within which a thing is done : *minus*, *plus*, *amplius* being used adverbially without any influence on the construction. We may thus say, *fossa plus quam pedes tres lata* or *fossa plus pedes tres lata* or *fossa plus pedibus tribus lata*.

*milium passuum quindecim* : *milium quindecim* is descriptive depending on *munitiōnem* and has *passuum* partitive genitive depending on it.

*ad altitudinem valli* : "up to the height," *i.e.* equalling the height of the Roman rampart.

*falces* : these were *falces murales* or "siege hooks," long poles with iron hooks for pulling down battlements and walls.

## CHAPTER XLIII.

*feruentes—glandes* scil. *factas* : "red hot balls (made) of soft clay : " it is difficult to understand how these could be thrown by leathern slings. The *glans* was usually a leaden bullet, acorn-shaped at both ends, whence its name.

*fervefacta iacula* : perhaps tow and pitch was wrapped round them and then set on fire.

*casas* : instead of tents, the winter quarters were provided with huts, more permanent structures (*casae*).

*distulerunt*, *i.e.*, (*hae casae*) *distulerunt (ignem)*.

*parta* : "gained : " from *pario* : scil. *est*.

*ea—fuit* : "such the firmness of their resolution," "their firm resolve."

*demigrandi causa* : "for the purpose of retiring from the fight."

*ne respiceret quidem* : note the emphatic word put between *ne—quidem*. Of course the verb is governed by *ut*.

*coentum*: "result."

*ut—constipaverant*: "as they crowded themselves together beneath the very rampart, and those farthest off gave no chance to retreat to the foremost."

*quodam loco*, scil., *in*. The reference is to a movable tower (*turris mobilis*).

*quorum nemo*=*sed nemo eorum*.

*deturbati* scil. *sunt*.

## CHAPTER XLIV.

*qui=et tales ut*: "and so brave that they were nearly being advanced to the front rank." They were on the point of being *primipilares*.

*perpetuas controversias*: "long continued disputes." The plural refers to the various occasions.

*quinam=uter*: "which of the two:" for subjunctive of dependent question: F. 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

*omnibus annis* for the more common *omnes annos*: "year in and year out."

*summis simultatibus*: "with the keenest rivalry about military position."

*quam—pugnaretur*: "when the fight was going on the keenest at the fortification."

*quem—spectas*: "what opportunity for proving your valour do you look for?"

*in eam irrumpit*: "against this (part) he directs his attack."

*omnium opinionem*: "the opinion that all would have of him."

*relicto*: between Pulio and the enemy.

*quo—hunc*: for the more common construction: *quem percussum et exanimatum* with *hunc* omitted as *quo* and *hunc* both refer to the wounded Gaul.

*illum* i.e. Pulio.

*Pulioni*: dative of disadvantage: F. 105, 9; P. 82 (c), i.

*verutum*: a light javelin shaped like a spit (*veru*).

*hic casus*: "this accident": the scabbard (*vagina*) was turned from its place and so placed out of Pulio's reach.

*conanti*: dative of disadvantage: "as he was trying to draw his sword."

*succurrit*: note the position of the verbs through this passage and the use of presents. Account for these two facts.

*inimicus*: distinguish this from *hostis*.

*veruto*: the dart that has pierced his shield and struck in the sword belt,

*in locum—dejectus* : “stumbling into a hollow place he fell.”

*rursus* : “in his turn.”

*in contentione et certamine* : “in their rivalry and in the fight.”

*utrumque servavit* : “changed the positions of both.”

*inimicus* : “though a foe.”

## CHAPTER XLV.

*quanto* correlative to *tanto*.

*in dies* implying daily increase or decrease and so used with comparatives : *quotidie*, daily repetition.

*magna—vulneribus* : “since a great number of the soldiers was exhausted with wounds.”

*res—pervenerat* : “the garrison had been reduced to a few defenders.”

*intus* : “in the camp.” He was a knight, and probably as such brought his servants and followers with him : for as Caesar says, “there are only two classes among the Gauls, the Knights and the Druids, all the rest aer serfs and slaves” : B. VI., chap. 13.

*suamque—praestiterat* : “and had sworn an oath of fidelity to him.”

*illigatas* : the *in-* (*il-*) makes it probable that the dart was hollow and the letter was contained in it. —*ille* i.e. the slave.

*ab eo cognoscitur= Caesar ab eo cognoscit.*

## CHAPTER XLVI.

*millia* : accusative of extent of space.

*alterum noncium* : “a second envoy.”

*reipublicae commodo* : “with advantage to the state” : *commodo* : ablative of attendant circumstance. Note in oblique narrative this would be *si—poteris, veni*.

## CHAPTER XLVII.

*adventu* : “approach” rather than “arrival” which the word sometimes means. Caesar was already on the march from Samarobriua (*Amiens*) when Crassus reached them, and left orders for him to take charge of the troops and stores in that place.

*litteras publicas* : probably books and papers containing armory accounts. We might translate “state papers.”

*non—moratus* : “with tolerable haste.”

*occurrit* : scil., *Caesari*.

*veritus ne—posset*: explain the meaning of *ut* and *ne* after verbs of fearing. Translate *vereor ut veniat*; *vereor ne veniat*.

*fugae similem*: "which looked like a flight."

*quos—sciret*: the relative gives a reason and hence the subjunctive: "inasmuch as he knew that they were elated by the recent victory:" F. 198, 4; P. 99 (g), iii.

*remittit*: note that *re*-implies an answer to Caesar's message.

*educturus esset*: "(telling him in the letter) with what danger he would lead the legion from winter quarters." This is virtual oblique narrative. In direct narration it would be: *magno cum periculo—educam*.

*rem gestam—perscribit*: "he gives him a full account of the massacre (literally, the affair carried out) among the Eburones." Note the force of *per*-in *perscribit*. The reference is to the massacre of the fifteen cohorts of which Caesar could have heard no more than a rumour from Cicero's letter.

*tria milia passuum*: accusative of extent of space: F. 69; P. 83 (c).

## CHAPTER XLVIII.

*etsi—redierat*: "though, disappointed in his expectation of (having) three legions, he had been reduced to two:" literally, "he had returned to two." —*opinio* not "opinion" which is *sententia* in Latin, but "expectation."

*unum—auxilium*: "the only measure that could meet a danger which threatened all." The dative is governed by *auxilium* since *auxilior* the verb governs a dative.

*magis itineribus*: ablative of means or instrument. The regular day's march (*iter justum*) was from six to seven hours long. The start was usually made at sunrise, but this would depend on circumstances, for in special emergencies the army started at midnight or at two or three in the morning. The distance in the ordinary days march covered was 15 or 20 miles. In forced marches (*itinera magna*) the troops marched 8 to 12 hours and often covered 50 Roman miles.

*Graecis—litteris*: in Greek characters, not necessarily in the Greek language. All educated Romans understood Greek and some of the Gauls were familiar with the Greek alphabet. It is said that Caesar sometimes "used a somewhat simple cipher, each letter being the fourth from its true place in the alphabet."

*fragulam*: a heavy javelin, larger than the *verutum* mentioned above: derived from *traho*. It was hurled by means of the "thong" (*amentum*: from *agimentum*, from *ago*, "to drive," or from *apnumentum* from *ap*, "to tie," as in *aptus*).

*neque=et tamen non*.

*biduo*: ablative of time within which: F. 82, 2; P. 85 (b).

*perlectam*, scil. *epistolam*. —*recitat*: this verb is often used in the sense "to read publicly." Translate: "he read the letter over and then recited it aloud in an assembly of soldiers"; note the force of *per*-in *perlectam*,

## CHAPTER XLIX.

*per exploratores*: distinguish this in meaning from *ab exploratoribus*.  
*omnibus copiis*: ablative of attendant circumstances.

*contendunt*: "direct this march": *tendo* means, "to stretch" or "strain": the word is often used to express eagerness or haste.

*hae*, scil. *copiae*. Another reading is *haec*, agreeing with *milia*.

*data facultate*: "taking the opportunity," afforded him by the withdrawal of the Gauls.

*Gallum—repetit*: "asks for another Gaul": note the force of *re* in *repetit*. Evidently the Gaul who had taken Cicero's first message had either not returned or was not disposed to make a second venture.

*qui=ut is*: F. 184, 1; P. II, 25. Express purpose in different ways in Latin.

*faciat*, i.e., *ut faciat*.

*convertisse*: supply *hostes* from the preceding lines: *convertisse* is transitive.

*eosque—confirmat*: "and he strengthens them in their resolution to fight."

*trans vallem et rivum*: to be construed with *conspicatur*. The river is probably the Harne, a tributary of the Scheldt.

*erat—res*: "it was a very dangerous thing": literally, "a thing of great danger": the genitive is that of quality.

*aequo animo—existimabat*: "he thought that he might slacken his speed without alarm."

*hominum milium septem*: "consisting of" or "containing scarcely seven thousand men": genitive of description.

*tamen—contrahit*: "yet he contracts it as much as he can by making the streets between the tents narrow": literally, "by the narrowness of the streets." For the ways of a Roman camp see Introduction.

*ut—veniat*: literally, "that he should come to be an object of supreme contempt to our enemy."—*hostibus*: date of remoter object.

## CHAPTER L.

*ad aquam*: at the stream flowing through the valley.

*Galli* scil. *continent*.

*Caesar—contenderet*: the order is: *Caesar (se continuit in suo loco) ut, si . . . possel, citra vallem . . . contenderet*: "Caesar kept himself in his own position so that, if haply, under the feigned appearance of fear he might be able to allure the enemy to his position, he might engage in battle with

them on his side of the valley in front of the camp."—*suum locum*: "a position favorable to himself," *i.e.*, on his side of the stream, on the sloping ground leading up to his camp: cp. *locus alienus*, "a ground picked by another," hence an unfavorable spot.

*portas obstrui*: "the gates to be blocked up," explained in the next chapter, by piling up rows of turfs.

*concursum*—*agi*: impersonal passives. Translate: "and in carrying out those orders he bids them run to and fro as much as possible and act with the greatest degree of feigned alarm:" literally, "that there should be rushing about and acting."

## CHAPTER LI.

*invitati*: "tempted."

*etiam de vallo*: to give rise still more strongly to an appearance of alarm on the part of the Romans.

*pronuntiari*: "a proclamation to be made."

*ante—tertiam*: about 9 a.m.

*sine periculo licere*, scil. *id facere*.

*in speciem = ad speciem*: "for show."

*ea* scil. *via*: "by that way," or adverbial. The meaning is through the gates.

*portis—facta*: the soldiers, as they rushed out, easily threw down the thin barriers of turf.

*omnino nemo*: "no one at all." In what two ways is *nemo* made emphatic here?

*pugnandi causa*: "to make a fight of it."

*armis*: ablative of separation.

## CHAPTER LII.

*neque—relinqui*: "and that there was no longer any chance of inflicting the slightest loss upon them."—*detrimento*: ablative of attendant circumstance.

*producta*: "being paraded."

*non—vulnere*: "that not one soldier in ten had escaped unwounded," literally. "not each tenth man." The superlative with *quisque* is a favorite Latin construction. Translate: *all the best men were praised by Caesar*.

*sint administratae*: dependent question: F., 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

*appellat*: "addresses."

*de casu Sabini et Cottae*: he had previously received an account of the disaster from Labienus, chapter 44, B. v., who had learned the circumstances from survivors, chap. 35, B. v.

*hoc—relinquatur*: "he tells them that the loss must be borne with the greater resignation on this account because, by the kindness of the immortal gods and by their valour since the loss has been wiped out, neither is lasting joy left to the enemy nor is more prolonged grief left to them." —*hoc*, ablative of means: *quod* expounds what it is. —*relinquatur*: subjunctive of *oblique* narration.

### CHAPTER LIII.

*per Remos*: either, "through the country of the Remi," or "by means of the Remi."

*abesset*: scil., *Labienus*.

*ante mediam noctem*: the ninth hour would be about 2.30 p.m., for it was now autumn. To midnight from 2.30 p.m., would be less than ten hours. Messages were transmitted (B. vii., chap. 3) in the following way: "when anything unusually important and striking takes place, men pass the news over fields and districts by shouting, different persons in turn receive the message, and pass it on to their neighbors."

*Fabium*: he guarded the stores at Amiens (*Samarobriva*) in Caesar's absence.

*tribus—legionibus*: Caesar had now the legion of Cicero with him in addition to the other two mentioned, B. v., chap. 48.

*trinīs hibernis*: distinguish *trina hiberna (castra)*: "three winter camps," and *tria hiberna castra*: "three winter huts": F., 69, 8, c.

*et—explorabant*: "and even trying to find out what resolution the rest of the Gauls were taking and by whom a beginning of the war was being carried on." —*quid—consilii*: partitive genitive. —*reliqui* scil. *Galli*. —*caperent—fieret*: dependent questions, hence the subjunctive.

*quin—acciperet*: literally, "but that he received." Translate, "without his receiving some news of the plans and disturbance of the Gauls."

*Armoricae*: now Brittany and Normandy. The word is said to be derived from *ar* "upon," and *moir*, "sea," both Keltic words: so that the name means "the country on the sea."

*sui*: Roscius.

*longius milia passuum octo*: see note on *minus horis tribus*: chap. 42.

*adeo ut—videretur*: "made their retreat *even* to its having the appearance of a flight": *adeo*, literally, "to that degree."

CHAPTER LIV.

*alias—alias*: "at one time—at another." Others make these agree with *civitates* understood.

*quum—denuntiaret*: "since he gave them to understand": —*quum*, causal: F. 183 3; P. 99 (g) ii.

*in officio*: "to its allegiance."

*obtinuerant*: "had held," not "obtained," which would be *adepti erant*.

*adventu in Galliam Caesaris*: "on the arrival of Caesar in Gaul." Note in *Galliam*.

*senatum*: a body consisting of the chief men of the tribe to whom Caesar applies the name of the corresponding body at Rome.

*dicto audientes*: "obedient": *audiens* is here used in the sense of *obediens*, which is a compound of *audiens*. *Dicto audire* is not found, though *dicto audiens* is common.

*tantum—valuit*: the subject of *valuit* is the following infinitive clause: translate: "(The fact) that some were found who were leaders in making war had such an influence with the barbarians, and it brought such a revolution of feelings in the minds of all that there was hardly any state which was not suspected by our men except the Aedui and Remi. These Caesar always held in especial honour, one for their old and unwavering loyalty towards the Roman people, the other for their recent kindnesses in the Gallic war." —*vetus*, "long standing," not necessarily "unbroken": *perpetuus*, "unbroken."

*nobis*: dative of agent after the perfect participle passive for *a nobis*.

*idque—dolebant*: "and this (the fact last stated) is perhaps not so much to be wondered at, both for several other reasons and especially (from the fact) that they who in martial valour were accustomed to be ranked before all nations, especially grieved that they had lost so much of that reputation as to endure the command of the Roman people."—The indirect question after *haud scio an* is generally affirmative.—*opinionis*: partitive genitive.—*cum—tum*: "both . . . and."

CHAPTER LV.

*totius hiemis—mitterent*: "let no time of the whole winter pass without sending envoys across the Rhine": see note on *quin—acciperet*: chap. 53.

*sollicitarent*: "tampering with": from *sollus*=*totus* and *cicio*, "stir up."

*neque—potuit*: "still no state of the Germans could be persuaded": —*persuaderi* impersonal infinitive. Note that *potuit*, when used impersonally, can be joined only with the passive infinitive. "it is not possible to do this" is not *hoc facere potest* but *hoc fieri potest*.

*Ariovisti bello*: in the first campaign 58 B.C., mentioned in B. I., C. 30-54.

*Tencterorum transitu*: B. IV., chap. 1-15, in which is related the account of the *Tencteri* and the *Usipetes* crossing the Rhine, B.C. 55, and being driven back with great slaughter by Caesar.

*lapsus*: "disappointed."

*tota Galia*: abl. of place *where*: F. L. 85, 3; P. 85, (k).

## CHAPTER I.VI.

*intellexit scil. Indutiomarus*

*ultro*: "unsolicited."

*venire*: "that they were coming": impersonal infinitive with an intransitive verb.

*conscientia facinoris*: the Senones on account of the expulsion of their king Cavarinus (chap. 54): the Carnutes on account of the assassination of Tasgetius (chap. 25).

*armatum concilium*: so also Livy, xxi, 20: *in his nova terribilesque species visa est, quod armati (ita mos gentis) erat in concilium venerunt*. So the early Franks are said to have laid their arms aside only when going to church.

*huc*=*armatum concilium indicere*.

*quo* adv.=*ad quod concilium*. —*vēnit*: not *vēnit*.

*novissimus*: "last": so also *agmen novissimum*, "the rear guard." *dies novissimus*: "the end of the world": cp. the German *der jüngste Tag*.

*hostem publicat*: "he declares him a public enemy and all his property forfeited to the State." *publicare* is to make private property become public property.

*huc*=*ad eas civitates*: on the way to the Senones he would have to pass through the territory of the Remi.

## CHAPTER LVII.

*loci natura et manu*=*natura ac opere* (Chap. 9): "by the natural position and art."

*nihil timebat*: "had no feeling of anxiety:" *nihil*, cog. acc.

*quam*=*aliquam*: note that *quis*=*aliquis* after *si*, *nisi*, *num*, *ne*, *quo*, *quanto*.

*alias*—*alias*: adverbs, "now—now:" as above Chap. 54.

*timoris opinionem*: "an impression of fear:" following the same tactics as Caesar had so successfully used of late.

## CHAPTER LVIII.

*in dies* "daily," used with words expressing increase or diminution and hence used with comparatives or words of comparative force: *quotidie* "daily," expressing repetition.

*nocte una*: "during a single night:" the night of the day appointed for them to assemble, mentioned above.

*intromissis*: "admitted."

*tanta diligentia*: "with such care."

*ubi visum est*, scil., *eis discedere*: "when they thought it best for them to depart."

*sub vesperum*: "just before the evening set in:" note that *sub* with words of time may mean, "just before" or "just after."

*praecipit atque interdicat*: here we have a positive and a negative order. To *praecipit* belongs the clause *unum omnes peterent Indutiomarus* and to *interdicat* the clause *ne quis quem prius vulneret*, etc. Translate: he commands them that when the enemy should be terrified and put to flight (which he foresaw would happen, as it did), to all aim at Indutiomarus alone: and he forbids anyone wounding a man before he sees that chieftain slain."—*petant* i.e. *ut petant*.—*quem*: see note on *quam*, Chap. 57.

*mora nactum*: "having gained time by the delay caused by pursuing the rest."

*occiderint*, scil., *eum*: indefinite and, therefore, subjunctive: "any who should have killed him."

*comprobat*: "justifies."—*hominis*: Labienus.

*fluminis*: the Mosa (*Meuse*).

*habuit*: "found."

## BOOK VI.

### CHAPTER I.

The events of this book belong to the year B.C. 53, when Cn. Domitius Calvinus and M. Valerius Messala were consuls.

*multis de causis*: these reasons may be "the death of Dumnorix, the comparative failure in Britain, the loss of the entire division of Cotta and Sabinus, the hostility stirred up among the Treveri by Indutiomarus, and, above all, the general longing for freedom throughout Gaul."

*delectum habere*: these levies were held generally by means of *conquistores*, whose duty it was to search out those avoiding military service. Often, however, *legati*, as here, were employed.

*proconsulè*: Pompey was consul 70 B.C., and a second time B.C. 55. In the latter year, on the expiry of his consulship, Pompey received the Government of the two Spains, which however he entrusted to his lieutenants, for he himself remained at the city watching events.

*petit—iuberet*: the construction is *petit (ut) iuberet (eos) ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci quos—rogavisset, quoniam—remaneret*: "he asked the proconsul to order those to muster at the standards and to set out to him whom he had summoned from Cisalpine Gaul to take the military oath of the consul since he himself remained near the city with military power for the sake of state reasons."—*quoniam—remaneret*: this gives, not Caesar's, but, Pompey's reasons, and hence the subjunctive. Pompey pretended that the cause of his detention at Rome was to superintend the supplies of corn for the capital (*rei publicae causa*).—*quos consulis sacramento rogavisset*: the subjunctive is due to attraction to the subjunctive in *remaneret*. Note *sacramento consulis rogare*, "to enlist under the consul:" literally, "to enroll by the military oath of the consul."—*sacramento*: ablative of means. So also *sacramento adigere*. The recruits were said *in consulis verba iurare*.

*magni*: genitive of *price*. F. 150, 2; P. 81 (g).

*ad opinionem Galliae*: "as regards the estimation formed by the Gauls." Note that *opinio* is hardly ever to be translated by "opinion," which is expressed by *sententia*.

*ut—posset*: "that if any loss was sustained in war, this might be not only repaired in a short time, but it might be compensated by the increase of forces." Note the partitive genitive in *detrimenti*.—*resarcire*, properly "to repair a garment by re-stitching it," hence "to repair" generally.

*quod—tribuisset*: "and when Pompey had granted this both in the interests of the republic and through the claims of private friendship."

Caesar and Pompey were still friends though Pompey's wife Julia, Caesar's only daughter, had died in the latter part of 54 B.C.

*per suos*, scil., *legatos*.

*tribus*: Caesar had lost fifteen cohorts, *i.e.*, a legion and a half, in the attack of the Gauls on the winter-camps (B. v., Chap. 26-37).

*ante-hiemen*: "before the end of winter."

*possent*: dependent question.

## CHAPTER II.

*docuimus*: B. v., Chap. 58.

*ulteriores*: "those farther off."

*inventis—cavent*: "having found some states to listen to them, they strengthen their alliance by mutual oaths and they give hostages as security for the money."—*obsidibus*: abl. of means.—*cavent*: "give security," so *cautio* (from *caveo*), "bail:" cp. French, *caution*: English, *caution money*. *Cavere* also means "to obtain security from one."

*Cisrhenanis Germanis*: the reference is to the Condrusi, Eburones, Caeroesi and Paemoni, who dwell near the Rhine: B. II., Chap. 4.

*maturius*: "earlier than usual."

## CHAPTER III.

*non dum—confecta*: "before the end of winter."

*coactis*: "having been mustered:" probably the three legions that had been placed in winter quarters about Samarobriua (B. v., Chap. 53) and that one under Fabius among the Morini (B. v. 24).

*priusquam—possent*: the subjunctive is due to the clause being virtually one of *oblique narrative* and also expressing *intention*.

*ea praeda—concessa=eis loco praedae militibus concessis*: "giving up these to the soldiers as booty."

*hiberna*: at Samarobriua (Amiens).

*concilio*: a general meeting (*concilium*) of the Gauls seems to have been a settled institution. Caesar seems after 58 B.C. to have summoned them periodically and to have considered attendance at these a test of loyalty.

*primo vere*: probably the early part of March.

*instituerat=ut facere consuevit*: "according to his practice."

*venissent*, scil., *ad concilium*.

*initium* is emphatic and the predicate of *esse*.

*ut—concilium*: "that it might appear that he esteemed this more

important than anything else ;” literally, “to place everything after this.” Note that *videretur* is personal here as always. “It seems that he will do this” is *videtur hoc esse facturus*: literally, “he seems to be about to do this.”

*Lutetiam Parisiorum*: said to be the first mention of Paris in history: “Lutetia belonging to the Parisii.” The name of the tribe was always added to the name of the town in this case, and the name of the tribe afterwards alone survived. According to Pritchard, the word *Lutetia* is an abridgment of the Celtic *Loutokia*, “the place of the loch,” just as *Lugdunum* (now Lyons) is “the city of the loch,” the rivers in both cases having formed a sort of small lake near the towns mentioned. *Lutetia* is said to have occupied only the island in the Seine (*Isle de France*), which forms only a small part of the modern city. Clovis fixed his residence there in 502 A. D., and from this time the importance of the place dates.

*hi*, i.e., *Parisii*.—*consilio*, “plot:” different from *concilium*, “an assembly.”

*hac re—pronuntiata*: “this adjournment having been announced from the tribunal.” The *suggestus* (or *suggestum*) was an elevated platform made of stones, turf or wood, according to circumstances. From it speeches were delivered and judgment given by the presiding officer.

## CHAPTER IV.

*princeps eius consilii*: “the leader in that scheme.”

*conantibus—nuntiatur*: literally, “to them attempting to do so, before it could be accomplished, word is brought.” For the subjunctive in *posset* see note on *priusquam possent* in Chap. 3.

*deprecandi causa*: “for the purpose of excusing their acts.”

*adeunt—civitas*: “they make their application through the Aedui, under whose protection their state was in former days.”—*quorum* depends on *in fide*. The Senones had been clients and allies of the Aedui.—*antiquitus*: “from ancient times.” The termination *-tus* is adverbial: cp. Greek *-θεν*: *caelitus* = *οὐρανῶθεν*.

*libenter* joined with *dat veniam*: “willingly grants pardon.”

*petentibus Aeduis*: abl. abs.: “at the request of the Aedui:” The pardon was granted to the Senones at the instance of the Aedui, who with the Remi were Caesar’s friends. He afterwards punished Acco. Chap. 44.

*quod—arbitrabatur*: “because he (Caesar) considered the summer was the season for the war that was on hand and not for an enquiry.” Understand *tempus* with *instantis belli*.—*quaestio* is the technical term for any enquiry of a judicial nature whether conducted by regular forms or by a special commission.

*obsidibus imperatis*: what two meanings and constructions have *imperare*? Translate: *he ordered the legions: he levied ten legions from this state.*

*Eodem Carnutes* : to the same place to which the Senones send.  
*deprecatoribus* : "as intercessors." The Remi were, as well as the Aedui, on friendly terms with Caesar.  
*ferunt* : "obtain."  
*peragit* : "brings to a close;" different from *concilium agere*, "to hold a meeting."

## CHAPTER V.

*totus—insistit* : "applied his whole attention and will to the war against the Treveri and Ambiorix." Distinguish *mens*, the thinking faculty from *animus*, the emotional faculty.—*Treverorum* : objective genitive.

*ne quis—exsistat* : "that no disturbance in the state might be caused by the indignation against this man (Cavarinus) or through the enmity which he had brought on himself."—*civitatis* : taken with *motus*.—*huius* : objective genitive.

*pro explorato habebat* : "he was certain": so *pro certo habere*.

*proelio—concertaturum* : "would not measure his strength in battle."  
 —*concerto* is only used here by Caesar.—*proelio* : abl. of means.

*reliqua—cumspiciebat* : "he kept watching his other plans attentively."  
 —*cuius* : Ambiorix.

*perpetuis* : "continuous." The *Menapii* extended from the lower Scheldt to the Meuse: the *Eburones* from the Meuse to the Rhine.

*venisse—amicitiam* : "that they had formed alliances with the Germans by means of the Treveri." *Germanis* : dative of remoter object. P. 82 (a).

*illi* : Ambiorix. F. 119, 5 (a) : P. 92 (c).

*prius—quam—lacesseret* : subjunctive of virtual oblique narration in dependent clause.

*congregi=se conjungere, coire in societatem* : "to join sides with:" not the usual meaning of *congregior*.

*nulla coacta manu* : "collected no regular force."

## CHAPTER VI.

*pontibus* : bridges over the streams tributary to the Scheldt.

*quibus coacti* : "compelled by these stringent measures."

*hostium numero* : "as enemies:" so *custodis loco* below.

*pacis petendae causa* : give all the other possible constructions.

## CHAPTER VII.

*dum geruntur* : explain the tense after *dum*.

*quae hiemaverat* : "which had spent the winter:" it was now summer. Labienus was still on the edge of the Ardennes Forest (B. v. 24).

*bidui via*: "the distance of two days."—*via*: abl. of distance.

*quum cognoscunt*: when does *quum* take the indicative?

*impedimentis*: dative depending on *praesidio*. Note that *impedimenta* is the baggage of the whole army, and *sarcina* that of the individual soldier.

*flumen*: either the Moselle, Sour or Ourthe.

*consilio*: "council of war:" from root SED "to sit," hence a meeting. *Concilium* is from a different root = *concalium*: root CAL, "to summon": cp. *calare*, *Kalendae*, καλεῖν.

*dicantur*: subjunctive of oblique narration.

*primis ordinibus* = *primipilis*: see note on B. v., Chap. 35.

*quo*: when is *quo* used for *ut*? F. 183, 5; P. II. 26.

*fugae similem*: *fugae* is genitive.

*in tanta propinquitate*: "since the camps were so near each other." The prepositional ablative absolute is used, as the verb *sum* has no participle."

## CHAPTER VIII.

*agmen novissimum*: see note, B. v., Chap. 56.

*Galli* join with *dubitant*.

*ne—dimitterent*: "not to let the expected booty slip out of their hands."

*longum esse*: note the transition from the subjunctive to the infinitive: "that it was a tedious matter."

*committere non dubitant*: note that *dubitare* may mean (1) to hesitate; (2) doubt. In the sense of *to hesitate* as *here* and in the affirmative meaning *to doubt* it takes an infinitive; in the negative meaning *to doubt* it takes *quoniam* with the subjunctive.

*eadem—itineris*: "practising the same deception as regarded his march," i.e., keeping up the appearance of a retreat.

*signa—converti*: "the standards to be faced against the enemy." Distinguish *signa conferre*, "to engage in battle:" *signa referre*, "to retreat:" *signa inferre*, "to advance:" *signa efferre*, "to go out of camp."

*dirigi*: "to be formed."

*paucis—dimissis*: literally, "a few squadrons being sent to the baggage for a guard:" i.e., "a few squadrons being sent to guard the baggage." —*turmis*: the cavalry of the legion were usually 300 in number, divided into ten *turmae*.—*praesidio*: dative of purpose.

*ad latera*: "on the flanks."

*infestis signis*: with hostile standards."

*ire*: supply *eos* the suppressed antecedent of *quos*.

*impetum modo*: "even a single charge," or as some say, "even the first onset."

*civitatem recepit*: "recovered the allegiance of the whole tribe."

*percepta—fuga*: "as soon as they gathered news of the flight of the Treveri."

*comitati eos*: "attaching themselves permanently to them."

## CHAPTER IX.

*Ex Menapiis*: Caesar now goes back to the close of Chapter VI.

*altera—altera*: "the one—the other." Distinguish in meaning *alter* and *alius*.

*paulum supra*: further up the stream, not far from the modern Andernach. The other bridge was built near Bonn, B.C. 55, and is fully described in B. IV. Chap. 17.

*nota—efficitur*: "when the plan of the bridge was understood and determined upon, the work is completed within a few days with great zeal on the part of the soldiers."—*ratione*, abl. abs.—*studio*, abl. of means.—*paucis diebus*: express this in other ways.

*ne—overetur*: "to prevent any sudden rising taking place among them." When is *quis* = *aliquis*?

*qui—doceant* = *ut ei doceant*: F. 184, 1; P. II. 25.

*neque—laesam*: "nor had they broken their allegiance to him."

*sibi parcat*: "to spare them:" referring to the subject of *orant*, i.e., *Ubii*.

*ne—pendant*: "lest in his common hatred of the Germans the innocent should suffer for the guilty."—*Germanorum*: objective genitive. With *poenas pendere* compare *dare poenas*.

*amplius obsidum*: this example of a partitive genitive is not common. It would be more usual to have *plures obsides*. So also *dare* the present infinitive is unusual after *pollicentur*. The more common construction would be *se daturus esse*.

## CHAPTER X.

*denuntiare*: "to announce."

*ad iniquam—deduci*: "might be induced to fight under adverse conditions."

*penitus*: "from the interior:" with the ending *-tus*: cp. *-θεν* in Greek: cp. *funditus*, "from the bottom:" *caelitus*, from heaven."

*silvam*: the Bacenis wood seems to have been a part of the great Hercynian forest which extended over a great part of Germany. Some identify it with the present Thuringerwald, Erzgebirge and Reisengebirge.

*introrsus* = *intro-versus* : "into the interior."

*ab Suevis* : "on the side of the Suevi."

*ad-silvae* : some say in Meiningen in Western Saxony.

## CHAPTER XI.

*locum* : "place" in the narrative. *perventum est* = *pervenimus*.

*alienum* : "foreign" to the subject or "out of place."

*in-partibusque* : "in all cantons and sections of cantons."

*quorum—redeat* : "to whose will and decision the settlement of all matters of business and of all proposals is referred."

*quorum* : the antecedent is *qui*.

*ejus rei causā* : "with this object in view;" literally, "for the sake of this thing;" referring to the clause *ne—egeret*.

*quisque* : each patron or party leader.

*haec—Galliae* : "the same principle prevails in general throughout all Gaul." Note that *in summa* is "in general;" *Galliae* depends on *ratio*.

## CHAPTER XII.

*quum—venit* : when does *quum* take the indicative?

*hi* : "the latter;" according to Caesar (B. I. Chap. 31) before the Sequani, the Arverni had held the leadership.

*magnae—clientelae* : "they had many States dependent on them." When does *quod* take the indicative and when the subjunctive? F. 198, 2; P. 99 (g), 1.

*jacturis* : "sacrifice;" *jactura* is properly anything *thrown overboard* to save a cargo. Hence anything sacrificed in expectation of future benefit.

*tantum—anteceperant* scil. *Sequani Aeduis* : "the Sequani had so far surpassed the Aedui in power." Distinguish *potentia*, the power of the strong, wealthy or unscrupulous; *auctoritas*, the moral power of a great and good man, or the force of example, *i.e.*, influence; *potestas*, the official power of a magistrate; *imperium*, the military power of a general.

*publice* : "as a state."

*possiderent* : "should occupy;" depending of course on *ut*.

*Divitiacus* : the Druid who had gone on this embassy B.C. 63. He became a friend of Cicero, and was on the side of Rome throughout the Gallic wars. (B. I. Chap. 31).

*imperfecta re* : "with his suit only half granted," or "before the matter was settled."

*commutatio*: the change was brought about by Caesar's defeat of Ariovistus.

*dimiserant*: "relinquished the supremacy."

*quos—intelligebatur*: supply *Aeduos* after *ad aequare*: "and because it was perceived that they had rivalled the Aedui in Caesar's favor:"—*ad-aquare*: "to make equal," "balance."—*quos=et eos*.

*se—dicabant*: "devoted themselves."

*illi*: Remi.

### CHAPTER XIII.

*aliquo numero*: "in any consideration:" "of any account."

*plebes*: nom. sing. Another form is *plebs*: in older Latin *plebes* was of the fifth declension.

*nullo*: a dative for *nulli* as *adhibetur* governs a dative.

*acre alieno*: "with debts."

*in hos*: "over these."

*illi*: "the former," referring to the Druids.


*intersunt*: "officiate."

*procurant*: "superintend."

*religiones*: everything connected with religion—as omens, rites and ceremonies.

*disciplinae=discendi*: "for instruction."

*hi Druids: eos*, the Gauls.

 *admissum*: "committed."

*decreto stetit*: "has abided by the decree." Note that *decreto* is ablative.

*sacrificiis interdicunt*: note that *interdico* takes (1) acc. of person and abl. of thing: (2) dat. of person and acc. of thing, or (3) dat. of person and abl. of thing.

*quibus—interdictum*: "those who are so excommunicated."

*discedunt*: "shrink from."

*ius redditur*: "is justice rendered."

*honos*: "public office:" *labos, arbor*: old form for *labor, arbor*.

*loco consecrato*: probably a sacred grove near the modern Dreux. In Britain, Anglesey was the headquarters of the Druids.

*reperta translata*: it may have been that Druidism was declining in Gaul before the civil power, and that there was still retained in Britain a purer form than on the continent.

## CHAPTER XIV.

*disciplinam* : "training."

*quum—utantur* : "though in almost all other affairs, in public and private transactions, they use Greek letters."—*quum—utantur* : F. 196, 7; P. 99 (i).

*quod velint* : giving, not Caesar's reason, but the reason of the Druids.

*qui discunt* : for the indic. in a dependent clause in oblique narration, see F. 205-209; P. 106.

*praesidio litterarum* : "by the aid of letters."

*hoc persuadere* : "to impress this belief."

*animas* ; "soul." A Latin plural is often represented by a singular in English. The doctrine of the transmigration of souls or metempsychosis is referred to. It is not likely that a belief in this doctrine would lead one to disregard death.

*multa—disputant* : "they have frequent discussions."

*mundi ac terrarum* : "the universe and the globe."—*mundus* (= Greek κόσμος) is the whole universe of visible things—earth, sky, sun, moon and stars.

*de—natura* : "science," literally, "the nature of things;" the celebrated poem of Lucretius that relates the origin and growth of the universe is called by the name *De Rerum Natura*.

## CHAPTER XV.

*quum—usus* : "whenever there is necessity;" note *quum* with indicative. F. 203.

*incidit* : "breaks out."

*fere* taken with *quotannis*.

*uti—propulsarent* : in apposition to *quod*.

*versantur* : "engage in."

*atque—habet* : "and the number of retainers and dependants each one has about him is in proportion to his distinction for birth and wealth." *ambactos* : said to be derived from the Keltic *ambaig*, "to lead" or "to drive around one;" hence, "one led" or "one who moves about a person." Others derive it from the German *and*, "against," and *bak*, "back;" hence "one who stands behind his lord in battle."

*hanc—noverunt* : "this is the only way they know of obtaining influence and power." Note that *primus*, *ultimus*, *solus* are not used with a predicate clause as in English. "He was the first to do it" is *ille primus id fecit*.

## CHAPTER XVI.

*dedita*: "devoted."

*pro victimis*: Caesar probably refers to a state of matters that was in vogue before his days.

*pro—reddatur*: this is the same as the Hebrew principle: "whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed."

*habent instituta*: nearly the same meaning as *instituerunt*.

*immani magnitudine*: ablative of description. These were probably huge cages of human form.

*supplicio*: "execution."

*cuius generis*: "of criminals of this sort."

*descendunt*: "they have recourse to."

## CHAPTER XVII.

*Mercurium*: Caesar means that the Britons worship a deity whose attributes resemble those of the Roman Mercury. This deity was called Teutates (Tuw Taith, the God of travelling), probably the same as the Theut, of the Phoenicians and Toth, of the Egyptians. *Apollo* was the Keltic *Belenus* or *Belen*, probably connected with βέλα, a Spartan name for the sun; so also ἀβέλιος=ἥλιος of ordinary Greek. *Mars* was the Keltic Hesus or Esus, the terrible war god. *Minerva* (from *monco*, 'advise:': hence) "the suggester of ideas," as Teutates or Mercury develops ideas into arts. *Jupiter* was the Keltic *Taranis* or "God of thunder" (from the Keltic *taran*, "thunder.")—*mercaturas*: the derivation of Mercurius is from the same root as *merx*, *merces*, *mercatura*.

*operum—initia*: "the elements of useful labours and of the arts."

*reliquas res*: "the rest of the spoil."

*ei rei*: "for that offence."

## CHAPTER XVIII.

*Dite*: as Dis is Pluto, the god of the nether world, the statement here is "that they sprung from the realms of night," *i.e.*, that they were "aboriginal."

*ob eam causam—finiunt*: the early Germans did the same and probably also the early Greeks. We still find a survival of this custom in our fortnight (=fourteen nights), sennight (=seven nights). A Welchman calls a week "eight nights."

*ut—subsequatur*: instead of saying as we do "the first day of the month," "the first day of the year," the Gauls would have said, "the first night of the month," "the first night of the year." This probably arose from the fact that the *moon* (as the name implies, from MA, "to measure") was the measurer of time among these early Kelts as it was among other primitive nations.

*adsistere*: scil. se "to place himself."

## CHAPTER XIX.

*vir*: "the husbands:" cp. German *Mann*.

*dotis nomine*: "as dowry."

*tantas—communicant*: "so much from their own wealth they add to the dowry after a valuation has been made." This means that the husband added to the dower of his wife as much as she brought. The income from this common fund was saved up, and when the husband or wife died the whole went to the survivor. This, however, could apply only to the rich.

*ratio*: "an account."

*uter—superari*: dependent question; hence subjunctive.

*pater familiae*: for the archaic but more common *pater familias*.

*loco natus*: ablative of origin: so with *editus*, *ortus*, *oriundus*, *genitus*.

*et—venit*: "and if there is any suspicion concerning his death." Note *in suspicionem venire* is passive of the deponent *suspicio*.

*de uxoris*: this implies polygamy among the rich nobles.

*in servilem modum*: "as (we do) in the case of slaves."

*excrucia/as*, scil., *uxores*. Among the Romans, citizens gave their evidence on oath; slaves alone could be examined by torture.

*pro cultu*: compared with the means of living the Gauls had." The French people still like showy parades and brilliant *fêtes*.

*cordi fuisse*: "to have been dear:" *cordi esse*=*gratum esse*: probably a predicative dative: the one the dative to which (*vivis*) and the other (*cordi*) dative for which.

*supra hanc memoriam*: "before my time:" cp. *hic homo*=*ego*: *haec vita*; "the present life."

*iustis—confectis*: "when the due ceremonies were ended:" cp. *iustus triumphus*.

## CHAPTER XX.

*commodius*: "in a more regulated way" than others.

*habent—sanctum*: "have a rule laid down by law." Note the difference between *sauixerunt*, "have passed a law," expressing the completion of an act and *habent sanctum*, have a law passed some time since and still in force.

*rumore aut fama*: distinguish *rumor*, an indefinite rumor: *fama*, a distinct statement. This provision by law was probably enacted to check the impetuosity of the Gauls.

*neve=et ne*: F. 186, 6; P. 99 (a), 1.

*cum quo—communicet*: "impart it to any one else."

*ex usu*: "of advantage."

*de re publica*: "of public affairs."

## CHAPTER XXI.

*Germani—differunt* : i.e., the customs of the Germans differ greatly from these.

*Druides habent* : we know, however, that the Germans had priests and priestesses, though they may have had nothing corresponding to the Druids.

*qui—praesint=ut ei—praesint* : “to preside over religious matters.”

*student* : “pay heed to.”

*quos cernunt* : a kind of nature worship seems to have been the religion of the Germans. It is probable that Caesar means by Vulcanus, the *welkin* (Wolken himmel,) or firmament. We know that they worshipped many other gods not named by Caesar.

*acceperunt* : this statement is contradicted by Tacitus (De Mor. Ger. Chap. 9), who says that the Germans worshipped Mercury, Hercules and Mars, and that some of the Suevi worshipped Isis. By Mercury is probably meant *Woden* or *Odin* : by Hercules is meant *Thor* ; by Mars, *Tyr* or *Zio*, the god of war ; by Isis, *Freia*, the wife of Odin.

*in—consistit* : “is spent in military pursuits.”

*ab parvulis* : “from their earliest childhood :” cp. ἐκ παιδων.

*impuberes* : “unmarried.”

## CHAPTER XXII.

*modum certum* : “a fixed amount.”

*in annos singulos* : “each year,” “yearly.”

*gentibus cognationibusque* : “to clans and bodies of kinsmen.”

*quantum—agri* : “they assign as seems good to them the amount and locality of the lands for those clans and groups of kinsmen which at the time form a community.”—*agri* is genitive depending on *quantum*.

*alio* : “to a different quarter.”

*ne—commutent* : i.e., *timent ne—commutent* : “they are afraid that enticed by long continued residence they may exchange their attention to war for agriculture.”—*muto* and its compounds may mean (1) to give one thing in exchange for another and hence has the accusative of what is given and the ablative of what is received or (2) to receive one thing in exchange for another and hence has the accusative of what is received and the ablative of what is given. The former is the construction here. The ablative in either case is the ablative of *exchange* or *price*. If we had here *studio-agriculturam* the meaning would be the same thing.

*latos fines parare* : “to obtain too large lands.”

*potentioresque—expellant* : show the ambiguity of this sentence.

*ne-aedificent*: "lest with too great care they may build houses to withstand the seasons of cold and heat." Note the force of the plurals. The Germans had simply huts, and made with no great care, so that the inhabitants may not lose their hardy nature of living out of doors.

*qua=aliqua*: note that *quis=aliquis* after *si, nisi, num, ne, quo, quanto*.

*nascuntur*: the indicative is used because this is Caesar's own statement. If the subjunctive *nascantur* had been used, the reason would have been given on the statement of the Germans.

*ut-videat*: the construction is *hoc fit ut-videat*: "this is done so that they (the chiefs, scil. *magistratus*) may be able to keep the inferior sort together by contentment, since each one sees that his own means are as great as those of the men in authority."

*animi aequitate*: cp. *aequus animus*, "resignation."

## CHAPTER XXIII.

*civitatibus*, indirect object after *est*, the subject of which is the clause *quam-habere*.

*quam latissime*: "as far and wide as possible: cp. ὥς with superlatives in Greek: ὡς τὰχιστα.

*proprium virtutis*: "a proof of courage."—*prope*: "near."

*hoc* referring to the clause *repentinae incursionis timore sublato*: "since a danger of a sudden raid had been removed."

*bellum—aut illatum defendit aut infert*: "either repels an aggressive war or invades another's territories." When does *quum* take the subjunctive? F. 203; 188, 3; 196, 7; P. 99, (f), (g), (i). After *infert* scil. *bellum aliis civitatibus*.

*qui—praesint=ut ei—praesint*: for dative see F. 120; P. 82 (e) ii.: for subjunctive. F. 184, 1; P. II. 25.

*nullus—magistratus*: the system among the Germans was not one of centralization, as among the Romans, but one of local administration.

*regionum—atque pagorum*: "of districts and indeed, of townships." The *pagus* was evidently a division of the *regio*. The former is from root PAG, "to bind," hence "a district within certain bounds:" cp. δῆμος (from δῆω, "I bind").

*ius dicunt*: "declare what is law:" a Roman magistrate is said *ius dicere* who has *iuris dictio*, the right to declare what is law.

*latrocinia—infamiam*: "robberies involve no disgrace:" cp. Lady of the Lake, Canto v. Stanza 7. This was a common belief among barbarous nations.

*praedicant*: "they openly declare." Distinguish in meaning *praedico*, *äre*, and *praedico*, *äre*.

*ubi quis*: "whenever one."

*qui—profiteantur*=*tales ut sequi velint profiteantur*: "let such as wish to come give in their names." This is the indefinite use of the relative: F. 188, 5, (a).

*ducuntur*: "are held;" both *habeo* and *duco* have this meaning.

*omniumque—derogatur*: "and all credit in everything is after this withheld from them."—*derogare* is generally used in the sense of to repeal a part of a law. The construction is *de aliqua re* or *ex aliqua re alicui derogare*.

*qui communicatur*: Tacitus (Germania, Chap. 21) says that the Germans treat strangers and friends alike. This seems a general rule, at least in all primitive civilization.

## CHAPTER XXIV.

*ultra—inferrent*: "they carried on aggressive wars without provocation," i.e., they even invaded Germany. Note the *asyndeton* in *superarent, inferrent* and *mitterent*. The course of the Volcae Tectosages seems to have been from the east, and they seem to have settled in that part of Asia Minor called *Galatia*, and in *Bavaria*, *Bohemia* and *Moravia* in Europe.

*Hercynia silva*: the Hercynian wood includes the Baccenis (C. 10); it embraces the Odenwald, Thuringerwald, Erzgebirge, Riesengebirge and the Carpathians.

*Eratostheni*: an astronomer, mathematician and geographer of Alexandria, who flourished about 200 B.C.

*video*: Caesar appears to be acquainted with the works of these authors.

*Volcae Tectosages*: in Caesar's time they occupied the part of the *Provincia* near the Pyrenees, in the south of Gaul near the modern Toulouse (*Tolosa*).

*occupaverunt*: "seized."

*ad hoc tempus*: "up to the present time."

*iustitiae—opinionem*: "reputation for justice and warlike valour."

*inopia*: lack of resources, "poverty:" *egestas*, "want," "need," refers rather to the condition arising from poverty.

*eodem—utuntur*: "they have the same sort of diet and clothing."

*rerum*: "commodities."

*multa—largitur*: "greatly contributes to increase their stores and to supply their wants." This shews that luxury prevailed among the Keltae.

*illis*: the Germans: *ipsi*: the Gauls.

## CHAPTER XXV.

*supra*: Chapter 21.—*demonstrata*: "mentioned."

*latitudo*: "breadth" from North to South.

*novem dierum*: descriptive genitive depending on *iter*.—*iter*: accusative of extent of space.

*expedito*: "for a man lightly equipped," *i.e.*, for a rapid traveller. Herodotus uses the same expression in estimating, a measure of distance: B. 1. 72: *μῆκος ὁδοῦ, ἐνζώνῳ ἀνδρὶ πέντε ἡμέραι ἀναισιμούνται*. A day's journey in Herod. IV. 101 is 200 stadia or about 23 miles: so that the distance here would be about 200 miles.

*finiri*: "computed."

*noverunt*, scil., *Germani*. The Germans were not acquainted with the Roman practise of setting up mile stones (*lapides*) on their roads.

*oritur*, scil., *Hercynia silva*.

*recta—regio*: literally, "in a straight line with the river Danube," *i.e.*, parallel to the river Danube.

*Dacorum et Anartium*: these tribes extended beyond the Theiss (*Tibiscus*) in Hungary. So *regio* *moveri* is "to proceed in a straight line;" *e regione castrorum*, "opposite to the camp."

*sinistrorsus*—*sinistr-o-versus*: "to the left" of the Danube, towards the Carpathian mountains: cp. *prorsus* = *pro-versus*.

*diversis—regionibus*: "in a direction away from the river."

*huius*: *i.e.* Western Germany.

*initium*: "the further end."

*quum—processerit*: "even though he has gone a journey of sixty days." —*iter*: cognate object: F. 95, 1; P. 83 (d).

*quae—visa sint* = *talia ut—visa sint*: the indefinite relative: F. 188, 5; P. II., 38, 39. So in *quae—differant*.

## CHAPTER XXVI.

*bos cervi figura*: "an animal with the form of a deer." The word *bos* is often used for any horned animal and even elephants which were called *Lucae boves*. Others take the word to mean not a reindeer but a bison.

*unum cornu*: this statement is probably a misstatement. He may have seen the animal from one side, or one horn may have been shed.

*palmae ramique*: "branching hands": hendiadys. This evidently points to the reindeer.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

*alces*: "elks:" the *elendthier* of the German and the *elan* of the French. *capreis* = *figuræ caprarum*.

*varietas pellium*: "the spotted skin."

*mutilæ—cornibus*: literally, "they are blunted in their horns," *i.e.* 'their horns are blunt.'

*sine nodis articulisque*: hendiadys, "without knotted joints. The awkward gait of the elk may have given rise to this belief.

*si—considerunt*: "if they fall to the ground by any accident."—*quo=aliquo*.—*concido* is often said to fall in a heap.

*ad eas* scil. *arbores*.

*paulum modo*: "only a short time."

*quum est adversum*: when does *quum* take the indicative and when, the subjunctive? F. 203, 188, 196; P. 99 (f), (g), (i).

*quo—consuerint*: subjunctive of dependent question.

*omnes—relinquatur*: "they either undermine all the trees in that place or the roots or cut them so far as to leave the external (*summa*) appearance of a standing tree."—*eo loco=in eo loco*. Others translate *summa—stantium*: "an undistinguishable likeness to standing trees."

*consuetudine=ex consuetudine*.

*affligunt*, scil., *alces*: so also *ipsae*, scil., *alces*.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

*uri*: probably the *urus* was the German aurochs (*bos primigenius*), now almost confined to the forest marshes of Lithuania, and the district between the Caspian and Black Sea. Fossil remains of these have been found not unfrequently in Germany and France.

*paulo infra elephantos*: the aurochs are said to have been about six feet high at the shoulder, (not so high as an elephant); are generally shy, but fight fiercely, if attacked.

*hos—interficiunt=hos studiose foreis capiunt et interficiunt*: "they catch them in pitfalls with great care and kill them."

*se durant*: "harden themselves."

*quae sint testimonio*: "to serve as an evidence." The subjunctive is the subjunctive of the relative expressing purpose.—*quae=ut—ea*: F. 184, 1; P. 11., 25. The dative *testimonio* is the dative of purpose: F. 134, 1; P. 82 (c).

*ne excepti*: "not even when caught very young."—*excipere* in Caesar may mean: (1) "to lie in wait for," as here: (2) "to welcome:" (3) "to receive," or "to succeed to."

*ab labris*: "at the rim": cp. *ab radicibus*: chap. 27. Drinking horns such as here described were common in early days.

## CHAPTER XXIX.

*Caesar*: the narrative broken off at Chap. x. is here resumed.

*supra*: Chapter XXII.

*auxilia* : the reinforcement sent by the Germans to the Gauls.

*in extremo ponte* : "at the end of the bridge." The garrison was probably stationed on the west bank, at the other end of the bridge.

*frumenta* : "crops:" it was now in the latter part of July or early in August.

*Arduennam* : see B. v., Chap. 3.

*milibus amplius quingentis*, scil., *passuum* : this is an error.

*L. Minucium Basilum* : he was one of Caesar's naval commanders during the civil war. Like Trebonius (mentioned Chap. 23.) he turned against his general and was one of his assassins. A year later his cruelty provoked his household slaves to murder him.

*si* : "to see whether."

### CHAPTER XXX.

*opinionem* : "expectation."

*quo in loco* = *ad eum locum in quo*.

*dicebatur*, scil., *Ambiorix*. Notice that *dico* is personal and not impersonal in the passive when said of a person. Translate: *it is said that Caesar was the greatest general among the Romans*.

*quum—tum* = *et—et*.

*ipsum* : *Ambiorix*.—*eius* : *Basilus* : *ipsum* and *illum* below refer to *Ambiorix*.

*incideret*, scil., *Basilus*.

*magnae fuit fortunae* : "so it was a piece of great good fortune for *Ambiorix* to escape from death."

*silvā* : ablative of means.

*propinquitates* : "vicinity."

*sic—valuit* : "such was the power of fortune both as to his (*Ambiorix*) getting into danger and getting out of it."

### CHAPTER XXXI.

*judicio* : abl. of cause, "purposely," "designedly."—note *ne—an* in double questions = *utrum—an* : F. 177, 5 ; P. II., 42, 44.

*tempore exclusus* : "prohibited by want of time."

*prohibitus* : "prevented."

*continentes paludes* : called *perpetuae*, Chap. 5, i.e., "land unbroken by the sea."

*insulis* : "the low lands that became islands when the tide ran in."

*omnibus precibus detestatus Ambiorigem*: "cursing Ambiorix with all kinds of imprecations."

*qui—fuisset=quippe qui fuisset*: "inasmuch as he had been the instigator of this plot:" for subjunctive: F. 198, 4; P. 99, (g) iii.

*taxo*: the juice of the yew leaves is said to be poisonous: though the berries are said to be harmless.

## CHAPTER XXXII.

*Segni*: the name still survives in the town of *Sègne* as that of the Condruzi does in the district of *Condroz*.

*oratum*: explain the use of the supine in *-um*: F, 174, 2 and 3; P. 105.

*unam*: "one and the same," "identical."

*si—violaturum*: in direct discourse=*si ita feceritis—non violabo*.

*Aduatucam*: the modern site may be Tongern, in the Belgian province of Limburg, on the Jaar, a branch of the Maas.

*quum—tum=et—et*: "both—and."

*reliquis rebus*: "in other respects."

*sublevaret*, scil., *Caesar*. The soldiers were then relieved of the labour of fortifying the camp.

*praesidio impedimentis*: "to guard the baggage:" dative for which and dative to which: F. 134, 1; P. 82 (c) and (b).

*ei legioni castrisque*: dat., F. 120.

## CHAPTER XXXIII.

*ad Oceanum versus=adversus Oceanum*.

*Aduatucis adiacet*: for the dative: F. 120.

*Scaldem*: the Scheldt which flows into the Meuse (*Mosa*) according to Caesar. The Scheldt does not flow into the Meuse, and as the distance between Tongern and it seems too great to be traversed twice, as Caesar travelled, in seven days, some read *Sabim* (Sambre) which occurs in the Greek version.

*post diem septimum*: literally, "during the seventh day afterwards."

*ad quam diem*: note the change in gender in *dies*. Generally *dies* feminine is used for "time."

*in praesidio*: at Aduatuca.

*revertantur=ut revertantur*.

## CHAPTER XXXIV.

*quod—defenderet=tale ut—defenderet*: "was able to defend:" indefinite relative.

*abditā*: "secluded."

*consederat*, i.e., *ibi consederat* as correlative to *ubi*.

*vicinitatibus* = *vicinis*: "neighbours," abstract for concrete: so *remigium*, "crew;" *servitium*, "slaves."

*requirebat*: "demanded."

*in-tuenda*: "in protecting the main body of the army."

*universis* scil., *Romanis*.

*quae*—*pertinebat*: "and this circumstance, still, in some degree, concerned the safety of the army."

*longius*: "too far."

*confertos*: "in close order:" from *confercio*.

*sceleratorum*: "of these villains:" referring to the Eburones, who had destroyed the fifteen cohorts under Cotta and Sabinus. No doubt Caesar felt bitter hatred against this tribe.

*in-difficultatibus*: "considering the nature of the difficulties."

*quantum*: supply *tantum* before *proridebatur*.

*Gallorum vita*. Caesar would rather sacrifice the lives of the Gauls than those of the Romans.

## CHAPTER XXXV.

*reverti*: distinguish *redeo* and *revertor* in meaning.

*legionem*: the 14th under Cicero, and the stores at Aduatuca (Tongern).

*quantum*—*possit*: dependent question.

*cognosci potuit*: impersonal use of *possum* with passive infinitive. Translate and parse each word in *hoc fieri potest*; *hoc facere potest*.

*afferat*: same kind of subjunctive as *defenderet* in Chap. xxxiv.

*ultra*: connected with *ultra*, "beyond." Translate "further."

*ex fuga*: "after their flight."

*triginta millibus*: ablative of measure of difference. The place was near Bonn.

*supra*: B. iv., Chap. 16.

*primos fines*: "the border of the territories of the Eburones."

*fortunatissimis*: predicate after *esse* attended to the case of *quibus* as is usual in Caesar,

*tribus horis*: "within three hours." What other ways of expressing this?

*tantum*: "so small."

*cingi*: "be manned," literally "encircled."

## CHAPTER XXXVI.

*praeceptis Caesaris*: ablative of cause: "according to the instructions of Caesar." The year before B.C. 54 Cicero had withstood the attack of the Nervii.

*qui—continuisset*: "although he had kept:" *qui* is here concessive: F. 196, 8; P. 99 (i),

*quemquam*; here an adjective for the more usual *ullus*. Distinguish *quisquam*, *ullus* and *quivis*, *quilibet*: F. 132: P. 95.

*illius*=*Ciceronis*.

*ullum—posset*: "not expecting that any casualty could arise, by which within a distance of three miles any disaster could be inflicted, when nine legions and a large force of cavalry were in advance of him, and when the enemy was defeated and almost exterminated."—*posset*: subjunctive as expressing Cicero's opinion: *afferebatur* and *audiebat* above express the simple fact.—*quo* is the simple ablative: "by which."—*offendi* is used impersonally.

*frumentatum*: supine.

*hoc spatio dierum*: "during this period of time."

*sub vexillo*: "as a separate party:" literally "under a flag." The *vexillum* was a square flag hung from a cross-piece of wood on a pole.

*vis*: often used in the sense of quantity, number.

*subsederat*: only used here in the sense "had been left."

*facta potestate*: "having obtained permission."

## CHAPTER XXXVII.

*casu*: "juncture."

*eodem illo cursu*: "at the same full gallop."

*ab decumana porta*: "on the side of the gate in the rear:" for the position of the *porta decumana* see *Castra* (in Introduction).

*obiectis silvis*: causal abl. abs.: "inasmuch as woods obstructed the view."

*usque eo*: literally, "even to such a degree:" i.e., "nay, so completely was this the case."

*qui= tales ut*: translate, "that such merchants as had their tents beneath the rampart had not an opportunity to withdraw." These merchants had not gone with the foraging party. They had their tents just outside the rear gate. For *vallum* see Introduction (*Castra*).—*tenderent*: *tendere* is often used both in poets and historians "to tent:" cp. Ovid, *Heroides*, I, 35. *Illic Aecides, illic tendebat Ulixes* and Vergil, *Aen.* II. 29: *Hic saevus tendebat Achilles*.

*re nova*: "by the novelty of the occurrence."

*in statione*: "on guard," closely taken with *cohors*.

*si*: "to see if:" so B. v. Chap. 29.

*aditus*: "points of attack."

*locus*: the camp was on a high hill.

*totis castris*: abl. of place without preposition, as often when the noun is qualified by *totus*: cp. *totā Graeciā*.

*quo signa ferantur*: "when an advance should be made:" dependent question, therefore, subjunctive: F. 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

*plerique—fingunt*: "most of them imagine new superstitious alarms suggested by the place."

*calamitatem*: described in B. v. Chap. 26–37.

*occiderint*: Caesar is thinking of the thought of the soldiers, hence the subjunctive.

*barbaris*: translate as if = *barbarorum*.

*ex manibus dimittant*: "let go;" "let slip."

## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

*primum pilum duxerat*: "had held the office of chief centurion" (*primipilus*).

*ad Caesarem*: "in Caesar's army," "in Caesar's service." He was in the 12th legion.—*ad=apud*.

*superioribus proeliis*: with the Nervii (B. II. Chap. 25); among the Alps (B. III. Chap 8).

*diem iam quintum*: acc. duration of time.

*diffusus*: *audeo*, *gaudeo*, *soleo*, *fido* and its compounds are semi-deponents. What verbs govern a dative? F. 105, 9 and 120; P. 82 (e), i. ii.

*relinquit animus Sextium*: "Sextius faints." Distinguish *relinquere animum*, "to faint": *relinquere animam*, "to die."

*per manus*: "passed from hand to hand."

## CHAPTER XXXIX.

*exaudiunt*: "hear from afar." Note the force of *ex*.

*sit*: subj. of dependent question: F. 176, 2; P. 99 (d).

*quae*: consecutive relative = *ut ea*. The foragers were three miles off.

*modo—imperiti*: "those who were lately enlisted, and therefore, unacquainted with the usages of war." He refers to the 14th legion: B. vi. Chap. 33; B. vi. Chap. i.

*quin perturbetur*: F. 188, 6; P. II., 156–158. *quin=qui non*: "as not to be confused."

## CHAPTER XL.

*hinc—coniciunt*: “driven thence by a charge, they try to force their way into the line and among the companies.” The *signum* of the *manipulus* was originally a pole with a wisp of grass on the top. Afterwards the pole was changed into a spear and the wisp of grass was replaced by gilded, silver or bronze figures of animals. Finally the eagle (*aquila*) was retained as the standard of the legion. The cohorts do not seem to have had any distinct *signa*.

*alii—censent*: “some of the soldiers advise that they should form in mass and break through (the Germans).” The *cuneus* (“wedge”) is described by Vegetius as a number of infantry in close rank with the head of the column narrow and widening towards the rear, and formed to break the enemy’s line. In shape it was like a  $\Delta$ . It was called also *caput porcinum* or “pig’s head.”

*quoniam—sint*: “since (they say) the camp is so near:” for the subjunctive: F. 198, 2; P. 99, (g), i.

*at*: “still,” “at least.”

*alii*, scil., *censent*.

*ad unum omnes*: “to a man.”

*nullo percepto*: “as yet not seeing at all what military practice required.”

*eam—vim celeritatemque*: note the antecedent is put in the relative clause.

*se* must be taken with both *recipere* and *demiserunt*.

*virtutis causa*: “on account of bravery.” There was a regular system of promotion in the Roman army: see Introduction p. xx., (a).

*ante—laudem*: “their renown for military prowess previously acquired.”

*pars*: two cohorts (over 700 men) perished.

## CHAPTER XLI.

*expugnatio*: “taking by storm,” different from *oppugnatio*, “storming.”

*fidem non faceret*: “he could not induce (Cicero and his soldiers).”—*fidem facere* is to give confidence or to make believe.

*ut* is consecutive: “thus fear had so taken possession of the minds of all.”

*paene—mente*: “almost bereft of reason.”

*neque—contenderent*: “and they were maintaining that, had the Roman army been unharmed the Germans would not have attacked the camp.”—*incolumi exercitu*: abl. abs.

## CHAPTER XLII.

*eventus*: acc. pl.: “the vicissitudes,” “the chances.”

*unum* acc. after *questus*: “complaining of (only) one thing.”

*quod—essent emissae*: virtual oblique narration and hence subjunctive.

*casu* = *casui*, dative : ( "saying that) for not even the slightest chance, etc."

*iudicavit* : "concluded."

*avertisset*, scil., *fortuna*.

*optatissimum—obtulerunt* : "had incidentally rendered a most acceptable service to Ambiorix."

### CHAPTER XLIII.

*praeda* : cattle and other animals as shown by *agebatur*.

*frumenta* : different kinds of grain : hence, plural.

*anni tempore* : autumn rains had set in.

*in praesentia* : "for a time."

*his*, dative : to be construed with *pereundum*.

*in eum locum* : "to such a pass." Translate : "and often matters came to such a pass from the number of the horse that were scattered in all directions, that the captain declared Ambiorix had just been seen by them in flight, and that he had not yet gone completely out of their sight ; insomuch that some, who thought to stand high in the favor of Caesar, inspired with the hope of overtaking him, and undertaking a task of infinite labor, almost overpowered nature by their zeal." —*ventum est* : F. 164, 2 ; P. 72.—*diviso equitatu* : abl. abs.

*ad summam felicitatem* : "to complete success."

*atque ille—eriperet* : "while he kept snatching himself from their hands by the aid of hiding places in forests and passes"

### CHAPTER XLIV.

*damno* : abl. of accompaniment : F. p. 12, 3 ; P. 85 (e).

*Durocortorum* : from *DUR*, "water:" now Rheims on the Vêlè, a branch of the Seine.

*more maiorum* : after Roman fashion, the condemned man was first flogged and then beheaded.

*quibus interdixisset* : "when he had forbidden these the use of fire and water," i.e., when he had banished them. The expression *aquae et ignis interdictio* is said of a person banished. The banished person might go anywhere out of the province from which he was banished. Here it means banished from Gaul.

*ut—instituerat* : cp. B. v. Chap. 1, *ut quotannis facere consuevit*.

*conventus agendos* : "to hold assizes" in Cisalpine Gaul. "Holding assizes" was the regular duty of the *consul* or *proconsul* of the province.

## PROPER NAMES.

---

### ABBREVIATIONS.

adj. = adjective; f. = feminine; m. = masculine; N. = noun; n. neuter; pl. plural; sing. = singular.

#### A.

**Acc-o, -ōnis, N. m.:** Acco, chief of the Senones.

**Ādūātūc-i, -ōrum; N. pl. m.:** the *Aduatuci*, a people of *Gallia Belgica*. According to Caesar they were descended from the Cimbri and Teutones, who had been left behind to guard the baggage and cattle when these two nations made a descent on Italy (B. II., C. XXIX.). This is, however, contradicted when he says that the Belgae were the only Gallic tribe who kept the Cimbri and Teutones out of their territory. They lived near the confluence of the Sabis (*Sambre*) and the Mosa (*Meuse*).

**Aedūs, -a, -um; adj.:** an *Aeduan*. The Aedui were a powerful nation of Gaul. Their confederacy embraced all the tract of country between the *Allier*, the middle *Loire*, and the *Saône*, and extended a little below this river to the south. Their capital was *Bibracte*. When Caesar came to Gaul, he found the *Aedui* had been overcome by their rivals the *Arverni* and the *Seguni*, who had called in the aid of Ariovistus, a German prince. Caesar espoused the cause of the Aedui, and restored them to their former place of power.

**Afrīcus, -i; m.:** the *south-west* wind. Still called by the modern Italians *Africo*.

**Agedincum, -i; N.:** capital of the Senones on the Yonne, a tributary of the Seine: now called *Sens*.

**Ambīōrix, -īgis; m.:** *Ambiorix*, chief of the Eburones.

**Anartes, -ium; m.:** a Dacian tribe on the Theiss.

**Ancalītes, -ium; m.:** a British tribe, near Oxford, that surrendered to Caesar.

**Antistius, -i; m.:** *Caius Antistius Reginus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**Apoll -o, -īnis; m.:** Apollo, a god, son of Jupiter and Latona, identified by Caesar with a Gallic divinity.

**Arduenn-a, -ae; f.:** the *Ardennes* forest of Gaul. According to Caesar, it reached from the Rhine and the territories of the Treveri to those of the Nervii, being upwards of fifty miles in length. The origin of the word is either from *ar denn*, i.e. "the profound," "the deep" (forest), or *ard* "hard", *venna* "pasture".

**Ariovistus, -i; N. m.:** *Ariovistus*, a king of the Germans who invaded Gaul, conquered the greater part of the country and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel and oppressive treatment. Caesar marched against him and defeated him in battle. He died of wounds or through chagrin at his defeat. His name is probably from the German *Heer*, "an army": *Fürst*, "a leader" or from *Aar*, "an eagle"; *Vistus*, a Latinized form of *first*=*horst*, "a nest" the word would then mean *Egry*.

**Arunculeius**, -i; N. m.: *Lucius Arunculeius Cotta*, one of the legati in Caesar's army in Gaul. When Ambiorix, a king of the Eburones, was seeking to withdraw him and his colleague Sabinus from winter-quarters, Cotta was opposed to leaving the encampment but finally yielded. The Roman army was drawn into an ambush-cade, and both he and his colleague fell.

**Armorīc-us**, a, -um; adj.: *Armorican*. The ancient Armorica comprised modern *Brittany* and part of *Normandy*. The word is derived from *ar*, "on" and *mor*, "sea".

**Arpinēius**, -i; N. m.: *Caius Arpineius*, a Roman knight.

**Atrebas**, -ātis; N. m.: the *Atrebatians* were a people of *Gallia Belgica*, of high renown for valour. Their territory lay S.E. from that of the Morini and S.W. from that of the Nervii, answering to the modern *Artois* in the *Département du Pas de Calais*. Their chief town was Nemetocenna (now *Arras*, or as the Flemings call it, *Atrecht*.)

**Atrīus**, -i; N. m.: *Quintus Atrius*, an officer in Caesar's army, left to look after the fleet while Caesar invaded Britain.

## B.

**Bacōnis**, -is (scil. *silva*); adj.: a forest in Germany separating the Suebi from the Cherusci. It corresponded to the western portion of the *Thuringian Forest*, and formed part of the *Hercynia Silva* or *Black Forest*.

**Bacūlus**, -i; N. m.: *Sextius Baculus*, a centurion in Caesar's army.

**Balventī-us**, -i; N. m.: *Titus Balventius*, a brave Roman centurion: v. 25.

**Bāsīl-us**, -i; N. m.: *L. Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's officers; afterwards one of the conspirators against him.

**Belgae**, -ārum; N. m. pl.: the *Belgae*, a people of Ancient Gaul, separated from the Keltae in the time of Caesar by the rivers *Matrona* (*Marne*) and the *Sequana* (*Seine*).

**Belgīum**, -i; N. n.: the land of the *Belgae*, the modern *Belgium*.

**Bellōvāc-i**, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: the *Bellovaci*, a powerful nation of the *Belgae*, to the north of the *Parisii*. Their capital was *Caesaromagus*, afterwards *Bellovaci*, now *Beauvais*.

**Bibroci**, tribe in S. E. Britain [*Bray?*]

**Britannī-a**, -ae; N. f.: the island of *Great Britain*

**Britann-i**, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: the *Britons*.

**Britannī-cus**, -ca, -cum; adj.: *British*.

## C.

**Calēt-i**, -ōrum, also *Calet-es*, -ium; N. m. pl.: an Armorican tribe living in *Normandy*.

**Cantī-rum**, -i; N. n.: *Kent*, a district in England. The name is said to be derived from the German *Kante*, "a corner."

**Carnūt-es**, -ium; N. pl. m.: a tribe in Central Gaul; their capital was *Cenabum*; now *Orleans*.

**Carvīlī-us**, -i; N. m.: a British king of *Kent*

- Cass-i, -ōrum**; N. pl. m. : a small tribe of Britain who surrendered to Caesar.
- Cassivellaunus, -i**; N. m. : *Cassivellaunus*; Caswallon, commander-in-chief of the British army against Caesar.
- Catuvoicus, -i**; N. m. ; *Catuvoicus*, a chief of the Eburones, who poisoned himself after the failure of an insurrection he had promoted
- Cavarinus, -i**; N. m. : a chief of the Senones.
- Cavilius, -i**; N. m. : a petty British chief.
- Cenimagni, -ōrum**; N. m. pl. : a British tribe in Suffolk, who surrendered to Caesar.
- Centrones, -um**; N. pl. : (1) a Belgic tribe in the neighbourhood of Courtray, in West Flanders, subject to the Nervii; (2) a tribe in the Province.
- Cherusci, -orum**; N. m. pl. : a German tribe between the Weser, the Elbe, and the Hartz mountains.
- Cicē-o, -ōnis**; N. m. : *Quintus Tullius Cicero*, the brother of the famous orator, M. Tullius Cicero. He was one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul.
- Cingetorix, -igis**; N. m. ; (1) a Gaul, attached to Caesar, and the rival of Indutiomarus for the chief power among the Treveri; (2) a British chief in Kent.
- Cisrhēnān-us, -a, -um** [cis, "on this side"; Rhenus, *Rhine*]; adj. ; *lying on this* (i.e. the Italian) *side of the Rhine*, i.e. the western side.
- Claudi-us, -i**; N. m. : *Appius Claudius*, consul with L. Domitius, B.C. 54.
- Commī-us, -i**; N. m. : *Commius*, the leader of the Atrebatēs.
- Condrūsi, -ōrum**; N. pl. m. : a Belgic tribe on the right bank of the Meuse, near Liège, district *Condroz*.
- Corus, -i**; N. m. : *Corus* or *Caurus*: the north-west wind.
- Crassus, -i**; N. m. : *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, who crushed the army of Spartacus B.C. 71. He was one of the first triumvirate along with Caesar and Pompey. He and his son Publius went to Parthia and perished there B.C. 53.

# D.

- Dacus, -i**; N. m. : a *Dacian*. The Dacians occupied the south-east provinces of the modern Kingdom of Austria.
- Danūbius, -i**; N. m. : the Danube, the great river of Central Europe.
- Dis, Ditis**; N. m. : *Pluto*, god of the lower world.
- Divitiācus, -i**; N. m. : (1) a Druid and chief of the Aedui who went to Rome to plead the cause of his countrymen when they were opposed by the Sequani and the Arverni in alliance with Ariovistus. He was faithful to Caesar, who rewarded him by pardoning his brother Dumnorix and the Bellovaci at his intercession. (2) A chief of the Suessiones, who held sway over a large part of Gaul and even Britain.
- Domitius, -i**; N. m. ; *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul with Appius Claudius Pulcher, B.C. 54.
- Druides, -um**; N. pl. m. ; *the Druids* or priests of the ancient Britons and other Celtic tribes. The probable derivation is from the Celtic *der*, "an oak"; *wydd*, "mistletoe"; and *dyn*, "a man"; hence "the man who gains supernatural information from the mistletoe on the oak."

**Dumnōrix**, -igis; N. m.: a chief of the Aedui, and brother of Divitiacus. He married the daughter of Orgetorix and obtained permission for the Helvetii to pass through the territory of the Sequani. He was always hostile to the Romans and was killed in B.C. 55 when trying to escape from Caesar.

**Dūrocōrtōrum**, (Δουρικώρτορα) -ī; N. n.: capital of the Remi, now *Rheims*, situated on the Vèle, a branch of the Aisne.

## E.

**Eburōnes**, -um; N. pl. m.: the *Eburones*, a nation of Gallia Belgica to the S.W. of the Ubii. Caesar mentions them as Germans. Their territory lay on both sides of the Mosa (*Meuse*) from the modern *Lîège* to *Aix-la-Chapelle*. Their chief town was Aduatua (B. II., C. IV.)

**Eratosthēnes**, -is; N. m.: a Greek, born at Cyrene, in Africa B. C. 276: appointed librarian to the Alexandrian Library and died B.C. 192 of starvation, because he was tired of life. He acquired fame as a geographer, mathematician and critic.

**Essui**, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: a people of Gaul, supposed to have been the same with the Sali, and lying to the north of the Diablintes and Cenomani. Their chief city was Sali, now *Seez*, on the river Olina, now *Orne*.

## F.

**Fabius**, -ī; N. m.: *Caius Fabius*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

## G.

**Gallia**, -ae; N. f.: *Gaul*, now *France* and *Northern Italy*. *France* corresponded to *Gallia Transalpina*, or *Gallia Uterior*, or "Gaul beyond the Alps," or "Further Gaul"; the northern Italian provinces of Piedmont, Venetia, and Lombardy comprised *Gallia Cisalpina* or *Gallia Citerior*; "Gaul this side the Alps" or "Hither Gaul."

**Geidūni**, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the *Geiduni* or *Gorduni* were a people of Belgic Gaul, on the sea coast, above the Morini.

**Germāni**, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the *Germans*, a general name given by the Romans to the nations dwelling east of the Rhine. The word is probably from either (1) *wer*, "war" (the Romans softening w to g) and *mann*, "a man"; so that the word would mean "warriors," or (2) from the Celtic *gerr*, "war" and *mann*, "a man."

**Germānia**, -ae; N. f.: *Germany*.

**Germānic-us**, -a, -um; adj.: *German*.

**Grūdii**, -ōrum; N. m. pl.: a Belgic tribe, subject to the Nervii, whose territory lay between the *Scaldis* (Scheldt) and the ocean. The name still survives in the modern land *van Groede* (district of Groede) above *l'Ecluse*, to the north.

## H.

**Harūdes**, -um; N. pl. m.: a German tribe, in the vicinity of the Marcomanni, between the Rhine and the head water of the river Danube. The district they occupied was in the vicinity of the present cities of *Rothwail* and *Furstenberg*. Others say they were from Jutland. They with 24,000 men crossed the Rhine to join the army of Ariovistus.

**Helvētii**, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a nation of Gaul conquered by Caesar. It is generally supposed that *Helvetia* corresponded to the modern *Switzerland*, but the boundaries of the ancient province were of less extent than the modern Switzerland, being bounded on the north by the Rhenus and Lake Brigantinus (*Constance*); on the south by the Rhodanus (*Rhone*) and Lake Lemannus (*Geneva*), and on the west by Mt. Jura.

*Helvētius*, -a, -um; adj.: *Helvetian*.

*Hercynia* scil. *Silva*: an extensive forest in Germany. According to Caesar, the breadth was a nine days' journey, while the length exceeded sixty. It extended from the territories of the Helvetii, Nemetes and Rauraci, along the Danube to the country of the Daci and Anartes. It included the present *Black Forest*, which separates Alsace and Suabia; the *Steyger* in Franconia; the *Spissard* and *Odenwald* on the borders of Hesse Darmstadt; the *Thuringer* in Thuringia; the *Bohemerwald* forming the boundary of Bohemia, and the *Hartz* forest in Lunenburg. The word is said to be from the German word *hartz*, "resin," and still remains in the present *Hartz*, or from *hart*, "high."

*Hibernia*, -ae; N. f. sing.: *Ireland*, for the derivation see note on B. v., C. 13.

*Hispania*, -ae; N. f. sing.: *Spain*. The name is derived from a corrupt form of *Ἑσπερία*, *Hesperia*, "the western land," from *ἑσπερος*, "the evening star"; *vesper*, "evening." From *Hesperia* comes by a corrupt form *Hispania* in Latin, the Spanish *España* and our modern *Spain*.

*Hispanus*, -a, -um; adj.: *Spanish*.

# I.

*Indutiomārus*, -i; N. m. sing.: a leading man among the Treveri, and rival of Cingetorix, who sided with the Romans.

*Illyricum*, -i; N. m. sing.: *Illyricum* or *Illyria*, a country bordering on the Adriatic, opposite Italy.

*Iūnius*, -i; N. m. sing.: *Quintus Iunius*, one of Caesar's officers, by birth a Spaniard.

*Iuppiter* (gen. = *iouis*); N. m. sing.: *Jupiter*, son of Saturn, chief of the Roman gods.

*Itālia*, -ae; N. f. sing.: *Italy*.

*Itius*, -i; N. sing. m.: a harbour in Gaul, said to be modern *Boulogne*.

# L.

*Labērius*, -i; N. m. sing.: *Quintus Laberius* Dux, a military tribune in Caesar's army.

*Labīenus*, -i; N. m. sing.: *Titus Labienus* was one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic wars. In the beginning of the civil wars he left Caesar and went over to the side of Pompey. He escaped at Pharsalia, but fell at Munda.

*Levāci*, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a nation of Belgic Gaul, on the river Scaldis (*Scheldt*) and north-west of the Nervii, lying between them and the Grudii. Their territory in part forms the modern *Louvaine*.

*Lingōnes*, -um; N. pl. m.: a people of Gaul whose people inhabited Mons Vosegus (*Vosges*), and consequently the sources of the Mosa (*Meuse*) and Matrōna (*Marne*). They had a town also called Lingones (now *Longres*) and their territory corresponded to the modern Department of *Haute Marne*.

*Lucānius*, -i; N. m. sing.: *Quintus Lucanius*, a brave centurion.

*Lugotorix*, -igis; N. m. sing.: a British chief who was captured in an attack on Caesar's camp.

*Lutētia*, -ae; N. f. sing.: the capital of the Parisii, on an island of the Sequana (*Seine*), now *Paris*. The city first began to be of importance under the first French kings and was extended to both banks of the river, the island being connected with them by bridges.

## M.

**Mandubratius**, -ī; N. m. sing.: a chief of the Trinobantes in Britain, who attached himself to Caesar.

**Mars**, **Martis**; N. m. sing.: *Mars*, the Roman god of war.

**Mēldi**, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a Gallic tribe on the Marne, east of the Parisii.

**Mēnāpīi**, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a nation of *Gallia Belgica* occupying both sides of the river Rhine. Their town was called *Menapiorum Castellum*, now, *Kessel*.

**Mercūrius**, -ī; N. m. sing.: *Mercury*, a Roman god, patron of traders and thieves; also the god of eloquence and the messenger of Jupiter. The name is from *merces*, "gain".

**Mīnerva**, -ae; N. f. sing.: *Minerva*, goddess of wisdom and arts (from *moneo*, "to advise," hence, "the adviser").

**Minūcius**, -i; N. sing. m.: *L. Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's officers, in the war against Ambiorix, and afterwards stationed in winter quarters among the Remi. He sided with Caesar in the civil war, but afterwards became one of Caesar's assassins. The year after Caesar's death, 43 B.C., he was killed by his own slaves.

**Mōna**, -ae; N. f. sing.: the island of *Anglesey*. See note v., 13.

**Moritasgus**, -ī; N. m. sing.: chief of the Senones, a brother of Cavarinus.

**Mōsa**, -ae; N. f. sing.: the *Meuse*, or *Maas*, a river of Gaul rising among the Lingones, a little west of Mt. Vosegus and falling into the Vahalis (now *Waal*).

**Mūnātius**, -i; N. sing. m.: *L. Munatius Plancus*, a lieutenant of Caesar's, appointed with M. Crassus and C. Trebonius to the command of three legions which wintered in Belgium.

## N.

**Nemētes**, -um; N. pl. m.: the *Nemetes*, a German tribe, along the west bank of the river Rhine, occupying part of *Baden*. Their chief town was *Noviomagus* (now *Spires*).

**Nervīi**, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the *Nervii*, a powerful nation of *Gallia Belgica*, whose territory was N.E. of that of the Atrebrates. The river *Scaldis* (*Scheldt*) passed through part of their territories. Their chief town was *Bagocum* (now *Bavay*) which was afterwards supplanted by *Cameracum* (now *Cambray*), and *Turnacum* (now *Tournay*).

## P.

**Pādus**, -ī; N. m. sing.: the *Po*, the largest river of Italy. It rises in *Mons Vesulus* (*Mt. Viso*), near the sources of the *Druentia* (now *Drance*), runs in an easterly direction for more than 500 miles and discharges its waters into the Adriatic about 30 miles south of *Portus Venetus* (the modern *Venice*).

**Parīsiī**, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the *Parisii*, a Gallic tribe, north of the Carnutes and Senones. Their chief city was *Lutetia*, afterwards *Parisii*, now *Paris*.

**Petrosidius**, -i; N. sing. m.: *Lucius Petrosidius*, a standard bearer of Caesar's army.

**Pirustae**, -ārum; N. pl. m.: a tribe in Illyricum.

**Plancus**, -ī; N. Sing. m.: *L. Munatius Plancus*, a lieutenant of Caesar's.

**Pleumoxii**, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a Gallic tribe N.E. of the Atrebat, dependents of the Nervii, in West Flanders, west of the Suessiones.

**Pompēius**, -i; N. sing. m.: *Cn. Pompey; Pompey, the Great*; see History.

**Provincia**, -ae; N. f. sing.: the Roman *Province* of Southern Gaul. Now *Provence*.

**Pulio**, -ōnis; N. sing. m.: a centurion, rival of *Vorenus*.

## R.

**Raurāci**, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a Gallic tribe above the Helvetii and between the Sequani and the Rhine. Their chief town was Rauracum, afterwards called Augusta Raurācorum, now *Augst*, a small village near *Basle*.

**Rēmi**, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a powerful Gallic tribe whose capital was Durocortorum, now *Rheims*.

**Rhēnus**, -i; N. sing. m.: the *Rhine*, rising in the Leopontine Alps, a little above *Mt. St. Gothard*, in the country of the *Grisons*. It passes through Lake Brigantinus (*Constance*), afterwards through Lake Acronius (*Tell*), nearly west to Basilia (*Basle*). At this point it flows northerly, receiving various tributary streams till it enters the North Sea. The word is from the Aryan root *srū*, "to flow."

**Rōmānus**, -a, -um; adj.: *Roman*.

**Roscius**, -i; N. sing. m.: *Lucius Roscius*, one of Caesar's officers sent to winter with a legion in the territory of the Esubii.

## S.

**Samarobriva**, -ae; N. f. sing.: a town of the Ambiani on the *Samara (Somme)*; later called Ambiani, now *Amiens*.

**Scaldis**, -is; N. m. sing.: now the *Scheldt*, a river of Belgic Gaul, rising about 15 miles south of Camaracum, now *Cambray*, and falling into the German Sea near the modern island of *Walcheren*.

**Sedūni**, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a people of Helvetia, to the south-east of Lacus Lemannus, and occupying the head waters of the Rhine. Their chief town was Sedunum, now *Sion* or *Sitten*.

**Segontiaci**, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a people of Britain, living probably in the modern Hampshire.

**Segōnax**, -ācis; N. sing. m.: one of the four rulers of Kent at the time of Caesar's invasion.

**Senōnes**, -um; N. pl. m.: a powerful nation of Gallia Celtica, to the north-west of the Aedui. At the time of Caesar they had been reduced to mere clients of the Aedui. Their chief town was Agedincum, afterwards Senones; now *Sens*.

**Séquāni**, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a people of Gallia Celtica. They called in the aid of Ariovistus, the German, to aid them against the Aedui. After the defeat of Ariovistus, they felt severely the power of the Aedui. Caesar, however, restored them to their former power. Their chief town was Vesontio (*Besançon*).

**Sextius**, -i; N. sing. m.: (1) *Titus Sextius*, a lieutenant in Caesar's army. (2) *P. Sextius Baculus*, a brave centurion in Caesar's army.

**Silānus**, -i; N. sing. m.: *Marcus Silanus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

**Suēbi**, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: the *Suabians*, a German people who settled in the regions now known as *Bavaria* and *Württemberg*.

**Sugambri**, -ōrum; N. pl. m.: a German nation, in Caesar's time dwelling near the Rhine, but whose earlier settlements appear to have been further inland.

## T.

Tāmēsis, -is ; N. m. sing. : the *Thames*.

Tasgētius, -i ; N. m. sing. : the chief of the Carnutes whom Caesar restored to supreme power.

Taximāgūlus, -i ; N. m. sing. : a British prince, one of the four kings of Kent.

Tectosāges, -um ; N. m. pl. : a division of the Volcae, who lived in the western part of the province. Their capital was Tolōsa (now *Toulouse*).

Tenctērī, orum ; N. pl. m. : a German tribe who, being hard pressed by the Suebi, settled with the Usipetes in the lower Rhine.

Titurius, -i ; N. m. sing. : *Q. Titurius Sabinus*, a lieutenant of Caesar's, who lost his life in an ambushade contrived by Ambiorix, king of the Eburones.

Transrhēnānus, -a, -um ; adj. : *beyond or on the other side of the Rhine*.

Trebōnius, -i ; N. m. sing. : *Caius Trebonius*, a Roman knight.

Trēvērī, (also Trevīri) -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : the *Treveri*, a powerful nation of Gallia Belgica, north-east of the Rhine, between the Mosa (*Meuse*) and the Rhenus (*Rhine*). Their chief town was Augusta Trevirorum, now *Treves*.

## U.

Ubīī, -ōrum ; N. pl. m. : a German nation on the right bank of the Rhine. During the reign of Augustus, they were removed by Agrippa to the opposite or left bank in Gaul. At a subsequent period Agrippina, the mother of Nero, established a colony of veterans in their territory, called from her Colonia Agrippina, now *Cologne*.

Usipētes, -um ; N. pl. m. : a German nation, originally in Saxony.

## V.

Vertico, -ōnis ; N. sing. m. : a Nervian nobleman friendly to the Romans.

Vorēnus, -i ; N. sing. m. : a Roman centurion, rival of Pulio.

Volcātius, -i ; N. sing. m. : Caius Volcatius Tullus, one of Caesar's officers, left in charge of the bridge over the Rhine, while Caesar went in pursuit of the Suebi.

# VOCABULARY.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

a. . . . .	active.	m. . . . .	masculine gender.
abl. . . . .	ablative.	n. . . . .	neuter, neuter gender
acc. . . . .	accusative.	num. . . . .	numeral.
adv. . . . .	adverb.	opp. . . . .	opposed to in meaning
card. . . . .	cardinal.	ord. . . . .	ordinal.
cf. . . . .	confer, <i>i.e.</i> , compare.	p. . . . .	page.
comm. . . . .	common gender.	part. . . . .	participle.
comp. . . . .	comparative.	pass. . . . .	passive.
conj. . . . .	conjunctive.	pl., or plur. . . . .	plural.
demonstr. . . . .	demonstrative.	prep. . . . .	preposition.
dep. . . . .	deponent.	pron. . . . .	pronoun.
dim. . . . .	diminutive.	rel. . . . .	relative.
distrib. . . . .	distributive.	sc. . . . .	scilicet (one must understand).
e. g. . . . .	exempli gratia (for instance).	sq. . . . .	sequens (and the following).
= . . . . .	meaning the same as.	sing. . . . .	singular.
f. . . . .	feminine gender.	subst. . . . .	substantive.
freq. . . . .	frequentative.	sup. . . . .	superlative.
impers. . . . .	impersonal, -ly.	usu. . . . .	usually.
incept. . . . .	inceptive.	v. . . . .	verb.
indecl. . . . .	indeclinable.	v. . . . .	vide (look at).
interrog. . . . .	interrogative.		
irreg. . . . .	irregular.		

# VOCABULARY.

## A.

**a, ab, abs,** prep. w. abl., *by, from, at, etc.*

**ab-do,** abdidi, additum, *to hide.*

**ab-ẽo,** ire, vi or ii, itum, *to go away.*

**abicio** (abj.) ẽre, ieci, iectum, *to cast or throw away, throw down.*

**abies,** ẽtis, f., *fir.*

**ab-sisto,** ẽre, abstiti, *to desist, stand aloof from.*

**absum,** abesse, abfui, fut. inf., abfore or abfuturus esse, *to be away from, be absent, be distant.*

**ac,** conj., *and, and moreover.*

**accẽdo,** ẽre, cessi, cessum, *to come or go near, to approach; to be added.*

**accerso** (=arcesso), ẽre, ivi, itum, *to send for, summon.* [ad-cẽdo.]

**accido,** ẽre, cidi, no sup., *to happen.* [ad-cado.]

**accido,** ẽre cidi, cisum, *to cut into.* [ad-caedo.]

**accipio,** ẽre, cẽpi, ceptum, *to receive; to learn.* [ad-capio.]

**accurẽte,** adv., comp. -tius, *carefully, exactly.*

**acerrime.** V. acriter.

**acies,** ei, f., *line of battle, battle array.* [root **ac** sharp; "a thin line."] **acriter,** adv., *fiercely, sharply,* Comp. **acrius:** sup. **acerrime.** [acer.]

**actuarius,** a, um, adj., *impelled by oars.* [ago.]

**ad,** prep. w. acc., *to, towards, up to; by, near to.*

**adactus.** V. adigo.

**ad-aequo,** ẽre, avi, atum, *to make equal to; to equal, rival.*

**ad-augeo,** ẽre, auxi, auctum, *to increase.*

**ad-do,** ẽre, didi, ditum, *to add.*

**ad-dũco,** ẽre, xi, ctum, *to lead to, bring to, induce.*

**ademptus.** V. adimo.

**ad-ẽo,** ire, ii, itum, *to go to, approach.*

**adẽo,** adv., *to this degree, thus, thus far, so.*

**adfectus.** V. adficio.

**adfero.** V. affero.

**ad-ficio.** V. afficio.

**adffictus.** V. adfligo.

**ad-fligo,** fligẽre, flixi, flictum, *to cast or throw down.*

**ad-grẽgo,** are, avi, atum, *to add to a flock; adgregare, se, to attach oneself.* [ad, grex, grego.]

**ad-haereo,** ẽre, haesi, haesum, *to stick to.*

**ad-hibeo,** ẽre, ui, itum, *to have (one up) to, to summon, employ, consult.* [ad-habeo.]

**ad-hortor,** ari, atus, *to encourage, urge on.*

**ad-iaceo,** ẽre, iacui, no sup., *to lie near to; with dat.*

**ad-icio,** ẽre, ieci, iectum, *to throw upon, add.*

**ad-igo,** ẽre, ẽgi, actum, *to bring or drive to.* [ad, ago.]

**ad-imo,** ẽri, ẽmi, emptum, *to take away, deprive of.* [ad, emo.]

**ad-ipiscor,** i, eptus, *to gain, obtain.*

**adĩtus,** us, m., *a going to, access, approach.* [ad, eo.]

**ad-iungo,** ẽre, nxi, nctum, *to join to.*

**ad-iũtor,** ẽris, m., *a helper.*

**ad-iũno,** are, iũve, iũtum, *to aid.*

**ad-minister,** tri, m., *an attendant, agent.*

**ad-ministro,** are, avi, atum, *to manage.*

**admirandus,** a, um. Gerundive of admiror, *wonderful.*

**ad-mĩror,** ari, atus, v. dep., *to wonder at, to admire.*

**ad-mitto,** ẽre, misi, missum, *to admit; commit.*

**ad-mõdum,** adv., *up to the limit, much, very.*

**ad-mõneo,** ẽre, õi, itum, *to advise warn.*

**adölescens**, entis, part. *adolesco* : as adj., *young* ; as subst., comm., *a young man, youth*.

**äd-örrior**, iri, ortus, 4 (but with some 3rd conj. forms) v. dep., *to attack*.

**adpëto** (app.), ëre, ivi, or ti, itum, *to draw near, approach*.

**ad-plïco** (app.), äre, ùi, Itum, *to put against*.

**ad-porto**, äre, ävi, ätum, *to convey*.

**ad-pröpinquo** (app.), äre, ävi, ätum, *to come or draw near to*.

**adscendo**. V. ascendo.

**ad-sïdñus**, a, um, adj., *continual, constant*. [adsideo.]

**ad-sisto**, ëre, astiti, nosup., *to stand by*.

**ad-süsfäcio**, ëre, fëci, factum, *to accustom, to habituate* ; in pass., *to get used (to anything)*.

**ad-süesco**, ëre, ëvi, ëtum, *to grow used to, get accustomed to*.

**adsum**, -esse, -fui, *to be present, be at hand*.

**ad-tingo**, (att.) ëre, tïgi, tactum, *to touch, border upon*.

**ad-tribuo**. See attribuo.

**adventus**, ùs, m., *a coming, approach*.

**adversus**, a, um, adj., *turned towards, facing*.

**ad-völo**, äre, ävi, ätum, *to fly to ; to hasten off to*.

**aedificïum**, i, n, *a building*. [aedes, facio.]

**aedifico**, äre, ävi, ätum, *to make a building, to build*. [aedes, facio.]

**aeger**, gra, grum, adj., *ill, sick*.

**aegrë**, adv., *with difficulty*.

**aequinoctïum**, i, n, *the equinox*. [aequus nox.]

**aequitäs**, ätis, f., *equality, justice, evenness* ; animi *aequitas*, *contentment*.

**aequo**, äre, ävi, ätum, *to make equal*.

**aequus**, a, um, adj., *equal, level, advantageous*.

**aes**, aeris, n., *bronze ; money*.

**aestäs**, ätis, f., *summer*.

**aestimätio**, önis, f., *a valuation*.

**aestïmo**, äre, ävi, ätum, *to estimate, reckon*.

**aestivus**, a, um, adj., *pertaining to summer ; of summer*.

**aestüs**, ùs, m., *heat ; tide ; current*.

**aetäs**, ätis, f., *age, time of life*.

**Afrïcus** ventus, *the south-west wind*.

**affëro** (adf.), afferre, attüll, allätum, irreg., *to bring forward, allege*.

**affïcio** (adf.), ëre, fëci, fectum, *to affect, influence ; to visit with, treat*.

**äger**, gri, m., *land, territory, domain*, **ägrmen**, -inis, n., *an army on the march in column ; a train*.

**ägo**, ëre, ëgi, actum, *to do, act, drive, push forward ; to treat (with any one ; cf. Eug., drive a bargain)*.

**agrïcultūra**, ae, f., *farming, husbandry*. [aeger, colo.]

**äläcer**, cris, cre, adj., *brisk, eager*.

**albus**, a, um, adj., *white*.

**alces**, is, f., *the elk*.

**älïas**, adv., *at another time ; alias..*

**alias..** *at one time.. at another time*.

**aliënatus**, p. part. of *alieno*.

**aliëno**, äre, ävi, ätum, *to derange, deprive of reason*.

**älïënus**, a, um, adj., *that belongs to another, foreign ; res alienum, debt*.

**älïö**, adv., *elsewhere, to another place*. [alius.]

**älïquamdiu**, adv., *for a considerable time*.

**älïquantum**, adj. used as subs., *a certain amount*.

**älïqui**, äliqua, ällquod, indef. adj., *so.. e, any*.

**älïquis**, äliqua, ällquid, indef. pron., subst., and adj., *some one, something*.

**älïter**, adv., *otherwise, in a different way : aliter ac, differently from what, otherwise than*. [alius.]

**älïus**, ia, iud (gen. *alius*, dative, *alii*), *other, another ; alius.. alius, one.. another ; alii.. alii, some.. others*.

**ällicïo** (abl.), ëre, lexi, lectum, a, *to draw to, to attract*.

**älö**, ëre, älti, altum and ältum, *to feed, nourish, foster, promote*.

**alter**, ëra, ërum (gen. *alterius*, dat. *alteri*), adj., *the other of two. one of two, the other ; in plur., alteri.. alteri, the one party.. the other party*.

**ältitüdo**, inis, f., *height or p eph*.

**altus**, a, um, adj., *high, deep*.

**ambactus**, i, m., *a retainer, vassal*.

**ambo**, ambae, bo, adj., *both*.

**ämentia**, ae, f., *madness, folly*. [a, mens.]

**ämentum**, i, n., *a strap or thong*.

**ämicitïa**, ae, f., *friendship*.

**ämïcus**, a, um, adj., *friendly*.

**amitto**, ēre, mīsi, missum, *to lose*.  
**amplifico**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to widen, extend, enlarge*.

**amplior**, comp., adj., from **amplus**, *large, full*.

**amplitūdo**, inis, f., *width, size*.

**amplius**, comp. adv., *more, further*. [amplus.]

**amplus**, a, um, adj., *great, large*.

**an**, conj. introducing second half of a disjunctive or double question, *or*; **an.. an**, *whether..or*.

**ancōra**, ae, f., *an anchor*.

**angūlus**, i, m., *a corner, angle, extreme point*.

**angustiae**, ārum, f., *narrowness*.

**angustius**, comp. adv., *within more narrow limits; more scantily*.

**angustus**, a, um, adj., *narrow, contracted*.

**ānima**, ae, f., *the soul, life, breath*.

**ānimadverto**, ēre, ti, sum, *to turn the mind to, give heed to, notice, observe*. [animus, ad, verto.]

**ānimāl**, ālis, n., *an animal*.

**ānimus**, i, m., *mind, courage, resolution, thought*.

**annōtinus**, a, um, adj., *a year old, of last year, last year's*. [annus.]

**annus**, i, m., *a year*.

**anser**, ēris, m., *a goose*.

**ante**, prep. w. acc. and adv., *before*.

**anteā**, adv., *before*.

**antē-cēdo**, ēre, cessi, cessum, *to go before, go ahead, take the lead*.

**antē-cursor**, ōris, m., *a forerunner*; in plur., of an army, *advanced guard, scouts*.

**antē-fēro**, ferre, tūli, lātum, *to prefer*.

**antiquitus**, adv., *anciently, in former times, of old*. [antiquus.]

**āpērio**, īre, ērui, ertum, *to open, uncover*.

**āperte**, adv., *openly, manifestly*. [apertus.]

**āpertus**, a, um, perf. part. of **aperio**: as adj., *open, unprotected*.

**appello**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call upon, call upon by name, to call*.

**appello**, ēre, appūli, appulsum, (of ships) *to bring to port*.

**aptus**, a, um, adj., *fit, suitable*.

**āpūd**, prep. w. acc., *at, in, among, with, near, at the house of*.

**āqua**, ae, f., *water*.

**āquila**, ae, f., *an eagle*. *The eagle, the principal standard of a Roman legion, carried on the top of a staff, originally of silver, later of gold*.

**āquilifer**, ēri, m., *eagle bearer, the officer who carried the chief standard of a Roman legion*. ("The eagle-bearer was *aquilifer*, chosen by the centurions among the hardiest and bravest soldiers, and distinguished by a bearskin which covered his helmet and shoulders." Bond and Walpole.)

**arbiter**, tri, m., *a witness, judge, umpire*.

**arbitrium**, ii, n., *a decision, judgment*. [arbiter, an umpire.]

**arbitror**, āri, ātus, *to judge, think, consider*. [arbiter.]

**arbor**, ōris, f., *a tree*.

**ardeo**, ēre, arsi, arsum, *to be on fire, to burn*: Gallia ardet, *is aflame, burning with wrath*.

**argentum**, i, n., *silver*.

**argilla**, ae, f., *clay*.

**arma**, ōrum, n. plur., *arms, weapons of war*.

**armātus**, a, um, part. armo: as adj., *armed, wearing arms*.

**armo**, are, avi, atum, *to furnish with weapons, arm, equip*.

**arrīpiō**, ēre, rīpi, reptum, *to seize, snatch up*. [ad, rapio.]

**ars**, tis, f., *art, handicraft, skill*.

**articūlus**, i, m., dim. of **artus**, *a joint of an animal body*.

**artificium**, ii, n., *skilled labour, handicraft, a trade*.

**ascendo**, (ads.), ēre, scendi, scensum, *to climb, mount up, ascend*. [ad, scando.]

**ascensus**, ūs, m., *a going up, ascent*.

**asper**, ēra, ērum, adj., *rough: oppug-natic, fierce, severe*.

**at**, con' but, yet.

**atque** conj., *and, and also; with words meaning difference, than*.

**attingo**, ēre, tigi, tactum, *to reach, touch*.

**attribūo**, ēre, ūi, utum, *to add to, assign, give*.

**auctōr**, ōris, m., *an adviser*.

**auctōritās**, ātis, f., *influence; seldom translated authority*.

**audācia**, ae, f., *boldness, daring*.

**audāciter**, adv., *boldly; audacius audacissime*. [audax.]

**audēo**, ēre, ausus sum, semi-dep., *to dare*.

**audio**, ĩre, ĩvi, ĩtum, *to hear, to hearken unto, obey.*

**augēo**, ěre, auxi, auctum, *to enlarge, increase.*

**auris**, is, f., *an ear.*

**aut**, conj., or : aut...aut, *either...or.*

**autem**, conj., introducing a thought, either entirely opposed to the previous train of thought or simply different; (1) *but*, (2) *moreover, now* (transitional).

**auxilium**, ĩi, n., *aid, help.*

**averto**, ěre, ti, sum, *to turn (anything) away.*

## B.

**baltēus**, i. m., *a sword-belt.*

**barbārus**, i. m., *a foreigner, barbarian.* [βάρβαρος.]

**bellicus**, a, um, adj., *used for war, warlike.*

**bellum**, i, n., *war.*

**bēnē**, adv., *well.*

**bēnē-ficium**, *a kindness, favor.* [bene-facio.]

**bēnē-volentia**, ae, f., *good will, friendship, kindness.* [bene, volo.]

**bidūum**, i. n., *a space of two days.* [bis, dies.]

**bipertito**, adv., *in two divisions.*

**bis**, num. adv., *twice.*

**bōnus**, a, um, adj., *good*; as subst., **bona**, orum, n. plur., *wealth, goods, property.*

**bōnum**, i. n., *profit, good, advantage.*

**bōs**, bōvis, comm., *an ox.*

**brēvis**, e, adj., *short, brief.*

**brūma**, ae, f., *winter; the winter solstice.* [brevis.]

## C.

**cādo**, ěre, cēcidi, cāsum, *to fall* (i.e. *be killed*) *in battle.*

**caedes**, is, f., *a cutting down, slaughter.* [caedo.]

**caelestis**, e, adj., *belonging to the sky, heavenly*: as subst., *a deity.*

**caerulēus**, a, um, adj., *blue.*

**cālāmītās**, ātis, f., *mishap, disaster.*

**cālō**, ōnis, m., *camp-follower.*

**cāper**, pri, m., *a he-goat, goat.*

**cāpillus**, i, m., *hair, lock of hair.*

**cāpio**, ěre, cēpi, captum, *to take, make* (in the nautical sense of *reach*).

**caprēa**, ae, f., *a wild she-goat.*

**captivus**, a, um, adj., *taken prisoner*: as subst., **captivus**, i, m., *a prisoner of war, captive.* [capio.]

**captus**, p. part. of capio; **capta**, orum, n, pl. subst., *plunder.*

**cāpūt**, ĩtis, n., *the head.*

**cārēo**, ěre, ũi, ĩtum, *to be without*, gov. abl.

**cāro**, carnis, f., *flesh.*

**cārus**, a, um, adj., *dear, valued.*

**cāsa**, ae, f., *a hut.*

**cāsēus**, i. m., *cheese.*

**castrum**, i. n., *a fort*; more usual in plur., **castra**, ōrum, n., *a camp.*

**cāsus**, us, m., *accident, chance, event.* [cado.]

**cātēna**, ae, f., *a chain.*

**causa**, ae, f., *a reason, causā*, abl. sing. with gen., *for the sake of, on account of.*

**caute**, adv., *cautiously.* [caveo.]

**cāveo**, ere, cavi, cautum, *to take care; be on one's guard.*

**cēdo**, ěre, cessi, cessum, (of troops) *to retire, fall back.*

**cēlērītās**, ātis, f., *quickness, speed, swiftness.* [cēler.]

**censēo**, ěre, censui, censum, *to be of opinion, to think.*

**centum**, *a hundred.*

**centūriō**, ōnis, m., *a captain of a hundred men, a centurion.*

**cerno**, ěre, crēvi, crētum, *to distinguish by the senses, to see, perceive.*

**certāmen**, ĩnis, n., *a contest, rivalry.*

**certe**, adv., *certainly, surely*: **certius** (cognoscere) *more exactly, more in detail.*

**certus**, a, um, adj., *assured, fixed, settled*: (aliquem) **certiorem facere**, *to inform, let anyone know*; in pass., **certior fieri**, *to be informed.*

**cervus**, i, m., *a stag, deer.*

**cespes**, ĩtis, m., *a cut sod or turf.*

**cētērus**, a, um, adj., *the rest*; usually in plur., *the rest, the others.*

**cibāria**, ōrum, n. plur., *provisions.*

**cibus**, i, m., *food.*

**cin-go**, ěre, xi, otum, *to surround, encompass.*

**circiter**, prep. gov. acc. and adv., *about*; mostly of numbers or time.

**circuitus**, part. V. circumeo.

**circūitus**, ũs, m., *a going round, compass.* [circum, eo.]

**circum**, prep. w. acc. and adv., *around, about.*

**circum-cido**, ěre, cidi, cisum, a., *to cut around, cut.*

**circum-clūdo**, ěre, si, sum, *to shut in all around, to surround.*

**circum-do**, dāre, dēdi, dātum, *to surround, inclose.*

**circū-ěo**, ěre, ii, and ivi, circūitum and n., *to go round, visit.*

**circum-fundo**, ěre, fūdi fūsum, *to pour around, with se, to crowd around, gather around.*

**circum-mitto**, ěre, misi, missum, *to send around.*

**circum-sisto**, ěre, stēti, *to stand around, surround.*

**circumspiciō**, ěre, exi, ectum, n. and a., *to look around.*

**circum-vēniō**, ěre, vēni, ventum, *to come round (esp. in a hostile way), to surround, entrap.*

**circumventus**, a, um, p. part. circumvenio.

**citērior**, adj., formed from citra; *on the nearer side, nearer.*

**citrā**, prep. w. acc., *on this side of.*

**civitās**, ātis, f., *citizenship; a state (i.e. the body of citizens).* [civis.]

**clāmīto**, āre, avi, atum, freq. (clamo), *to keep calling out, to cry aloud.*

**clāmor**, ōris, m., *a shout, shouting.*

**clārus**, a, um, adj., *clear; vox, loud, distinct, clear.*

**cliens**, tis, m., *a dependant; of nations, vassals.*

**clientēla**, ae, f., *the condition of being dependent, vassalage.*

**cōactus**, ūs, m., *a forcing, compulsion.*

**coēgi**, v. cogo.

**cō-ěo**, ěre, ivi or ii, itum, *to come together, meet, assemble.*

**coelestis**, e, adj., *heavenly; celestial; as subst., coelestes, ium, pl., the gods.*

**coepi**, isse, v. defect., *to begin.*

**cōgīto**, āre, avi, atum, *to consider, ponder, reflect upon.*

**cognātīo**, ōnis, f., *kindred.*

**cognītus**, a, um, p. part. cognosco.

**cognosco**, ěre, gnōvi, gnītum, *to discover, learn, take cognizance of; in perf. tenses, know.*

**cōgo**, ěre, cōēgi, cōactum, *to bring together, collect; compel.* [co-ago.]

**cōhors**, tis, f., *a cohort; 1/2 of a legion.*

**cōhortor**, ari, atus, *to animate, encourage, exhort.*

**co-ěrim**, v. co-ěo.

**collectus**, a, um, part. colligo.

**collīgo**, ěre, lēgi, lectum, *to get together, collect; to get, acquire.* [con, lego.]

**collis**, is, m., *a hill.*

**col-laudo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to praise highly.*

**col-lōco**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to station.*

**col-lōquium**, ii. n., *a conference.*

**col-lōquor**, i., locutus, *to confer; hold a conference.*

**cōlo**, ěre, cōlūi, cultum, *to cultivate; to worship.*

**cōlōnia**, ae, f., *a colony, a body of emigrants, colonists.* [colonus, colo.]

**cōlor**, ōris, m., *colour.*

**comēs**, itis, m., *a companion.*

**cōmitor**, ari, atus sum, *to accompany*  
**commeātus**, ūs, m., *journey, voyage, convoy.* [cum, meo.]

**com-mēmōro**, āre, avi, atum, *to call to mind, recount, relate.*

**com-minus**, adv., *hand to hand.* con, manus.]

**com-mitto**, ěre, misi, missum, *to send or bring together; pugnam or proelium, to join battle; to do, commit (esp. any bad or unworthy action).*

**commōde**, adv., -ius, -issime, *conveniently, advantageously, suitably.*

**com-mōdus**, a, um, adj., *suitable; subst. commodum, i, n, advantage, profit.*

**com-mōror**, āri, atus, *to delay, stay.*

**commūnīco**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make common, share (with anyone), to consult.* [communis.]

**com-mūniō**, ěre, ivi or ii, itum, *to fortify strongly, intrench.*

**com-mūnis**, e, adj., *common, general.*

**commūtātīo**, ōnis, f., *change, alteration.*

**com-mūto**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to change wholly, to exchange, replace.*

**comparo**, v. comparo.

**com-pello**, v. compello.

**com-pēriō**, ěre, pēri, pertum, *to find out for certain, learn, ascertain.*

**com-plēo**, ěre, ēvi, ētum, *to fill full, fill up.*

**complures**, v. complurea.

**com-porto**, *ire, avi, atum*, to carry together, collect.

**com-prēhendo**, *ere, di, sum*, to catch or seize hold of.

**com-prōbo**, *ire, avi, atum*, to confirm, establish, make good.

**con-cēdo**, *ere, cessi, cessum*, yield; grant.

**concerto**, *ire, avi, atum*, to contend.

**con-cido**, *ere, cidi* to fall together; to fall down.

**concilio**, *ire, avi, atum*, to reconcile.

**concilium**, *fi, a*, an assembly, meeting, council.

**concito**, *ire, avi, atum*, freq., to rouse up, stir up, excite. [*con, cito.*]

**con-clāmo**, *ire, avi, atum*, to call or cry out together, to shout.

**con-curro**, *ere, curri, cursum*, to run together, flock.

**con-curso**, *ire, avi, atum*, freq., to run to and fro, rush about.

**concursum**, *us, m.*, a running or flocking together, a concourse, collision.

**condicio**, *ōnis, f.*, a condition (of a bargain), terms; condition (= state, circumstances.)

**con-dūco**, *ere, xi, ctum*, to lead or bring together; to hire.

**confectus**, *v. conficio.*

**con-fercio**, *ire, no, peri, tertum*, to cram, stuff or press close together. [*fercio.*]

**con-fertus**, *a, um*, part. *confercio*; adj., dense, close-packed, crowded.

**con-fēro**, *ferre, contuli, collitum*, to bring or gather together.

**con-festim**, *adv.*, forthwith.

**con-ficio**, *ere, feci, factum*, to finish, accomplish, perform; to wear out (with wounds), exhaust.

**con-fido**, *ere, fides sum*, to believe, trust, rely on.

**confinis**, *e, adj.*, bordering on, adjoining.

**con-finium**, *fi, n.*, limit, border, (of lands); district.

**con-firmo**, *ire, avi, atum*, to make firm, encourage; 2. to assert, pledge or pledge oneself to (a thing.)

**con-fiteor**, *ari, fessus*, to acknowledge, confess.

**con-flāgo**, *ire, avi, atum*, to burn, be consumed.

**con-flictātus**, *a, um*, part. *conflicto*, harassed, distressed.

**con-fligo**, *ere, fixi, flictum*, to clash with, dash together, engage with.

**confugio**, *ere, fugi*, to flee for refuge.

**con-grēdior**, *i, gressus, sum*, to meet, to engage in fight: *congrēdi cum*, to make conversation, converse with.

**con-icio**, *ere, ieci, iectum*, to cast, fling, hurl.

**con-iunctim** *adv.*, jointly, in common.

**con-iungo**, *ere, nxi, ctum*, to join, unite.

**con-iuratio**, *ōnis, f.*, a conspiracy. [*con-iuro.*]

**con-laudo**, *v. collaudo.*

**con-lōco**, *v. collōco.*

**con-lōquium**, *v. collōquium.*

**con-lōquor**, *v. collōquor.*

**cōnor**, *iri, atus*, to attempt, try.

**con-pāro**, (*com*) *ire, avi, atum*, to get ready, prepare, procure; 2. to put together for comparison, to compare.

**con-pello**, (*com*) *pellere, pelli, pulsus*, to drive together, gather.

**con-plures**, (*com*) *a, and ia, adj.* or *subst.*, several, very many.

**con-qui-ro**, *ere, quisi, quisitum*, to march out, seek after. [*con-quero.*]

**con-scendo**, *ere, ndi, nsus*, to climb, mount, go on board.

**con-scientia**, *ae, f.*, consciousness.

**con-scribo**, *ere, psi, ptum*, to write; to exhibit, enrol.

**consecratus**, *a, um*, part. *consecro.*

**con-secro**, *ire, avi, atum*, to make sacred, consecrate.

**con-sector**, *iri, atus, sum*, to chase, pursue.

**con-sēdi**, *pl. of consido.*

**con-sentio**, *sentire, sensi, sensum*, to agree, make common cause.

**con-sēquor**, *sēqui, secutus*, to follow up, follow.

**con-sido**, *ere, sedi, sessum*, to take out, pitch a camp.

**consilium**, *fi, n.*, plan, counsel; council of war.

**con-similis**, *e, adj.*, very like.

**con-sisto**, *ere, stiti, stitum*, to place oneself, stand; 2. to consist in or of.

**con-solor**, *iri, atus, sum*, to cheer, comfort.

**conspectus**, *us, m.*, sight, view.

*conlepo - conleperē - conleperum* *con-*

**con-spicio** ĕre, spexi, spectrum, *to behold, descry, observe.*

**conspicor**, āri, ātus, *to get sight of, see, perceive.*

**con-stat**, stāre, impers. v., *it is agreed, well known.*

**con-stipo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to crowd or press closely together.*

**con-stitūo**, ĕre, ūi, ūtum and n., *to draw up, arrange; to appoint; to decide, settle, determine; to resolve.*

**consūesco**, ĕre, suēvi, suētum, *to grow accustomed; in perf. tenses, to be accustomed, to be wont.*

**consuetūdo**, ūnis, f., *custom, usage.* [consuesco.]

**consūlo**, ĕre, lūi, lūtum, *to take counsel; with dat., to have regard to, consult the interests of.*

**consulto**, adv., *intentionally.* [consulo.]

**con-sūmo**, ĕre, sumpsi, sumptum, *to take up, use up, consume, waste, spend.*

**consumptus**. V. consuuo.

**con-surgo**, ĕre, surrexi, surrectum, *to arise, rise up.*

**con-tābūlo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to line with planks.*

**contāgio**, ōnis, f., *a touching, contact, contamination.*

**con-temno**, ĕre, tempsi, temptum, *to despise, hold cheap.*

**contemptio**, ōnis, f., *contempt, scorn.*

**con-tendo**, ĕre, di, tum, *to contend (as rivals); to fight; strive, make on effort.*

**contentio**, ōnis, f., *contest, rivalry.*

**contīnens**, entis, f., *the mainland; also adj., unbroken, continuous.*

**con-tīnēo**, ĕre, ūi, tentum, *to keep, keep in, restrain; (of space) to contain* [con, teneo.]

**con-tingo**, ĕre, tigi, tactum, *to touch, reach.*

**contīnūus**, a, um, adj., *unbroken, continuous.*

**contio**, ōnis, f., *an assembly; a speech, harangue.*

**contra**, prep. w. acc. and adv., *against; in opposition, in reply.*

**con-trāho**, ĕre, xi, ctum, *to draw together, draw in, lessen.*

**contrōversia**, ae, f., *contention, dispute.*

**contūmēlia**, ae, f., *affront, insult; c. verborum, insulting language, scoffs, taunts. blow (=injury, disaster).*

**convalesco**, ĕre, valui, no sup., *to get well, recover strength.*

**convallis**, is, f., *a valley enclosed on all sides.*

**con-vēnio**, ĭre, vēni, ventum, *to come together, assemble, muster.*

**conventus**, ūis, m., *an assembly; a court of justice; plur., the assizes; (of soldiers) parade.*

**con-verto**, ĕre, ti, sum, *to turn, direct.*

**cō-ŕrior**, ĭri, ortus, *to arise.*

**cōpia**, ae, f., *abundance, a sufficient supply; in plur., forces..*

**cor**, cordis, n., *the heart.*

**cōram**, adv. and prep. w. abl., *in the presence of.*

**cornu**, ūs, n., *a horn.*

**corpus**, ōris, n., *a body.*

**Cōrus ventus**, m., *the north-west wind.*

**cōtidiānus**, a, um, adj., *daily.*

**cōtidie**, adv., *daily.*

**crātis**, is, f., *wicker-work, hurdle.*

**crēber**, bra, um, adj., *frequent.*

**crēdo**, ĕre, didi, ditum, *to believe.*

**crēmo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to burn.*

**crūciātus**, ūs, m., *torture.* [crucio, crux.]

**crūs**, ūris, n., *a leg.*

**cūbile**, is, n., *a place of rest, couch, lair.* [cubo.]

**culpa**, ae, f., *fault.*

**cultus**, us, m., *way of living, civilization.* [colo.]

**cum**, prep. w. abl., *with.*

**cum**, conj., *when, since.*

**cūneus**, i, m., *a wedge; a wedge-formation, military term.*

**cūpīde**, ius, issime, adv., *eagerly.*

**cūpiditās**, ātis, f., *covetousness, desire, greed.* [cupidus, cupio.]

**cūpidus**, a, um, adj., *eager for, desirous of.* [cupio.]

**cūpio**, ĕre, ĭvi or ĭi, itum, *to wish; WITH DAT., to be well inclined to, =faveo.*

**cūr**, adv., *why.*

**cūro**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to care for; w. acc. of gerundive, to cause or order any thing to be done.*

**cursus**, ūs, m., *course.* [curro.]

**custōdia**, ae, f., *a guard, watch.*

## D.

**damnātus**, a, um, part. damno, *condemned*; as subst., *damnati, orum, m., convicts, criminals.*

**damnum**, i, n., *hurt, injury, loss.*

**dē**, prep. w. abl., *from, down from; about, concerning.*

**dēbēo**, ēre, tū, itum, *to owe.*

**dē-cēdo**, ēre, cessi, cessum, *to go away, depart.*

**dē-cerno**, ēre, crēvi, crētum, *to decide, settle.*

**dēcimus**, a, um, ord. num, adj., *tenth.*

**dēcērētum**, i, n. See decerno.

**decūmānus**, in the phrase *decumāna porta*, the rear or main entrance of a Roman camp, placed farthest from the enemy, opposite to the *porta praetoria*, and named from the fact that the 10th cohort encamped near it.

**dēditio**, ōnis, f., *a surrender.*

**dē-do**, -dēre, -didi, -dītum, *to deliver or give up, to devote.*

**dē-dūco**, ēre, duxi, ductum, *to lead away, withdraw (troops); (of ships), to bring down, launch.*

**dēductus**. V. deduco.

**dēfatigātus**, part. of *dēfatigo*, *wearied out, exhausted.*

**dēfectio**, ōnis, f., *rebellion, revolt. [deficio.]*

**dē-fendo**, ēre, di, sum, *to repel, ward off.*

**dēfensor**, ōris, m., *a defender.*

**dē-fēro**, ferre, tūli, lātum, *to announce, report; to bear down, carry down, bring.*

**dē-ficiō**, ēre, fēci, fectum, *to revolt; to fail, be wanting.*

**dē-figo**, ēre, xi, xum, *to fasten or fix down or in.*

**dē-fūgio**, ēre, fūgi, *to flee from, avoid, shun.*

**dēin-ceps**.

**dē-iectus**, a, um, part. deicio.

**dē-icio**, ēre, iēci, iectum, *to cast or throw down; to disappoint.*

**dē-lātus**. See defero.

**dē-lēo**, ēre, ēvi, ētum, *to destroy.*

**dē-ligo**, āre, avi, atum, *to bind up, bind fast. [ligo, "to bind."]*

**dē-ligo**, ēre, lēgi, leotum, *to choose [lego, "choose."]*

**dē-migro**, āre, avi, atum, *to retire from the fight.*

**dē-mitto**, ēre, misi, missum, *to send or let down; se, to descend.*

**dēmo**, ēre, dempsi, demptum, *to take off, remove.*

**dē-monstro**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to show, point out.*

**dēmum**, adv., *at last.*

**dēni**, ae, a, dis. adj., *ten apiece, ten.*

**dē-nuntio**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to declare.*

**dē-pello**, ēre, pūli, pulsum, *to drive away, remove.*

**dē-perdo**, ēre, didi, dītum, *to lose, lose utterly.*

**dē-pereo**, ire, periī, *to perish utterly.*

**dē-pōno**, ēre, pōtūi, pōsitum, *to lay down.*

**dēpōpulo**, āri, ātus sum, *to ravage, lay waste.*

**dēprecātor**, ōris, m., *an intercessor.*

**dēprecor**, āri, ātus sum, *to avert by entreaty, beg off.*

**dē-prēhendo**, ēre, di, sum, *to catch, seize upon.*

**dē-rōgo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to take away withdraw.*

**descendo**, ēre, scendi, scensum, *to descend.*

**dē-sēro**, ēre, rūi, rtum, *to abandon, forsake.*

**dēsertor**, ōris, m., *a runaway, deserter. [desero.]*

**dēsertus**, a, um, part. desero, *deserted; adj., (of places) solitary, waste.*

**dēsīdēro**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to wish.*

**dēsīdiā**, ae, f., *idleness, sloth.*

**desīlio**, ire, sīlūi, sultum, *to leap down.*

**desisto**, ēre, stiti, stitum, *to cease from.*

**dē-spēro**, āre, avi, atum, and a, to desire.

**despīciō**, ēre, spexi, spectrum, *to despise, look down upon.*

**dē-sum**, esse, fūi, *to be wanting, fail.*

**dē-terrēo**, ēre, terrūi, terrītum, *to frighten thoroughly, deter.*

**dēterritus**. See deterreo.

**detestor**, āri, ātus sum, *to curse, call down curses upon.*

**detrāho**, ēre, xi, ctum, *to withdraw from.*

**dētrimentum**, i, n., *damage, loss* ["a rubbing off," de, tero.]

**dēus**, i, m., *a deity, a god.*

dē-vēho, ēre, xi, crum, to carry down, convey.

dēvōco, āre, āvi, ātum, to call down.

dē-vōvēo, ēre, vōvi, vōtum, to vow, devote.

dexter, dextra, dextrum, adj., on the right-hand side, right.

dico, ēre, xi, ctum, to say: dicere diem, to fix, name a day.

dīco, āre, āvi, ātum, to devote, give up.

dictum, i, n, word, command.

dies, ēi, m. (sometimes in sing.), a day.

dif-fēro, ferre, distūl dīlātum, to differ.

difficilis, e, adj., difficult.

difficultās, ātis, f., difficulty.

dif-fīdo, ēre, fīsus sum, to distrust, despair of,

dif-fundo, ēre, fūdl, fūsum, to spread out.

dignitās, ātis, f., dignity.

dī-iūdico, āre, āvi, ātum, to decide, determine.

dilectus, a, um, part, diligo.

diligenter, -ius, -issime, adv., attentively, carefully.

diligentia, ae, f., carefulness.

dīlīgo, ēre, lexi, lectum, to esteem highly, to love.

dīmīco, āre, āvi, ātum, to fight.

dīmīdius, a, um, adj., half; dimidium, n., the half. [medius.]

dī-mitto, ēre, mīsi, missum, to send out in various directions; to forego, let slip, relinquish, abandon.

directus, a, um, part, dirigo; also adj., straight.

dīrīgo, ēre, rexi, rectum, to form into a straight line; draw up troops in battle array.

dis-cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, to go away, depart.

discessus, ūs, m., departure.

disciplina, ae, f., training, discipline.

disco, discere, didici, to learn by study.

discrimen, inis, n., risk, danger; difference.

dispār, pāris, adj., unequal.

di-spergo, ēre, si, sum, to scatter about, disperse.

dispersus, a, um, p. part. used as adj., scattered [dispergo.]

dis-pōno, ēre, pōsi, pōsitum, a., to set in different places, to station.

dispūtātiō, ōnis, f., arguing, disputing; an argument.

dis-pūto, āre, āvi, ātum, to investigate, treat of, discuss.

dissensio, ōnis, f., disagreement, discord.

dis-sentio, ire, si, sum, to differ in opinion, disagree.

dissipātus, a, um, part, dissipatio.

dis-sīpo, āre, āvi, ātum, to disperse, scatter.

dis-trībūo, ēre, ūi, ūtum, to divide, distribute.

dīū, -tus, tissime, adv., for a long time, long.

dīūtīnus, a, um, adj., enduring for a long time, lasting, long.

dīversus, a, um, part, diverto; adj., in different directions, apart, remote.

dī-vido, ēre, visi, visum, to divide, separate.

divinus, a, um, divine.

dō, dārē, dēdi, dātum, to give.

dōcēo, ēre, ūi, ctum, to teach, instruct, tell.

dōlēo, ēre, ūi, Itum, to grieve for, take to heart.

dōlor, ōris, m., pain (of body or mind) grief, chagrin.

dōmesticus, a, um, adj., domestic; bellum domesticum, intestine, civil war.

domicilium, i, n., dwelling.

dōminus, i, m., master, lord, owner.

dōmus, ūs, f., house, home; domi, loc. case, at home.

dōs, ōtis, f., dowry, marriage portion.

dūbito, āre, āvi, ātum, to doubt, hesitate.

dūbīus, a, um, adj., doubtful.

dūbīum, i, n., as subst., uncertainty, risk.

dūcenti, ae, a, adj., plur., two hundred.

dūco, ēre, xi, ctum, to lead; to hold, consider.

dum, conj., while, until.

dūō, ae, o, card. num. adj., two.

duōdecim, adj., twelve.

duōdēni, ae, a, dis. adj., twelve a piece, twelve.

*duplīco*, āre, āvi, ātum, *to double*.  
*dūrītīa*, ae, f., *hardness, hardness of life*.

*dūro*, āre, āvi, ātum, *to harden, make hardy*.

*dūrus*, a, um, adj., *hard*.

*dux*, dūcis, m. and f., *a leader*.

## E.

*ēā*, (sc. parte or viā), adv., *on that side, by that way, there*. [is.]

*ē-disco*, ēre, didici, *to learn off by heart*.

*ē-dūco*, ēre, xi, ctum, *to lead forth, draw out*.

*ef-fēro*, ferre, extūli, elātum, *to bring out; to set forth, publish; in pass., to be puffed up, elated, inspirited*.

*ef-ficiō*, ēre, feci, factum, *to bring to pass, accomplish, effect, produce*.

*ef-fūgiō*, ēre, fūgi, *to escape*.

*ēgēo*, ēre, ūi, *to lack, need, be in want of*.

*ēgestas*, ātis, f., *neediness, extreme poverty*.

*ē-grēdiōr*, i, gressus, *to come or go out*.

*ē-grēgius*, a, um, adj., *distinguished, remarkable*. [e, grege, i.e. out of the (common) herd.]

*ēgressus*, a, um, part. egredior.

*ēgressus*, ūs, m., *going out, the way out, departure*.

*ēicio*, ēre, ieci, iectum, *to turn out, cast out, cost up*.

*ēius-mōdi*, *of that kind, of such a kind*. [is, modus]

*ē-lābor*, i, elapsus, *to slip away, escape*.

*ēlapsus*, a, um, part. elabor.

*ēlēphantus*, i, and *ēlēphas*, antis, m., *an elephant*.

*ēlicio*, ēre, licui and lexi, lectum, *to entice or draw out*.

*ē-mitto*, ēre, misi, missum, *to send out*.

*ēnim*, conj. *for*.

*ē-nuntio*, āre, avi, atum, *to disclose, tell*.

*ēō*, adv., 1. an old dat. or acc., *thither, to that place*; 2. abl. of is used as adv. in phrase: *eo quod*, *for the reason that*; 3. abl. used as adv. of degree, *the, by that much*.

*eo*, ire, ivi or ii, Itum, *to go*.

*eōdem*, adv., *to the same place*.

*ēpistōla*, ae, f., *a letter*.

*ēpūlae*, īrum, f. (irreg. plur. of epulum), *banquets, feasts*.

*ēquēs*, Itis, m., *a horseman, rider; a (Roman) knight*; in plur., *equites, cavalry*, used also of the "Knights" of Gaul. [equus.]

*ēquester*, tris, tre, adj., *belonging to cavalry, cavalry*.

*ēquitātus*, ūs, m., *cavalry*.

*ēquus*, i, m., *a horse*.

*ereptus*, v. eripio.

*ē-rigo*, ēre, rexi, rectum, *to raise or set up*.

*ēripio*, ēre, ripui, reptum, *to snatch away; with se, to escape, flee*.

*erro*, āre, āvi, ātum, *to stray, wander; to wander from the truth, be mistaken*.

*ēruptio*, ōnis, f., *a breaking out; (of troops) a sally*.

*essēda*, ae, f., *war-chariot*.

*essēdārius*, i, m., *charioteer, chariot warrior*.

*ēt*, conj., *and, also; et..et, both..and*.

*ētiam*, conj., *also, even, furthermore*.

*etiāmsi*, conj., *even if, although*.

*etsi*, conj., *although*.

*ēventus*, ūs, m., *issue, consequence, result*. [e-venio.]

*ē-vōco*, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call out, summon*.

*ex*, prep., w. abl., *out of: ex consuetudine, according to custom*.

*exactus*, v. exigo.

*exāmino*, āre, āvi, ātum, *to weigh in the balance, examine, test*. [examen, the tongue of the balance.]

*exānimātus*, a, um, part. exanimo.

*ex-ānimo*, āre, āvi, ātum, *to kill*. [ex, anima, breath].

*ex-ardesco*, ēre, arsi, arsum, *to burst into a blaze, take fire*.

*ex-audio*, ire, ivi, Itum, *hear distinctly*.

*ex-cēdo*, ēre, cessi, cessum, *to go forth or out; to go out from; leave*.

*ex-cello*, ēre, cellui, celsum, *to be eminent, excel*.

*ex-celsus*, a, um, pf. part. of excello; adj., *tall, lofty*.

*exceptus*, a, um, pf. part. of excipio.

*ex-cipio*, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, *to catch, take, capture; take in turn, relieve (of sentinels, etc.)*.

*excito*, āre, āvi, ātum, *to raise, erect, build; to arouse, incite*.

**ex-clūdo**, ēre, clūdi, clūsum, *to shut out, cut off.*

**ex-cōgito**, are, avi, atum, *to think out, contrive.*

**ex-crūcio**, are, avi, atum, *to torture.*

**ex-ēo**, ire, īi, itum, *to go forth or out.*

**ex-ercēo**, ēre, ūi, itum, *to employ, keep busy; drill, exercise (troops).*

**exercitatio**, ōnis, f., *exercise, training, practice.* [exerceo].

**exercitus**, ūs, m., *an army.* [exerceo].

**ex-haurio**, ire, hausi, haustum, *to draw out, take out.*

**exigo**, ēre, ēgi, actum, *to bring to an end, complete.*

**exigūus**, a, um, adj., *small.*

**existimatio**, ōnis, f., *judgment, opinion.*

**ex-istimo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to consider, judge, think.*

**existo**, ēre, stiti, stitum, *to come forth, arise.*

**exitus**, ūs, m., *an issue, end, result.* [exeo].

**expecto**, v. **exspecto**.

**expeditio**, ōnis, f., *a foray, incursion, expedition.*

**expeditus**, part., from *expedio*, *unimpeded, ready, easy, lightly equipped.*

**ex-pello**, ēre, pūli, pulsum, *to drive out, banish, expel.*

**ex-pērior**, iri, pertus, *to try.*

**ex-pio**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to atone for, make good.*

**explorator**, ōris, m., *a scout, spy.*

**exploratus**, pf. part. of *exploro*, *ascertained for certain; pro explorato, as a fact.*

**ex-plōro**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to search out, reconnoitre.*

**ex-pōno** ēre, pōsui, positum, v. trans., *to land (troop), to set on shore (nautical).*

**expōsitus**. See *expono*.

**expugnatio**, ōnis, f., *attack, assault.*

**expulsus**, a, um, part. *expello*.

**exspecto**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to wait, wait for, await.*

**exsto** (exto), āre, no perf. or sup., *to stand forth; s and out, project above.*

**exstructus**, a, um, part. *extruo*.

**ex-strūo**, ēre, xi, ctum, *to build up, raise, rear.*

**extrā**, prep. w. acc., *beyond, outside of.*

**ex-trāho**, ēre, traxi, tractum, *to drag out, waste.*

**extrēmus**, a, um, adj., super. of *exterior, furthest, extreme.*

**ex-ūo**, ēre, ūi, ūtum, *to despoil, strip.*

## F.

**fāber**, i, m., *a smith, workman, mechanic* [root FA, in *facio*].

**fācilē**, adv., *easily.*

**fācilis**, e, adj., *easy.* [facio].

**fācinus**, ōris, n., *a crime.* [facio].

**fācio**, ēre, fēci, factum, *to do, make; aliquem certiores, to inform, let one know.*

**factio**, ōnis, f., *a faction, party.*

**factus**, a, um, part. *fio*.

**fācultās**, ātis, f., *means, opportunity.*

**fāgus**, i, f., *a beech-tree.*

**falsus**, a, um, part. *fallo*; adj., *false.*

**falx**, cis, f., *a grappling hook, used in attacking fortifications.*

**fāma**, ae, f., *report, rumor, tradition; tidings.* [for, *fari*.]

**fāmēs**, is, f., *hunger, famine.*

**fāmilīa**, ae, f., *household; servants; family; paterfamiliae, master of a house.*

**fāmilīāris**, e, adj.; usu. as subst., **fāmilīāris**, is, m., *an intimate friend.* [familia.]

**fāmilīārītās**, ātis, f., *intimacy, close friendship.*

**fās**, n., indecl., (what is) *right, lawful, permitted by Heaven.*

**fātum**, i, n., *fate.*

**felicitās**, ātis, f., *success.*

**fēmīna**, ae, f., *a woman.*

**fēmur**, ōris or īnis, n., *a thigh.*

**fēra**, ae, f., *a wild animal.*

**fēre**, adv., *almost, nearly.*

**fēro**, ferre, tūli, lātum, *to bear, bring; to bear, endure; to assert, say.*

**ferramentum**, i, n., *an iron tool.*

**ferrēus**, a, um, adj., *made of iron.* [ferrum.]

**ferrum**, i, n., *iron.*

**fertilis**, e, adj., *fertile, fruitful.*

**fēr** s. a. um, adj., *wild; fēra, ae, f., subst., *wild beast.**

**fervēfactus**, a, um, part., *heated made red-hot.* [ferveo, facio].

**fervēo**, ēre, bāi, *to be a-glow; ferventes glandes, red-hot bullets.*

**fides**, ei, f, *faith, confidence; faith, assurance, word of honor.*

**figūra**., ae, f., *form, shape.*

**filius**, ii, m., *a son.*

**figo**, ere, finxi, fectum, *to form, devise, frame.*

**finio**, ire, iui or ii, itum, *to end; to determine or fix the limits of; to describe the extent of.* [finis.]

**finis**, is, m., *a boundary, border, limit; fines, plur., territory.*

**finitimus**, a, um, adj., *bordering, adjoining, neighboring; plur. subst., finitimi, orum, m., neighbors.*

**fio**, fieri, factus, v. irreg. (pass. of facio), *to be made, become, take place.*

**firmo**, are, avi, atum, *to make strong, secure.*

**firmus**, a, um, adj., *strong, powerful.*

**flamma**, ae, f., *blaze, flame.*

**flecto**, ere, xi, xum, *to bend, curve.*

**flo**, flāre, flāvi, flātum, *to blow.*

**flūmen**, inis, n., *a river.*

**foedus**, eris, n., *a compact, treaty.*

**forma**, ae, f., *shape.*

**forte**, adv., *perchance, peradventure.*

**fortis**, e, adj., *brave.*

**fortiter**, -tius, -tissime, adv., *bravely.*

**fortūna**, ae, f., *fortune: in plur., possessions, property.*

**fortūnātus**, a, um, adj., *successful, wealthy.*

**fossa**, ae, f., *a ditch, trench.* [todio.]

**fōvĕa**, ae, f., *a pit, pitfall (for catching wild animals).*

**frāter**, tris, m., *a brother.*

**frēmītus**, us, m., *din, noise.*

**frētus**, a, um, adj., *relying upon (gubernans abl.).*

**frigus**, oris, n., *cold.*

**frons**, tis, f., *the forehead.*

**fructus**, ūs, m., *produce, fruit: of money, interest.*

**frumentārius**, a, um, adj., *pertaining to corn; res frumentaria, corn supply.*

**frumentatio**, ōis, f., *foraging; obtaining corn.*

**frumentor**, āri, ātus sum, *to forage.*

**frumentum**, i, n., *corn, grain.*

**fuga**, ae, f., *flight, rout, running away.*

**fūgio**, ere, fūgi, fūgitum, *to flee.*

**fūmus**, i, m., *smoke.*

**funda**, ae, f., *a sling.*

**fūnis**, is, m., *a rope.*

**fūnebris**, e, adj., *pertaining to a funeral; funeral (adj.).*

**fūnus**, eris, n., *burial, funeral rites.*

**furtum**, i, n., *theft.* [fur.]

**fūsilis**, e, adj. [fundo.] *strictly molten, fluid, liquid; at Bk. v, 43. fusilis argilla, softened clay.*

## G.

**Gallīcus**, a, um, adj., *Gaulish, Gallic.*

**gallīna**, ae, f., *a hen.* [gallus.]

**gēner**, eri, m., *a son-in-law.*

**gens**, tis, f., *a clan, nation.*

**gēnus**, eris, n., *a class, sort.*

**gĕro**, ere, gessi, gestum, *to carry on; ger. bellum, to wage war: res gestae, what has happened, events.*

**glādīus**, ii, m., *a sword.*

**glans**, dis, f., *an acorn, an acorn-shaped missile.*

**grātia**, ae, f., *favor; thanks, return, requital.*

**grātūlātiō**, ōis, f., *rejoicing, congratulation.*

**grātus**, a, um, adj., *acceptable, agreeable, pleasing.*

**grāvis**, e, adj., *heavy, severe.*

**grāvītās**, ātis, f., *weight, authority, gravity, importance.* [gravis.]

**grāviter**, -ius, issime, adv., *heavily; deeply, severely: graviter ferre, to be indignant at, take umiss.*

**gubernātor**, ōris, m., *a helmsman. [gubernio.]*

**gusto**, are, avi, atum, *to taste, eat.*

## H.

**hābĕo**, ere, ūi, itum, *to have: to deem, hold, consider: orationem or contionem habĕre, to deliver a speech or harangue.*

**haud**, adv., *not.*

**hērēditas**, ātis, f., *heirship, inheritance.* [heres.]

**hiberna**, orum, n., *winter-quarters.*

**hic**, haec, hōc, demonstr., pron., *this.*

**hiĕmo**, are, avi, atum, *to pass the winter; to winter.* [hiems.]

**hiĕms**, is, f., *winter.*

**hinc**, adv., *hence.*

**hōmo**, inis, comm., *a human being, a man.*

**honestus**, a, um, adj., *distinguished, honorable, noble*. [honor.]

**honor**, ōris, m., *honor, esteem*.

**hōra**, ae, f., *an hour*.

**horridus**, a, um, adj., *rough, uncouth, savage*.

**hortor**, āri, ātus, *to exhort, urge*.

**hospes**, itis, m., *a guest*.

**hospitium**, ii, n., *hospitality*; at V. 27, it means, *hospitable relations*.

**hostis**, is, comm., *an enemy*.

**hūc**, adv., *to this place, hither*; **accedit huc**, *to this is added*.

**hūmānus**, a, um, adj., *refined, civilized*. [homo.]

**hūmilis**, e, adj., *lowly*; *insignificant*. [humus.]

**hūmilitas**, ātis, f., *lowliness, weakness*.

## I.

N.B.—No distinction is made between I and J.

**iācio**, ēre, iēcī, iactum, *to cast, hurl, sling, throw*.

**iactūra**, ae, f. (*a throwing*), *expense, cost*.

**iācūlum**, i, n., *a dart, javelin*. [iacio.]

**iam**, adv., *now, already*.

**ibī**, adv., *in that place, there*. [is.]

**idem**, eādem, idem, pron., *the same*.

**idcirco**, adv., *for that reason*.

**idōnēus**, a, um, adj., *convenient, suitable, adapted*.

**ignis**, is, m., *fire*.

**ignōbilis**, e, adj., *unknown to fame, obscure*.

**ignōro**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to be ignorant of*. [in gnarus.]

**illatus**, v. inlatus.

**ille**, a, ud, pron. dem., *that; he, she, it*.

**illigatus**, v. inligatus.

**illigo**, v. inligo.

**illustris**, v. inlustris.

**imitor**, āri, ātus sum, *to imitate*.

**immānis**, e, adj., *enormous, huge*.

**imminēo**, ēre, no perf. or sup., *to impend, be close at hand*.

**immitto**, ēre, isi, issum, *to send against, cast, hurl, let loose*. [inmitto.]

**immōlo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to offer up, sacrifice*. [in, mola.]

**immortālis**, e, adj., *undying, immortal*. [in, mortalis, mors.]

**immūnitas**, ātis, f., *exemption or freedom from public charges and services*.

**imparatus**, a, um, adj., *unprepared*.

**impēdimentum**, i, n., *a hindrance*; plur., **impedimenta**, orum, *the baggage (train) of an army*. [impedio.]

**impēdio**, ire, ivi or ii, itum, *to entangle, hamper, hinder*. [in, pes.]

**impēditus**, a, um, part. impedio.

**impeilo**, ēre, pūli, pulsum, *to drive on, urge*; **impel**; **instigate**.

**impērātor**, ōris, m., *a commander* (in chief).

**impērātum**, i, n, *that which is commanded*; *a command, order*. [impero.]

**imperfectus**, a, um, adj., *unfinished, incomplete*.

**impēritus**, a, um, adj., *inexperienced, ignorant*.

**impērīum**, ii, n., *a command, order*; *authority, control, power*.

**impēro**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to command, order*.

**impetro**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to obtain a wish*.

**impētus**, us, m., *assault, attack, onset*.

**impius**, a, um, adj., *without reverence for the gods, one's country, or parents*; *impious, wicked*. [in-pius.]

**implōro**, are, āvi, ātum, *to entreat, appeal to*.

**importo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to convey, import*.

**importatus**, V. importo.

**imprimis**, adv., *especially, particularly*. [in-primus.]

**imprōvisum**, i, n., *that which is unforeseen*: usu. in abl. w. de, adverbially, *de improviso, suddenly, unexpectedly*. [in, pro, video.]

**imprōvisus**, a, um, adj., *unforeseen*.

**imprūdēns**, entis, adj., *unwitting, taken unawares*.

**imprudentia**, ae, f., *ignorance, lack of foresight*.

**impūbes**, ēris, adj., *unmarried, under age*.

**impulsus**, a, um, part., impello.

**impulsus**, ūs, m., *instigation*. [impello.]

in, prep. w. acc., *into, against, to, towards*; w. abl., *in, on, upon, among, within*.

**inānis**, e, adj., *empty, void*.

**incautus**, a, um, adj., *heedless, off one's guard*. [caves.]

**incendium**, *li*, n., a fire, camp-fire.

**incertus**, a, um, adj., doubtful: iter incertum, taken at hazard or at a venture.

**incido**, *ēre*, cidi, cāsum, to happen, occur. [in, cado.]

**incipio**, *ēre*, cēpi, ceptum, to begin.

**in-cōlo**, cōlūi, cultum, to inhabit, dwell.

**in-cōlūmis**, e, adj., safe, unharmed.

**Incommōdē**, adv., disadvantageously, unfortunately.

**incommōdum**, i, n., disadvantage, disaster, misfortune.

**incrēdibilis**, e, adj., not to be believed, marvellous. [in, credo.]

**incurſio**, ōnis, f., invasion, attack. [incurro.]

**inde**, adv., from that place, thence.

**indiciūm**, i, n., secret information.

**in-dico**, *ēre*, xi, ctum, to appoint, proclaim.

**indictus**, v. indico.

**in-dignus**, a, um, adj., unworthy.

**in-ēo**, *ire*, ivi, or *ii*, itum, to go into, enter upon.

**inermis**, e, adj., unarmed. [in, arma.]

**inrāmia**, ae, f., disgrace, dishonour

**infectus**, a, um, adj., unaccomplished. [facio.]

**infērior**, us, comp. adj., lower. [inferus, infra.]

**infēro**, -ferre, intūli, inlatum or illatum, to bring on or against: bellum to make, to wage, carry on against: vulnus, to inflict: in ignem, to throw (anything) into.

**infestus**, a, um, adj., hostile.

**in-ficio**, *ēre*, fēci, factum, to dye, stain.

**infinītus**, a, um, adj., endless, unlimited. [in, finis.]

**in-firmus**, a, um, adj., weak.

**inflecto**, *ēre*, flexi, flexum, to bend.

**influo**, *ēre*, fluxi, fluxum, to flow into.

**infrā**, prep. w. acc., below, under.

**ingrēdior**, gressus, to advance, enter on.

**inimicitia**, ae, f., enmity, hostility.

**inimicus**, a, um, adj., unfriendly; subst., inimicus, i, m., an enemy, foe. [in, amicus.]

**iniquus**, a, um, adj., not level; locus, disadvantageous, unfavourable. [in, aequus.]

**inīitum**, *ii*, n., a beginning. [in, eo.]

**inītus**, a, um, part. ineo.

**iniūria**, ae, f., injury, wrong, oppression. [in-ius.]

**in-iussu**, m., (only in abl.) without the command.

**inlātus**, (ill-), a, um, part. infero.

**inligātus**, (ill-), a, um, part. inligo.

**in-ligo**, (ill-), *āre*, avi, atum, 1. v. a., to bind on, tie on.

**inlustris**, (ill-), e, adj., distinguished, high (of social rank). [in, lustro.]

**in-nōcens**, ntis, adj., harmless, guiltless, innocent.

**impētro**, v. impetro.

**inōpia**, ae, f., want, lack, poverty.

**inquit**, v. defect., says he.

**in-rumpo**, (irr-), *ēre*, rūpi, ruptum, to break, burst, or rush in, or into.

**inſciens**, entis, adj., not knowing, ignorant.

**inſēquor**, i, quātus or cūtus, to follow up, pursue.

**inſīdiae**, ārum, f., plur., an ambuscade, ambush. [inſideo.]

**inſīdior**, āri, ātus sum, to lay an ambush.

**inſisto**, *ēre*, stlti nō sup., with in. and acc., to devote oneself to; press forward.

**instans**, pres. part. of insto, pressing, imminent.

**instigo**, *āre*, āvi, ātum, to urge on, incite.

**institūo**, *ēre*, ūi, ūtum, to set up, build: to fabricate, fashion, make: sermonem, to arrange, keep up.

**institūtum**, i, n., mode or manner of life, custom, habits.

**in-sto**, stāre, stlti, stātum, to press forward.

**instructus**. See instruo.

**inſtrūmentum**, i, n., furniture. [in-struo.]

**instrūo**, *ēre*, struxi, structum, to draw up in array, fit out, equip.

**insuētus**, a, um, adj., unaccustomed.

**insūla**, ae, f., an island.

**intēger**, gra, grum, adj., untouched, whole, new.

**intellēgo**, *ēre*, exi, ectum, to understand, perceive: to be quite aware.

**inter**, prep. w. acc., between, among, during.

**inter-cēdo**, *ēre*, cessi, cessum, to come between, intervene; to interfere, occur, arise.

**inter-cipio**, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, *to catch or seize on the way, to intercept.* [inter, capio.]

**inter-dico**, ēre, xi, ctum, *to forbid, prohibit, interdict.*

**intērēā**, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

**intēr-ēo**, ire, fi, Itum, *to die, perish.*

**inter-ficio**, ēre, fēci, fectum, *to kill, slay.*

**intērim**, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.* [inter, im (old acc. of is.)]

**intērior**, ōris, adj., comp. from intra, *inner, interior.*

**intērītus**, ūs, m., *destruction, death* [interio.]

**intermitto**, ēre, mīsi, missum, *to put or send between; to leave off, to allow to pass or elapse, to pause, to stop.*

**inter-pōno**, ēre, pōsui, pōsitum, *to put or set between: fidem, to pledge one's word.*

**inter-pres**, ētis, comm., *an interpreter.*

**interprētor**, āri, ātus, sum, I, v. dep., *to explain, expound.*

**inter-sum**, esse, fūi, *to be among, to, take part in; also as impersonal verb, interest, to be of importance, to concern.*

**intervallum**, i, n., *interval.* [inter, vallum.]

**intervēnio**, ire, vēni, ventum, *to come up, arrive.*

**intrā**, prep. w. acc., *within.*

**intrō-ēo**, ire, ivi or ii, itum, *to go into, to enter.*

**intrōītus**, ūs, m., *entrance.* [intro, eo.]

**introrsus**, adv., *towards the interior; inwards.* [intro, versus.]

**intrō-mitto**, ēre, mīsi, missum, *to send or let in.*

**intrō-rumpo**, ēre, rūpi, ruptum, *to break in, enter by force.*

**intūli**, v. infero.

**intus**, adv., *on the inside, within.*

**invēnio**, ire, vēni, ventum, *to discover, find.*

**inventor**, ōris, m., *an author, discoverer.*

**in-vētērasco**, rascere, rāvi, incep., *to grow old, to become established or fixed.*

**invitātus**, a, um, part. invito.

**invito**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to invite, allure.*

**ipse**, a, um, pron. demonstr., *self;*

*himself, herself, itself; for emphasis, very, just.*

**irācundiā**, ae, f., *passion, anger.*

**is**, ēā, id, pron. demonstr., *that; he, she, it.*

**ita**, adv., *in this manner, so, thus.*

**itāque**, conj., *and so, accordingly, therefore.*

**item**, adv., *also, likewise.*

**iter**, Itinēris, n., *journey, march; road, path, way.* [eo, sup. stem it-.]

**iūbēo**, ēre, iussi, iussum, *to bid, command, order.*

**iūdicium**, ii, n., *judgment, decision, opinion.* [iudex.]

**iūdico**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to decide, judge* [iudex.]

**iumentum**, i, n., *baggage animal, beast of burden.* [iugum.]

**iūro**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to swear.*

**iūs**, iūris, n., *right (i. e., legal right, what one is entitled to); authority.*

**iūs-iurandum**, iūrisiurandi, n., *an oath.* [iūs-iuro.]

**iussus**, a, um, part. iubeo.

**iustitiā**, ae, f., *justice.*

**iustus**, a, um, adj., *complete, regular, due.*

**iūventūs**, ūtis, f., *collective noun, the youth, the young persons of a community.*

**iūvo**, āre, iūvi, iūtum, *to help.*

## L.

**lābor**, lābi, lapsus, *to slip, tumble down; hence, to slip or fall away from a thing, to be disappointed.*

**lābor**, ōris, m., *labor, toil.*

**lābōro**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to labor, to be in difficulties, to be hard pressed.*

**labrum**, i, n., *a lip; rim, brim.*

**lac**, lactis, n., *milk.*

**lācesso**, ēre, essivi, essitum, *to attack, provoke.*

**laedo**, ēre, laesi, laesum, *hurt, violate.*

**laetatiō**, ōnis, f., *exultation, rejoicing.* [laetor.]

**laetitia**, ae, f., *joyfulness, rejoicing.*

**languor**, ōris, m., *feebleness, weariness.* [languo.]

**lāpis**, idis, m., *a stone.*

**lapsus**, a, um, part. labor.

**largior**, iri, itus, *to bestow, impart, yield.* [largus.]

lātissime, sup. adv. [latus.]  
 lātītūdo, inis, f., *breadth, width.* [lātus.]  
 lātrōcīnīum, īi, n., *freebooting, robbery, highway-robbery*: in plur., *freebooting expeditions, forays.* [latrocinor, latro.]  
 lātus, ēris, n., *a side.*  
 lātus, a, um, adj., *wide, broad.*  
 laus, laudis, f., *praise, credit.*  
 lēgātio, ōnis, f., *an embassy.* [lēgo, to send with a commission, to depute.]  
 lēgātus, i, m., *a lieutenant-general.* [lēgo.]  
 lēgio, ōnis, f., *a legion.* [lēgo, to choose.]  
 lēgionārius, a, um, adj., *legionary (soldier).*  
 lēnis, e, adj., *gentle, slack.*  
 lēnīus, adv., comp. of lenīter, *more feebly.*  
 lēpus, ōris, m., *a hare.*  
 lēvis, e, adj., *light (i.e. not heavy)*; hence, *light-minded, frivolous.*  
 lēvitas, ātis, f., *lightness.* [lēvis.]  
 lēvo, āre, āvi, ātum, to *lighten, ease, relieve.*  
 lex, legis, f., *a law.*  
 libenter, adv., *freely, willingly, gladly.*  
 libēre, adv., *freely.*  
 libēri, ōrum, m., plur., *children.* [liber, free.]  
 libēro, āre, āvi, ātum, to *make or set free*; to *free, release.* [liber.]  
 libertās, ātis, f., *freedom, liberty.*  
 licet, ēre, licuit, and licitum est, impers., v. it is *lawful*; it is *allowed, permitted.*  
 lignātio, ōnis, f., *felling or getting wood.* [lignum.]  
 lignātor, ōris, m., *a woodcutter, one sent to get wood.*  
 lis, litis, f., *dispute, lawsuit*: litem aestimare, to *settle the matter in dispute.*  
 littērae, ārum, f., plur., *a written communication, a letter* (the sing. means a letter of an alphabet.)  
 lōcus, i, m., *place, position, region*; *chance, opportunity.*  
 longē, -ius, -issime, adv., *far.* [longus.]  
 longinquus, a, um, adj., *distant*; *long, prolonged.* [longus.]  
 longitūdo, inis, f., *length.* [longus.]  
 longus, a, um, adj., *long.*

lōquor, loqui, loquūtus, or locūtus sum, to *speak, talk, say.*

lōrica, ae, f. (*a cuirass made of leather thongs*: hence) *a breastwork, mantlet, parapeet.* [lorum, a thong.]

Lūna, ae, f., *the moon, the moon-goddess.*

lux, lūcis, f., *light*: primā luce, *at day break.*

## M.

māgis, adv., *more.*

māgistrātus, ūs, m., *a magistrate.*

magnificus, a, um, adj., *grand, splendid, magnificent.* [magnus, facio.]

magnitūdo, inis, f., *greatness*; *great amount*: venti, *force, violence.* [magnus.]

magnus, a, um, adj., (comp. maior, us; sup. maximus, a, um), *great*: itinera, *forced marches.*

māiōres, um, m, (v. magnus), plur. subst., *ancestors, forefathers.*

mālēficiūm, i, n, *an evil deed, crime, mischief, hurt.*

malus, a, um, adj., *bad, evil.*

mando, āre, āvi, ātum, to *commit* (to any one's charge), to *consign, entrust*: litteris, to *commit to writing.*

māne, adv., *in the morning, early.*

mānēo, ēre, mansi, mansum, to *bide, to stay, remain.*

manipūlus, i, m., *a maniple, company of soldiers.* See Introduction.

mansuēfācio, ēre, fēcī, factum, to *tame.* [mansuetus (part. of mansuesco = manus, suesco, to accustom to be handled) facio.]

mānus, ūs, f., *a hand, a band, body, force* (of soldiers).

maris, v. mas.

māritīmus (also maritīmus), a, um, adj., *maritime, of the sea.*

mās, mārīs, adj., *male, of the male sex*; subst., *a male* (opp. femina).

mātēria, ae, f., *timber.*

mātūrē, adv., *early, soon.*

mātūresco, ēre, rui, no sup., to *grow ripe.*

maximē, adv., *most of all, chiefly, especially.* [maximus, magnus.]

mēdēor, ēri, to *cure, heal, remedy.*

mēdiōcris, e, adj., *middling, moderate.* [medius.]

mediōcritēr, adv., *moderately.*

mēditerrāneus, a, um, adj., *inland.*

**mēdius**, a, um, adj., *mid, middle*.  
**mēlior**, ius, adj., *better*. [comp. of bonus.]

**membrum**, i. n., *a limb, member of the body*.

**memōriā**, ae, f., *memory, recollection*.

**mens**, mentis, f., *the mind*.

**mensis**, is, m., *a month*.

**mensūra**, ae, f., *measure, extent*. [metior.]

**mentio**, ōnis, f., *mention*.

**mercātōr**, ōris, m., *trader, merchant*.

**mercātūra**, ae, f., *commerce, trade*. [mercōr, merx.]

**mēridiānus**, a, um, adj., *mid-day*.

**mēritum**, i, n., *good deed, service (to any one)*. [mereo.]

**mētus**, ūs, m., *fear*.

**mīle** or **mille**, card. num. adj. (plur., as subst., *milia* or *millia*), *a thousand*.

**mīles**, Itis, m., *a soldier*.

**militāris**, e, adj., *belonging to a soldier or soldiering; gloria rei militaris, military renown*. [mīles.]

**militia**, ae, f., *military service*. [mīles.]

**mīnimē**, superl. adv., *least*.

**mīnimus**, a, um, adj., *superl. of parvus, least*.

**mīnor**, us, adj., *less*. [comp. of parvus.]

**mīnūo**, ēre, ūi, ūtum, *to make smaller, lessen, diminish*.

**mīnus**, adv., *less, the less*. [minor.]

**mīror**, ari, ātus, *to wonder, wonder at*.

**mīser**, ēra, ērum, adj., *wretched, miserable*.

**missus**, a, um, pf. part. mitto.

**missus**, ūs, m., *a sending*. [mitto.]

**mitto**, ēre, mīsi, missum, *to send*.

**mōdō**, adv., *but, merely, only*. [originally abl. of modus=*a limit or measure*.]

**mōdus**, i, m., *a measure; a way, manner*.

**mollis**, e, adj., *gentle, gently sloping*.

**mōnēo**, ēre, ūi, ūtum, *to advise, caution, warn, instruct*.

**mōra**, ae, f., *delay*.

**morbus**, i, m., *a disease*.

**mōrōr**, ari, ātus, *to delay, tarry, remain, stay; to hinder, hamper*. [mora.]

**mors**, tis, f., *death*.

**mortuus**, a, um, pf. part., *dead*. [morior.]

**mos**, mōris, m., *custom, fashion, manner, usage*.

**mōtus**, us, m., *motion, movement*: as political term, *commotion, disturbance*. [moveo.]

**mōvēo**, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *to move; castra movēre, to break up*.

**mulier**, ēris, f., *a woman*.

**multitudo**, Inis, f., *a crowd, a large number of people; the multitude, i. e., the people in general, the masses or populace*. [multus.]

**multō**, adv., *much, by far*: used with comparatives. [multus.]

**multum**, adv., *much, greatly, considerably*. [multus.]

**multus**, a, um, adj., *much; in plur., many*.

**mundus**, i, m., *the world, the universe*. [mundus, *clean, neat*.]

**mūnō**, ire, iui, or li, itum, *to fortify; guard*.

**mūnitio**, ōnis, f., *a fortifying, fortification*. [munio.]

**mūnitus**, a, um, part. munio, *fortified, as adj.: munitissima castra, very strongly protected*. [moenia.]

**mūnus**, ēris, n., *a duty*.

**mūrālis**, e, adj., *belonging to a wall*. [murus.]

**mūrus**, i, m., *a wall*.

**mūtīlus**, a, um, adj., *maimed, wanting*.

## N.

**nactus**, a, um, part. nanciscor.

**nam**, conj., *for*.

**namque**, conj., *for*.

**nanciscor**, i, nactus, or nactus, *to obtain, get*.

**nascor**, nasci, nātus, *to be born, to arise, to be produced*.

**nātālis**, e, adj., *belonging to birth, birth-*. [nascor.]

**nātiō**, ōnis, f., *a race of people, a nation*. [nascor.]

**nātīvus**, a, um, adj., *natural*.

**nātūra**, ae, f., *nature*. [nascor.]

**nātus**, a, um, part. nascor.

**nauta**, ae, m., *a sailor*. [navis.]

**nāvālis**, e, adj., *naval*. [navis.]

**nāvīgātiō**, Iōnis, f., *a voyage, sailing*. [navis.]

**nāvīgīum**, i, n., *vessel, craft*. [navia.]

**nāvīgō**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to sail, make a voyage.* [navis.]

**nāvis**, is, f., *a ship.*

**nē**, adv. and conj., *not, that not, lest: ne..quidem, not even.*

**-nē**, an enclitic particle, interrog.; *ne..an, whether..or.*

**necessário**, adv., *perforce, of necessity.* [necesse.]

**nēcesse**, neut. adj., *unavoidable.*

**necessitas**, ātis, f., *unavoidableness, necessity (in the sense of compulsion).*

**nēco**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to kill, put to death.*

**neglēgo**, ēre, exi, ctum, *to disregard, make light of.* [nec, lēgo=*not to gather up.*]

**nēgo**, āre, āvi, ātum, and a., *to say no, to deny, to refuse.* [ne, aio.]

**nēgōtium**, ii, n., *a business, matter.* [nec, otium.]

**nēmo**, acc. nēmīnem, (nullius and nullo in best Lat., used for gen. and abl.), *no man, no one.* [ne, homo.]

**nēquē**, or **nēc**, conj., *and not, nor; neque..neque, neither..nor.*

**nervus**, i, m., *a sinew.*

**neu** or **nē-ve**, conj., *and not, nor.*

**nex**, nēcis, f. (violent) *death.*

**nīhil**, n. indecl., *nothing.* [ne, hilum=*not a bit.*]

**nīhilo**, abl. of nihilum, n., *by nothing; esp. as adv., nihilo minus, none the less.*

**nī-sī**, conj., *unless; except, save only.*

**nītor**, i, nīsus and nīxus, *to strive, endeavor.*

**nōbilis**, e, adj., *of high birth, noble; plur. nobiles, the nobles*

**nōbilitās**, ātis, f., *nobility.* [nobilis.]

**nōcens**, pres. part. of nocco, as adj., *guilty, as subs., an evil doer.*

**nōcēo**, ēre, ūi, itum, *to do hurt or harm to, injure.*

**noctu**, adv., *at night, by night.* [nox.]

**nocturnus**, a, um, adj., *belonging to night, (going on) by night.* [nox.]

**nōdus**, i, m., (*a knot; hence*) *a joint of an animal's body.*

**nōlo**, nolle, nōlūi, *to wish..not, to be unwilling.* [ne, volo.]

**nōmen**, Inis, n., *a name.*

**nōminātim**, adv., *by name.* [nomen.]

**nōn**, adv., *not.*

**non-dum**, adv., *not yet.*

**non-nullus**, a, um (usually plur.), adj., *some, several.*

**non-nunquam**, adv., *sometimes (not never).*

**nōnus**, a, um, num, adj., ord., *the ninth.* [=novenus, from novem.]

**nōs**, nostrum, plur. of ego.

**nosco**, ēre, nōvi, nōtum, *to get, to know a thing; in perf. tenses, to know.*

**noster**, stra, strum, pron. adj. poss., *our, our own; plur. nostri, ōrum, m., our men (i.e., Romans).* [nos.]

**nōtītia**, ae, f., *knowledge.* [nōtus.]

**nōtus**, a, um, part., *known.* [nosco.]

**nōvem**, card. num. adj., *nine.*

**nōvi**, see nosco.

**nōvus**, a, um, adj., *new; sup. nōvis-simus, a, um, the last, latest, hindermost.*

**nox**, noctis, f., *night.*

**noxa**, ae, f., *an injurious act; a crime, guilt.* [noceo.]

**nūdo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to make naked or bare, to uncover; of military formation or position, to leave uncovered or exposed to the enemy.* [nudus.]

**nūdus**, a, um, adj., *bare, naked, uncovered.*

**nullus**, a, um, adj., (gen. nullius, dat. nulli), *no, none.* [ne, ullus.]

**nūmen**, Inis, n., *the divine will, will or power (of the gods).*

**nūmērus**, i, m., *a number; estimation, position: aliquo esse numero, to be of any account.*

**numquam**. See nunquam.

**nunc**, adv., *now.*

**nunquam**, adv., *never.* [ne, nunquam.]

**nuntio**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to announce.*

**nuntius**, ii, m., *a messenger, message.*

**nūtus**, ūs, m., *a nod, beckoning, making signs.*

## O.

**ōb**, prep. w. acc., *on account of: ob eam causam, for that reason, consequently, therefore.*

**ōb-ēo**, Ire, Ivi or Ii, Itum, irreg., *to go to.*

**ob-fero**, (off) ob-ferre, ob-tali, oblātum, *to present, offer.*

**ōb-īcio**, ēre, Ieci, iectum, *to put in the way, hinder, to face.*

**oblatus**, v. ob-fero.

**ob-servo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to pay attention to, heed, observe, keep.*

**obses**, Idis, m. or f., a *hostage*. [ob-sideo.]

**obsessio**, ōnis, f., a *siege*; *blockade*.

**ob-sīdēo**, ēre, sēdi, sessum, *sit down at or before*; *to beset, besiege*. [ob, sedeo.]

**obsidio**, ōnis, f.; a *siege, blockade*. [ob, sideo.]

**obstināte**, adv., *stubbornly*.

**obstrūo**, ēre, xi, ctum, *to build or wall up, barricade*.

**ob-tinēo**, ēre, tīnui, tentum, *to have, hold, possess*. [ob, teneo.]

**occāsio**, ōnis, f., an *opportunity*. [ob, cado.]

**occāsus**, ūs, m., *setting*, (occasus solis, *setting of the Sun*). [ob, cado.]

**occidens**, entis, m., *the west*. [occido.]

**occido**, ēre, cidi, cisum, *to kill, slay*. [ob, caedo.]

**occultatio**, ōnis, f., *concealment*.

**occulto**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to conceal, hide, secrete*. [occulto.]

**occultus**, a, um, part. oculo; as adj., *concealed, hidden, secret*.

**occūpo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to take possession of, seize upon, engage in*. [ob, capio.]

**oc-curro**, ēre, curri, cursum, *to run up to, come up to, meet*.

**octingenti**, ae, a, num, adj., *eight hundred*. [octo centum.]

**octo**, card. num., adj., *eight*.

**oculus**, i, m., *eye*.

**odium**, i, n., *hatred*.

**offendo**, ere, fendi, fensum, *to injure*.

**officium**, ii, n., *duty, service, allegiance*.

**omitto**, ēre, misi, missum, *to neglect, disregard, drop, omit*.

**omnino**, adv., *altogether, at all*. [omnis.]

**omnis**, e, adj., *all, every*.

**ōnēro**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to load, burden, freight*. [onus.]

**ōpera**, ae, f., *agency, means; aid, services*. [opus.]

**ōpinio**, ōnis, f., *belief, expectation*. [opinor.]

**ōpis**, (gen.; nom. not found), *power; aid, assistance*; opes plur. *resources*.

**oppidum**, i, n., *town*.

**oppōno**, ēre, pōstui, pōsitum, *to confront, place opposite*.

**opportunitas**, ātis, f., *opportunity, fitness*.

**opportūnus**, a, um, adj., *convenient, suitable*. [ob, portus=*at or before the harbour*.]

**opprimo**, ēre, pressi, pressum, *to crush, overwhelm, oppress; to fall upon, take by surprise*. [ob, premo.]

**oppugnatio**, ōnis, f., an *attack, assault*. [oppugno.]

**oppugno**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to attack, assault, storm*.

**ōpus**, ēris, n., *work; work of fortification, "defences"; need, necessity; hence, as predicate with nom., needful, requisite*.

**ōratio**, ōnis, f., a *speech, harangue*. [ora.]

**orbis**, is, m., a *circle, ring*.

**ordo**, inis, m., a *line, rank of soldiers*; used by Caesar=*centuria, century, company*.

**ōriens**, entis, m., *the east*. [orior.]

**ōrior**, iri, ortus, *to arise*.

**ōro**, are, āvi, ātum, *to beg, beseech, entreat, implore*.

**ōs**, ōris, n., *the mouth*.

**ostendo**, ēre, di, sum and tum, *to show; se, make their appearance*.

**ostento**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to display, show off, boast of, vaunt*. [ostendo.]

## P.

**pābūlor**, ari, ātus sum, *to forage*. [pabulum.]

**pābūlātor**, ōris, m., a *forager*. [pabulor.]

**pācātus**, a, um, part. (of paco, *to make peaceful* [pax]). as adj., *peaceful*.

**pāco**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to quiet, reduce to state of peace*.

**paene**, adv., *almost, nearly*.

**pāgus**, i, m, a *canton, district, village* (hence our word *pagan*).

**pālam**, adv., *openly, undisguisedly*.

**palma**, ae, f., *the palm of the hand, the blade of an oar*.

**pālūs**, ūdis, f., a *marsh, morass, swamp*.

**pār**, pāris, adj., *equal*.

**parco**, ēre, pēperci, parsum, *to spare, have mercy on*.

**pārens**, entis, m. and f., a *p. cent*. [pario.]

**pārēo**, ēre, ūi, pārītum, *to obey, submit to*.

**pārīo**, ēre, pēpōri, partum, *to bring forth (hence), to produce, bring about, secure*.

pāro, āre, āvi, ātum, to get or make ready, prepare.

pars, partis, f., a part, portion: in utramque partem, on both sides, either way, upon either view of the case.

partim, adv., in part, partly. [pars.]

partus, a, um, part. pario.

parvulus, a, um, adj., dim., little, petty, trifling; of age, little, young. [parvus.]

passus, ūs, m., a step, pace; as a measure of length, about five of our feet, i.e., a double pace: mille passuum, a (Roman) mile=about 1,618 yards; V. note, B. v., chap. 2.

pātēo, ēre, ūi, to lie open; to stretch, extend.

pāter, tris, m., a father.

pāterfāmilīae (or familiās), m., the master of a household, head of a family.

pātientia, ae, f., endurance. [patior.]

pātor, i., passus, to suffer, allow.

paucitas, ātis, f., fewness, scarcity. [paucus.]

paucus, a, um, adj., few, little (very rare in sing.); as subst., pauci, ōrum, m., few, a few.

paulatim, adv., little by little, by degrees, gradually. [paulum.]

paulisper, adv., for a little while. [paulum.]

paulo, adv. (with comparatives), by a little, a little, somewhat.

paulum, adv., a little, somewhat.

pax, pācis, f., peace. [The root of the word is seen in paciscor, pango, whence our pact, compact.]

pēcūnia, ae, f., money. [pecus, because, in early times, wealth was cattle.]

pēcus, ōris, n., a flock, herd, cattle.

pedes, peditis, m., foot-soldier.

peditātus, us, m., foot-soldiers, infantry. [pedes, pes.]

pellis, is, f., a hide, skin.

pendo, ēre, pēpendi, pensum, to weigh out; (in early times payments were made by weighing out metal; hence) to pay.

per, prep. w. acc., through; showing the agent or means, by, by means of.

pēr-āgo, ēre, ēgi, actum, to go through with, complete, finish.

perceptus, v. percipio.

percipio, ēre, cepi, ceptum, to take note of, receive, learn.

percontātiō, ōnis, f., question, inquiry. [percontor.]

percussus, a, um., part., percutio.

per-cūtio, ēre, cussi, cussum, to pierce or strike through. [quatio.]

per-disco, ēre, didici, to learn thoroughly, get off by heart.

per-dūco, ēre, xi, ctum, to lead through; to prolong; to bring or win (any one) over to one's side; carry over.

pērendinus, a, um, adj., after to-morrow. [perendie.]

pērēo, ire, ivi or ii, Itum, to perish.

pēr-exigūus, a, um., adj., very small.

per-fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, to bear or carry through; to bring; to bear, put up with, submit to; in pass., of letters, news, etc., to arrive, come to hand.

per-ficio, ēre, feci, fectum, to accomplish, complete, finish. [per-facio.]

perfūga, ae, m., deserter, fugitive.

periclitor, ari, atus sum, to endanger.

pēricūlum, i, n., danger.

perlātus, a, um, part. perfero.

perlectus, a, um, part. perlego.

per-lēgo, ēre, lēgi, lectum, to read through.

perlūo, ēre, lūi, lūtum, to wash; in pass., to bathe (one self).

per-mānēo, ēre, mansi, mansum, to abide, continue, remain.

per-mitto, mittere, misi, missum, entrust, surrender, suffer, permit.

permōtus, a, um, part. permoveo.

per-mōvēo, movēre, mōvi, mōtum, to move thoroughly; of the mind, to move deeply, influence, prevail on.

perpauci, ae, a, adj., very few.

per-pētūus, a, um, adj., continuing throughout, unbroken: in perpetuum, for all time, for ever. [per-peto.]

per-rumpo, ēre, rūpi, ruptum, to break through.

per-scribo, ēre, psi, ptum, to write in full, write a full account of.

per-sēquor, sēqui, sēcūtus, to follow up, pursue.

persēvēro, āre, āvi, ātum, to abide steadfastly, persist.

perspicio, ēre, spexi, spectrum, to look through; to see clearly, perceive.

per-suādēo, ēre, si, sum, to persuade, prevail upon.

perterreo, ēre, ti, Itum, to terrify; thoroughly frighten.

per-terrītus, a, um, part. of perterreo, thoroughly frightened.

**pertinácia**, ae, f., *obstinacy*. [pertinax, tenax, teneo.]

**per-tinéo**, ére, ūi, to stretch out, reach, extend; to belong to, concern, affect. [teneo.]

**per-turbo**, āre, āvi, ātum, to throw into confusion; to discompose, confound.

**per-vēnio**, Ire, vēni, ventum, to come to, arrive at.

**pēs**, pēdis, m., a foot.

**pēto**, Ivi, and li, Itum, to seek; ask.

**pīetas**, ātis, f., dutiful conduct towards the gods, one's parents, country, etc. [pius.]

**pīlum**, l, n., a javelin.

**pīlus**, i, m., usually with primus, the division of the army occupied by the triarii; primi pili centurio, a centurion of the triarii.

**pinna**, ae, f., a battlement.

**plācīde**, adv., calmly.

**plāco**, are, avi, atum, to reconcile, appease.

**plānē**, adv., clearly.

**plebs**, bis, and plēbes, ēi, f., the common people, "the masses" (opp. to the nobles).

**plērūmque**, adv., for the most part, mostly.

**plērūsq̄ue**, rāque, rumque, adj., (rare in sing.); plerique, plur., very many, the most part, the majority.

**plumbum**, i, m., lead; **plumbum album**, tin.

**plūrimūm**, adv., most, very much; ei debere, to be very greatly indebted to, under very great obligations to

**plūs**, plūris (in plur., plūres, plūra,) more, and plūrimus, a, um, most, adj., comp. and sup. of multus. (N. B., the sing. plus is generally a neut. subst. or an adv.)

**pōcūlum**, i, n., a cup, a drinking-vessel.

**poena**, ae, f., punishment, penalty.

**pollicēor**, ēri, Itus, to promise.

**pollicitātiō**, ōnis, f., a promise.

**pondus**, ōris, n., a weight. [pendo.]

**pōno**, ére, pōnūi, pōsitum, to put, to place; in pass., to rest on, depend on anything.

**pons**, ntis, m., a bridge.

**pōpūlor**, āri, ātus, to lay waste, ravage. [pōpūlus.]

**pōpūlus**, i, m., a people, the people; a district, with reference to its inhabi-

tants; a community; **Populus Romanus**, the Roman people, never plur.

**porro**, adv., furthermore, now.

**porta**, ae, f., a gate.

**porto**, āre, āvi, ātum, to bear or carry along.

**portus**, ūs, m., harbor, port.

**positus**, v. pono.

**possessio**, ōnis, f., a possession, a property.

**possum**, posse, pōtūi, to be able; I (thou, etc.) can. [potis, sum.]

**post**, prep. w. acc. and adv., after.

**post-pōno**, ére, pōnūi, pōsitum, to postpone, put off.

**postēa**, adv., after this or that, afterwards.

**postēaquam**, adv., after that.

**postērus**, a, um, adj., coming after, following, next. [post.]

**postquam**, conj., after.

**postremō**, adv., at last, finally. [postremus, sup. of posterus.]

**postūlo**, āre, āvi, ātum, to demand.

**pōtens**, tis, part of possum; as adj. powerful.

**pōtentia**, ae, f., power. (See note, vi. 12, [potens.] )

**pōtestas** ātis, f., power; opportunity. [possum.]

**potior**, potiri, potitus sum, to become master of; gain possession of; governs abl.

**potius**, adv., rather.

**praebēo**, ére, ūi, Itum, to show, present.

**praeceptum**, i, n., instruction, command, injunction.

**praeceptus**, a, um, part. praecipio.

**prae-cipio**, ére, cēpi, ceptum, to bid direct, order. [capio.]

**prae-cipūus**, a, um, adj., special. [praecipio.]

**praeclūdo**, ére, cludi, clusum, to hinder, stop, close.

**prae-clūsus**. See praecludo.

**prae-co**, ōnis, m., a crier, herald.

**praeda**, ae, f., booty.

**prae-dico**, āre, āvi, ātum, to proclaim, assert, taunt.

**prae-fēro**, ferre, tūli, lātum, to carry in front, to place a person or thing before another in esteem or reputation, to prefer.

**prae-ficio**, ficere, fēci, factum, to place in front or at the head of, to appoint to the command of. [prae, facio.]

prae-missus, a, um, part. of prae-mitto, sent on beforehand.

praemitto, ēre, misi, missum, to send before, send in advance.

praemium, ii, n., a reward. [prae, emo.]

prae-occupo, āre, āvi, ātum, to occupy beforehand.

prae-pāro, āre, āvi, ātum, to prepare.

praepōno, ponēre, posui, positum, to set anyone in command over.

prae-ruptus, a, um, adj., steep, precipitous.

praesens, tis, adj., that is before one, at hand, present. [prae, sum.]

praesentia, ae, f., presence, the present time: in praesentia, at hand, on the spot.

prae-sentio, sentire, sensi, sensum, to perceive beforehand.

praesertim, adv., especially.

praesidium, ii, n., protection, help. [prae, sedeo.]

praesto, adv., at hand: praesto esse, to present oneself.

praesto, āre, stiti, stitum and statum, to discharge, fulfil. pr. fidem, keep one's word.

prae-sum, esse, fāi, to be at the head of, in command of.

praeter, prep. w. acc., except.

praetērēā, adv., besides.

prae-ūro, ēre, ussi, ustum, to burn at the point.

praeustus, a, um, part. praeuro.

precem, preci, prece, defective noun; prayer, entreaty.

prēmo, ēre, pressi, pressum, to press, press upon, oppress.

pridīē, adv., on the day before.

primo, adv., in the first place.

primum, adv., in the first place; quam primum, as soon as possible.

primus, a, um, adj. sup., the first, first.

princeps, ipis, adj., first, chief; as subst., comin., a chief, chieftain. [primus, capio.]

principātus, ūs, m., the first place, supremacy, chieftainship. [princeps.]

pristinus, a, um, adj., former, old, old-fashioned.

prius, foll. by quam, and, as one word, priusquam, adv. comp., sooner than, before, before that.

privātim, adv., as an individual, privately.

privātus, a, um, part. privo, to deprive: as adj., belonging to an individual, private.

prō, prep. w. abl., before, in front of; on account of, in consideration of.

prōbo, āre, āvi, ātum, to prove, demonstrate; to approve.

prō-cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, to go forth, to advance.

prōcūl, adv., in the distance, from afar. [procello, to drive away.]

prō-cumbo, ēre, cūbui, cūbitum, to sink down to the ground.

prō-cūro, āre āvi, ātum, to take care of, look after.

prō-curro, ēre, cūcurri and curri, cursum, to run forth, rush forward.

prōdēo, īre, ii, itum, to come or go forth. [pro, eo.]

prōdītor, ōris, m., a betrayer, traitor. [prodo.]

prōdītus, a, um, part. prodo.

prō-do, ēre, didi, ditum, to give forth; to hand down (to memory), transmit, record.

prō-dūco, ēre, xi, ctum, to lead out.

prōductus, a, um, part. produco.

proelior, āri ātus, to engage, fight a battle.

proelium, ii, n., a battle, combat.

prōfectio, ōnis, f., a going away, setting out. [proficiscor.]

prōfectus, a, um, part. proficiscor.

prōficiscor, proficisci prōfectus, to set out, start, depart.

prōfītēor, ēri, fessus, to declare publicly avow; to offer freely, promise. [profateor.]

prō-fūgiō, ēre, fugi, to flee, decamp.

prō-gnātus, a, um, part. [gnatus = natus, nascor], born, sprung, descended (from some one).

prō-grēdiōr, i, gressus, to go forward, advance. [gradior.]

prō-hībēo, ēre, hii, itum, to keep back, hinder, prevent; to defend, protect. [habeo.]

prō-iciō, ēre, icci, lectum, to throw forth, fling away. [pro-icio.]

prōinde, adv., accordingly, therefore; (in like manner).

prōmiscuē, adv. promiscuously, in common.

prō-missus, a, um, pt. part. of pro-mitto; (of hair) long, flowing.

**prō-nuntiō**, āre, āvi, ātum, to announce, proclaim.

**prōpē**, comp. **prōpius**, prep. w. acc. and adv., near, nigh.

**prō-pello**, ēre, pūli, pulsum, to drive before oneself, to drive back.

**prō-pēro**, āre, āvi, ātum, to hasten.

**prōpinquitas**, ātis, f., nearness. [propinquus.]

**prōpinquus**, a, um, adj., near; as subst., **prōpinquus**, i, m., a kinsman, relation.

**prō-pōno**, ēre, pōsui, pōsitum, to put or set forth, to point out, to offer, proffer as a reward.

**prospectus**, ūs, m., view.

**prōprius**, a, um, adj., one's own, special: as subst., **proprium**, ii, n., a peculiar or characteristic mark, a sign.

**propter**, prep. w. acc., by reason of, on account of.

**prō-pugno**, āre, āvi, ātum, to fight.

**prō-pulsō**, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., to drive back, repel. [propello.]

**prō-sēquor**, i, cētus, to pursue, to continue the pursuit.

**prōsum**, **prōdesse**, **prōfui**, to benefit, be of service to.

**prō-tēgo**, ēre, xi, ctum, to cover in front, cover, protect.

**prō-terrēo**, ēre, ūi, itum, to frighten or scare away, to affright.

**prōtinus**, adv., forthwith.

**prōvectus**, see **prōvehō**.

**prōvēhō**, ēre, vexti, vectum, to advance, carry forward.

**prōvēnio**, ire, vēni, ventum, to come forth, to be produced, to grow.

**prō-vidēo**, ēre, vidi, vīsum, (1) to see beforehand, to foresee, (2) provide for.

**prōvinciā**, ae, f., a province.

**prōvisus**, v. **prōvideo**.

**proximē**, adv.

**proximus**, a, um, adj., nearest, next.

**pūbes** and **pūber**, ēris, adj., grown up, adult; as subst., **pūbēres**, um, m., grown up men, men.

**publicē**, adv., on behalf or in the name of the State or people. [publicus.]

**publico**, āre, āvi, ātum, to take and apply to the use of the State or community, to confiscate. [publicus.]

**publicus**, a, um, adj., belonging to the people, State, or community. [for **populicus**, from **populus**.]

**pūērilis**, e, adj., boyish, of boyhood [puer.]

**pugna**, ae, f., a battle, combat, fight.

**pugno**, āre, āvi, ātum, to fight.

**purgo**, āre, āvi, ātum, to clear, exculpate, excuse.

**pūto**, āre, āvi, ātum, to consider, judge, think.

## Q.

**quā**, adv., where, by which way. [abl. f. of qui.]

**quādringenti**, ae, a, card. num. adj., four hundred. [quattuor, centum.]

**quaero**, ēre, quæsivi, quæstum, to seek, ask, enquire.

**quaestio**, ōnis, f., an examination or inquisition by torture. [quaero.]

**quaestor**, ōris, m., a quaestor.

**quaestus**, ūs, m., a gaining, acquiring. [quaero.]

**quam**, adv. and conj.; (1) as; (2) than: with superl. adj. or adv., as as possible.

**quanto**, rel. adv., by as much as, according as, the (e.g. "the more, the merrier"). [quantus.]

**quantus**, a, um, adj., how great, how much; as much as. [quam.]

**quantus-vis**, tāvis, tunvus, adj., as great as you will, ever so great, no matter how great. [vis, fr. volo, vis, vult, "you wish."]

**quārē**, adv., wherefore, why. [quæ, res.]

**quartus**, a, um, ord. num. adj., the fourth.

**quattuor**, card. num. adj., four.

**quērōr**, quēri, questus sum, to complain.

**qui**, quæ, quod, pron. rel. and (used adjectively) interrog., who, which, what, that.

**quicumque**, (or -cunque), quæcumque, quodcumque, pron. rel. whoever, whatever, all that, everything that.

**quid**, (nent. of quis), adv., why?

**quidam**, quaedam, quoddam, pron. indef., a certain, a certain one, one.

**quidem**, adv., indeed.

**quies**, ētis, f., rest, repose.

**quīētus**, a, um, adj., at rest, quiet, peaceful. [quiesco, quies.]

**quīn**, conj., but that, that not [quī, how, ne.]

quānam, quāenam, quodnāni, pron. interrog., *who, which; what, pray?* [In ch. 44, B. v. = *uter.*]

quīndēcim, *fifteen.*

quīngenti, ae, a, *five hundred.* [quinque, centum.]

quīnquāginta, *fifty.*

quis, (quae), quid, (1) pron. interrog., *who? which? what?* (2) pron. indef. after ne, si, nisi, *any one, anything.* ne quis, *in order that no man.*

quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam, pron. indef., *any.*

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or quidquam, pron. indef. *any, any one, anything* (always in a negative connection).

quisque, quaeque, quodque, pron. indef., *each, every.*

quō, adv., *whither.*

quō, conj., *in order that* (used with comparative degree instead of ut).

quō-ad, conj., *till, until.*

quod, conj., *because; that.*

quōn-iam, conj., *since, seeing, that, whereas.* [quom=cum, iam.]

quō-que, conj., *also, too.*

quōque, abl. of quisque, *each.*

quōtānnis, adv., *every year, yearly.*

quōtiens or quōties, adv., *how often, as often as.* [quot.]

quotidiē, adv., *daily; day by day.*

## R.

rādix, icis, f., *a root.*

rāmus, i, m., *a bough, branch.*

rapīna, ae, f., *pillage, plunder.*

rārus, a, um, adj., *few, sparse, few and far between.*

rāsus, a, um, part. of rado, *shaven.*

rātio, ōnis, f., *a reckoning, an account; a transaction, business; a care, consideration, regard for a thing; fashion, system, way.*

ratis, is, f., *a raft.*

rē-cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, *to go back, fall back, retire.*

rēcens, tis, adj., *fresh, recent.*

receptus, ūs, m., *retreat, refuge.*

rēcensus, ūs, m., *a going back, retreat.* [recedo.]

rē-cipio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, *to receive; se, to betake oneself anywhere, to retire, retreat.* [capio.]

rē-cito, āre, āvi, ātum, *to read out (a letter, etc.).*

rē-clino, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bend back, lean back.*

rē-cūpēro, āre, āvi, ātum, *to get back, recover, regain.*

rē-cūso, āre, āvi, ātum, *to object to, refuse.* [causa.]

red-do, ēre, dīdi, dītum, *to give back, restore; to render, grant.*

redditus, see red-do.

rēd-ēo, īi, Itum, ire, *to come back; to be reduced to; to be referred to.*

rēd-īgo, ēre, ēgi, actum, *to bring or reduce to any condition.* [ago.]

reditus, see red-eo.

rē-dūco, ēre, xi, ctum, *to lead back, draw off troops.*

rēfectus. *V. reficio.*

rēfēro, -ferre, rettūli (retuli), relātum, *to carry back; report; refer. gratiam referre, to show gratitude, to repay, requile.*

rēficio, ēre, fēci, fectum, *to refit, repair.*

rē-fūgio, ēre, fūgi, *to flee back.*

rēgio, ōnis, f., *a district, territory.* [rego.]

regno, āre, āvi, ātum, *to be king, to reign.* [regnum.]

regnum, i, n., *kingly authority, sovereignty, chieftainship; a kingdom, the territory of a king or chief.* [rex.]

rēgo, ēre, xi, ctum, *to direct; to control, govern, rule.*

rē-grēdior, i, gressus, *to go back, retreat.*

rēlectus, a, um, part. reicio.

rē-icio, ēre, reiēci, iectum, *to cast back, drive back.* [iacio.]

relātus; a, um, part. refero.

rē-lēgātus, a, um, part. relēgo.

rē-lēgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to send away, remove out of the way.*

relictus, a, um, v. relinquo.

religio, ōnis, f., *reverence for the gods, religion; in plur., superstitious practices; matters of religion, scruples of conscience.*

rē-linquo, ēre, liqui, lictum, *to leave behind, to leave remaining; pass., to remain.*

reliquus, a, um, adj., *that is left, remaining; in plur. as subst. reliqui, ōrum, m., the others, the rest.* [relinquo.]

rēmāneo, ēre, mansi, mansum, *to stay, remain behind.*

rēmīgo, āre, āvi, ātum, *to row.*

rē-missus, a, um, part. of remitto, *slack, less severe.*

**rē-mitto**, ēre, mīsi, missum, *to send back, to slacken, remit, abate.*

**rē-mōvēō**, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *to move back, withdraw.*

**rēmus**, i, m., *an oar.*

**rēnō**, (rhēno). ōnis, m., some take this to mean a *reindeer-skin*; it is at any rate a *fur pelisse* or *jacket*, made from the skin of an animal dressed with the hair on.

**rē-pello**, ēre, reppūli, rēpulsum, *to drive back.*

**rēpente**, adv., *suddenly.*

**rēpentinus**, a, um, adj., *sudden, unlooked-for.*

**rē-pērio**, īre, reppēri, rēpertum, *to find, meet with.* [pario.]

**rēpertus**, a, um, part. reperio.

**rē-pēto**, ēre, īi or īvi, itum, *to ask or apply again for; demand as a right.*

**rē-porto**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to bear back.*

**rē-posco**, ēre, (no perf. or sup.), *to exact, require.*

**re-prēhendo**, ēre, di, sum, *to blame, find fault with.*

**rēpulsus**, a, um, part. repello.

**rēquiro**, ēre, quisīvi or īi, quisitum, *to demand.*

**rēs**, rei, f., *a thing, matter, fact, event, etc.* The exact meaning depends on the context, e.g. *res frumentaria*, *corn supply, provisions.*

**rescīdi**, see rescindo.

**rescindo**, ēre, scīdi, scissum, *to break up.* [scīdo, *to cleave.*]

**rē-servo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to save up, reserve; hail.*

**rē-sisto**, ēre, stīti, *to oppose, withstand.*

**rē-spīcīo**, ēre, spexi, spectrum, *to look back or behind one.*

**rē-spondēō**, ēre, di, sum, *to answer, reply.*

**responsum**, i, n., *an answer.*

**rēspública**, reipublicae, f., *a commonwealth. State; the public weal.*

**rē-stītūō**, ēre, ūi, ūtum, *to set up again; to replace, restore, revive.* [statuo.]

**rē-tīnēō**, ēre, ūi, tentum, *to hold fast, keep, maintain, preserve.*

**rē-vertor**, ī, versus, *to turn back, return, retire.*

**rē-vōcō**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to recall, summon to return, challenge.*

**rex**, rēgis, m., *a ruler of a territory, a king, chieftain.* [rego.]

**rhēda**, ae, f., *carriage, chariot.*

**rīpā**, ae, f., *a bank of a river.*

**rīvus**, i, m., *a small stream of water, a brook.*

**rōgo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to ask, beg, request.*

**rūmor**, ōris, m., *hearsay, unauthenticated report, rumor.*

**rursus**, adv., *back, back again, again.* [contr. fr. revorsus from revertor.]

## S.

**sacrāmentum**, i, n., *oath, military oath, oath of allegiance.*

**sācrificiūm**, īi, n., *a sacrifice.* [sacer, facio.]

**saepe**, adv., *frequently, often.*

**saepenumero**, v. saepe.

**sāgūlum**, i, n., dimin., *a small military cloak.* [sagum.]

**saltus**, ūs, m., (1) *a woodland pasture; (2) a mountain pass.*

**sālus**, ūtis, f., *safety.*

**sancio**, īre, xi, ctum, *to make sacred or inviolable by a religious act; to decree, establish, ordain.*

**sancus**, a, um, part. sancio: as adj., of persons, *sacred, inviolable.*

**sānus**, a, um, adj., *moderate, reasonable.*

**sāpīō**, ēre, īvi or īi, *to have sense or discernment.*

**sarcio**, īre, sarsi, sarsum, *to mend, repair.*

**sātisfācio**, ēre, fēci, factum, *to give satisfaction, satisfy, content; to make excuse, apologize.* [often written separately: satis, facio.]

**sauciū**, a, um, adj., *wounded.*

**scāla**, ae, f., *a ladder, a scaling-ladder.* [for scandla, from scandō, *to climb.*]

**scēlērātus**, a, um, part. scelero: as adj., *bad, wicked, infamous*: in masc., subst., *a miscreant.*

**scēlērō**, āre, no perf., atum, *to pollute with crime.* [scelus.]

**scīdo**, ēre, scīdi, scissum, *to cut, rend: vallum, to pull or tear down.*

**scīō**, īre, īvi, itum, *to know.*

**scribo**, ēre, psi, ptum, *to write.*

**scūtum**, i, n., *a shield.*

**sē, sēsē**, pron. reflex. of both numbers (gen. sui, dat. sibi, acc. and abl. sē or sēsē), *himself, herself, itself, themselves: inter se, with each other.*

**sēcūs**, adv., comp. of *sēcūs*, *otherwise*: *nihilō sēcūs*, *nevertheless*.

**sector**, āri, ātus sum, intensive, *to pursue eagerly*. [sequor.]

**sēcundus**, a, um, adj., (1) *the following or next to the first in time or order, the second*; (2) *favorable*. [sequor.]

**sēd**, conj., *but*.

**sēdēs**, is, f., *a seat, dwelling-place, settlement*. [sedeo.]

**sēgēs**, ētis, f., *corn-field, standing grain, corn in the field, crop*.

**sēmīta**, ae, f., *a path*.

**semper**, adv., *always, ever*.

**sēnātus**, ūs, m., *the council of elders, the Senate*. [senex.]

**sententiā**, ae, f., *a way of thinking, opinion*. [sentio.]

**sentio**, sentire, sensi, sum, *to perceive, notice, observe*.

**septem**, card. num. adj., *seven*.

**septentriō**, ōnis, almost always in the plural, *the seven stars of the Bear, the north*. [literally the seven ploughing oxen, septem triones.]

**septimūs**, a, um, ord. num. adj., *seventh*. [septem.]

**septingenti**, ae, a, num. adj., *seven hundred*. [septem centum.]

**sēquor**, i, sēcūtus, *to follow, attend*.

**sermo**, ōnis, m., *a talking, conversation*. [sero=to join words.]

**sēro**, adv., *too late*. [serus.]

**sēro**, ēre, sēvi, sātum, *to sow*.

**servilis**, e, adj., *belonging to or of a slave*. [servus.]

**servītūs**, ūtis, f., *slavery*. [servus.]

**servo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to keep, lay up, preserve, beset*.

**servus**, i, m., *a slave, serf*.

**sexagintā**, sixty.

**sexcenti**, ae, a, num. adj., *six hundred*. [See centum.]

**sē-vōco**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call apart, take aside*.

**si**, conj., *if*.

**sic**, adv., *so, thus*.

**siccitas**, ātis, f., *dryness (of the weather), drought*. [siccus.]

**sic-ut** (sicut), adv., *as, just as*.

**sic-uti**, (sicuti) = *sicut*.

**sidus**, ēris, n., *a constellation, a group of stars*.

**significātiō**, ōnis, f., *a making of a sign or token; tidings*. [signum, facio.]

**signum**, i, n., *a military standard, ensign*.

**silva**, ae, f., *a wood, forest*.

**silvestris**, e, adj., *wooded, woodland* [silva.]

**sīmīlis**, e, adj., *like, like unto*.

**sīmūl**, adv., *at the same time, at once*.

**sīmūlācrum**, i, n., *an image*. [simulo = to make like, similis.]

**sīmūlātiō**, ōnis, f., *pretence*.

**simul atque**, conj. adv., *as soon as*.

**simultās**, ātis, f., *deceit*.

**sīn**, conj., *if however, but if*.

**sīne**, prep. w. abl., *without*.

**singillātīm**, adv., *one by one, singly*. [singuli.]

**singulāris**, e, adj., *(alone of its kind, hence) singular, remarkable*. [singuli.]

**singulī**, ae, a, distrib. num. adj., *one to each, separate, singly*.

**sīnister**, tra, trum, adj., *left hand, adverse*.

**sīnistrorsus**, adv., *towards the left side, to the left*.

**sītus**, us, m., *position*. [sino.]

**sīve** (seu), conj. *whether (= either if)*, sive (seu)...sive (seu), *whether...or*.

**sociētās**, ātis, f., *alliance, league*.

**sōciūs**, īi, m., *an ally*.

**Sōl**, sōlis, m., *the sun, the Sun-god*.

**sōlēo**, ēre, Itus sum, semi-dep., *to be accustomed, to be wont*.

**sōlītūdo**, īnis, f., *a lonely place, a desert, wilderness*. [solus.]

**sollicitō**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to try to win over; incite, instigate for warlike purposes*.

**sollicitūdo**, īnis, f., *anxiety*.

**sōlum**, adv., *alone, only*.

**sōlus**, a, um, adj., *alone, only*.

**sōlvo**, ēre, solvi, sōlūtum, *to loose, (naves) to weigh anchor, set sail*.

**spātium**, īi, n., *a space, distance, interval*.

**spēcies**, ēi, f., *outward appearance, look, seeming*: *In speciem*, *for a show, seemingly*. [specio.]

**specto**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to look at, look to, bear in mind; to look for, i.e., await, expect*. [specio.]

**spēcūlātor**, ōris, m., *a scout, explorer*.

**spēro**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to hope, expect*.



**sēcūs**, adv., comp. of **sēcūs**, *otherwise: nihilo secius, nevertheless.*

**sector**, āri, ātus sum, intensive, *to pursue eagerly.* [sequor.]

**sēcundus**, a, um, adj., (1) *the following or next to the first in time or order, the second*; (2) *favorable.* [sequor.]

**sed**, conj., *but.*

**sēdēs**, is, f., *a seat, dwelling-place, settlement.* [sedeo.]

**sēgēs**, ētis, f., *corn-field, standing grain, corn in the field, crop.*

**sēmīta**, ae, f., *a path.*

**semper**, adv., *always, ever.*

**sēnātus**, ūs, m., *the council of elders, the Senate.* [senex.]

**sententiā**, ae, f., *a way of thinking, opinion.* [sentio.]

**sentio**, sentire, sensi, sum, *to perceive, notice, observe.*

**septem**, card. num. adj., *seven.*

**septentrio**, ōnis, almost always in the plural, *the seven stars of the Bear, the north.* [literally the seven ploughing oxen, septem triones.]

**septimūs**, a, um, ord. num. adj., *seventh.* [septem.]

**septingenti**, ae, a, num. adj., *seven hundred.* [septem centum.]

**sēquor**, i, sēcūtus, *to follow, attend.*

**sermo**, ōnis, m., *a talking, conversation.* [sero=to join words.]

**sēro**, adv., *too late.* [serus.]

**sēro**, ēre, sēvi, sātum, *to sow.*

**servilis**, e, adj., *belonging to or of a slave.* [servus.]

**servitūs**, ūtis, f., *slavery.* [servus.]

**servo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to keep, lay up, preserve, beset.*

**servus**, i, m., *a slave, serf.*

**sexāgintā**, sixty.

**sexcenti**, ae, a, num. adj., *six hundred.* [See centum.]

**sē-vōco**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call apart, take aside.*

**sī**, conj., *if.*

**sic**, adv., *so, thus.*

**siccitas**, ātis, f., *dryness (of the weather), drought.* [siccus.]

**sic-ut** (sicut), adv., *as, just as.*

**sic-uti**, (sicuti) = *sicut.*

**sidus**, ōris, n., *a constellation, a group of stars.*

**significātiō**, ōnis, f., *a making of a sign or token; tidings.* [signum, facio.]

**signum**, i, n., *a military standard, ensign.*

**silva**, ae, f., *a wood, forest.*

**silvestris**, e, adj., *wooded, woodland* [silva.]

**sīmīlis**, e, adj., *like, like unto.*

**sīmūl**, adv., *at the same time, at once.*

**sīmūlācrum**, i, n., *an image.* [simulo = to make like, similis.]

**sīmūlātiō**, ōnis, f., *pretence.*

**simul atque**, conj. adv., *as soon as.*

**simultās**, ātis, f., *deceit.*

**sīn**, conj., *if however, but if.*

**sīne**, prep. w. abl., *without.*

**singillātīm**, adv., *one by one, singly.* [singuli.]

**singulāris**, e, adj., *(alone of its kind, hence) singular, remarkable.* [singuli.]

**singuli**, ae, a, distrib. num. adj., *one to each, separate, singly.*

**sīnister**, tra, trum, adj., *left hand, adverse.*

**sīnistrorsus**, adv., *towards the left side, to the left.*

**sītus**, us, m., *position.* [sino.]

**sīve** (seu), conj. *whether (= either if), sive* (seu) . . . *sive* (seu), *whether . . . or.*

**societās**, ātis, f., *alliance, league.*

**sōciūs**, ii, m., *an ally.*

**Sōl**, sōlis, m., *the sun, the Sun-god.*

**sōlēo**, ēre, itus sum, semi-dep., *to be accustomed, to be wont.*

**sōlītūdo**, inis, f., *a lonely place, a desert, wilderness.* [solus.]

**sollicitō**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to try to win over, incite, instigate for warlike purposes.*

**sollicitūdo**, inis, f., *anxiety,*

**sōlum**, adv., *alone, only.*

**sōlus**, a, um, adj., *alone, only.*

**sōlvo**, ēre, solvi, sōlūtum, *to loose, (naves) to weigh anchor, set sail.*

**spātium**, ii, n., *a space, distance, interval.*

**spēcies**, ēi, f., *outward appearance, look, seeming: in speciem, for a show, seemingly.* [specio.]

**specto**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to look at, look to, bear in mind; to look for, i.e., await, expect.* [specio.]

**spēcūlātor**, ōris, m., *a scout, explorer.*

**spēro**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to hope, expect.*

**spes, spēi, f., hope.**  
**spōlio, āre, āvi, ātum, to rob, despoil, strip off.**  
**sponte, abl. f., no other case found but a (rare) gen. spontis: in expressions, sponte meā, tuā, suā of free will, of one's own accord. [spondeo.]**  
**stātīm, adv., on the spot, i.e., at once, forthwith, straight-way, immediately. [sto.]**  
**stātio, ōnis, f., an outpost, a roadstead.**  
**stātūra, ae, f., height or size of the body, stature. [sto.]**  
**stātus, ūs, m., condition, position, circumstances. [sto.]**  
**stīpendium, īi, n., a tax, tribute; soldier's pay. [stips, pendo.]**  
**stirps, is, f., stem, stock, race.**  
**sto, āre, stēti, stātum, to stand; to abide, adhere to.**  
**strāmentum, i, n., straw: casae stramentis tectae, thatched. [sterno.]**  
**strepitus, ūs, m., noise, din, clatter.**  
**stūdēo, ēre, ūi, to take pains about, devote oneself to.**  
**stūdīosē, adv., eagerly, carefully, with much pains. [stu-diosus, studium.]**  
**stūdium, īi, n., study, devotion to: studia rei militaris, military pursuits. [studeo.]**  
**sūb, prep. w. acc. or abl., under.**  
**sub-dūco, ēre, xi, ctum, to draw up.**  
**subductio, ōnis, f., the hauling ashore of a ship. [sub, duco.]**  
**subēo, īre, īvi or īi, Itum, to enter, undergo.**  
**sub-īectus, a, um, part. of subicio, lying beneath.**  
**sūb-īcio, ēre, īeci, iectum, to place beneath.**  
**sūbito, adv., suddenly, unexpectedly. [sub, eo.]**  
**sublātus, a, um, part. tollo.**  
**sub-lēvo, āre, āvi, ātum, to raise up, support.**  
**sub-mitto, ēre, misi, missum, to send up, (reinforcements).**  
**submōveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, move out of the way, move on, repulse.**  
**subruo, ēre, rūi, rūtum, to undermine.**  
**sub-sēquor, i, cūtus, to follow close after.**  
**subsidiūm, īi, n., aid, relief, reinforcement, support. [sub-sideo.]**

**sub-sisto, ēre, stīti, to stand still, to hold out, hold fast.**  
**sub-sum, no perf., esse, to be close at hand.**  
**sub-vēnio, īre, vēni, ventum, to come to one's aid, to succour.**  
**suc-cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, to come into the place of, succeed. [sub.]**  
**suc-gendo, ēre, di, sum, to set on fire from below; in gen., to set alight, set on fire.**  
**suc-cido, ēre, cidi, cisum, to cut down.**  
**suc-cisus. See succido.**  
**suc-curro, ēre, curri, cursum, to run or hasten to the aid or help of anyone.**  
**sūdis (nom. sing. rare), is, f., a stake.**  
**suffrāgium, īi, n., a vote.**  
**suggestus, ūs, m., a raised place, mound, platform for speaking.**  
**sum, esse, fui, v. subst., to be.**  
**summa, ae, f., the whole; summa imperii, supreme command.**  
**summus, a, um, superl. adj., f. superus, the top of.**  
**sum-mitto, (subm.), ēre, misi, missum, to send up, send off, despatch.**  
**sumptūosus, a, um, adj., costly, expensive. [sumptus.]**  
**sūmo, ēre, sumpsi, sumptum, to take; poenas sumere, to take satisfaction, exact the penalty, inflict punishment.**  
**sūpērior, īus, comp. adj. See superus.**  
**sūpēro, āre, āvi, ātum, to overcome, conquer, prevail. [super.]**  
**sūper-sum, esse, fui, to be over (as a remainder), to be left, remain, survive.**  
**sūpērus, a, um, adj., that is above, upper: comp. sūpērior, īus, of time, former, past, precious; of strength in a battle or other contest, superior, stronger, victorious: sup. sūpērimus and summus, of rank, etc., highest, most distinguished: summae res, things of the highest importance. [super.]**  
**supplicium, īi, n., punishment, (of death), execution. [supplex, sup-plico = to bend the knees, kneel down (for execution, etc.).]**  
**sūprā, prep. w. acc. and adv., above; of time, before. [superus.]**  
**suscipio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, to undertake.**  
**suspectus, a, um, part. suspicio.**  
**suspicio, ēre, spexi, ctum, to mistrust, suspect. [sub-pecio]**  
**suspicio, ōnis, f., mistrust, suspicion,**

**suspīcor**, ari, atus sum, *to suspect.*

**sustento**, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to bear, endure, support.* [sustineo.]

**sustīnĕo**, ěre, tinui, tentum, *to hold up or out against, to withstand.* [subs = sub, teneo.]

**sustŭli**, v. tollo.

**sŭus**, a, um, pron. poss. of 3rd person, *his own, her own, its own, their own; his, her, its, their.*

## T.

**tabernāculum**, i, n., *a tent.*

**tabulātum**, i, n., *a floor, storey (of a tower or house).*

**tālĕa**, ae, bar, rod (of iron.)

**tālis**, e, adj., *of such a kind; such* (referring to quality always).

**tāmen**, adv., *however, nevertheless, yet.*

**tāmetsi**, conj., *notwithstanding that, although.* [contr. fr. tamen etsi.]

**tango**, ěre, tĕtigi, tactum, *to touch.*

**tanto**, see tantus.

**tantŭlus**, a, um, adj., dim., *so little, so small.* [tantus.]

**tantus**, a, um, adj., *so great in amount, size, etc.: subst. tantum, i, n., so much: abl. tanto (with comparatives), by so much, so much the, the (cf. quantus).*

**tantum**, adv., *only.*

**tardo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to impede, retard.*

**taurus**, i, m., *a bull.*

**taxus**, i, f., *a yew-tree.*

**tectus**, a, um, part. tego.

**tĕgimentum**, i, n., *a covering.* [tego.]

**tĕgo**, ěre, xi, ctum, *to cover.*

**tĕlum**, i, n., *a weapon for throwing, a javelin, etc.*

**tĕmĕrārius**, a, um, adj., *rash, inconsiderate.* [temere.]

**tĕmĕrĕ**, adv., *at random, rashly, heedlessly.*

**tĕmĕritas**, ātis, f., *rashness, indiscretion.* [temere.]

**tempĕrātus**, a, um, part. of tempero. *temperate.*

**tempesta**, ātis, f., *season of the year; storm.*

**tempto**, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to try, tempt.*

**tempus**, ōris, n., *time.*

**tĕnĕo**, ěre, ŭi, tentum, *to hold, keep.*

**tento**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to try, test, tempt, try to influence, endeavor.*

**tĕnŭis**, e, adj., (thin); *feeble, weak.*

**terra**, ae, f., *the (dry) land; the earth; plur. terrae, the earth, the world.*

**terrĕo**, ěre, ŭi, Itum, *to frighten.*

**terrĭto**, are (no perf. or sup.) freq., *to put in terror, to frighten.* [terreo.]

**terrĕr**, ōris, in., *fright, alarm.*

**tertĭus**, a, um, num. ord. adj., *the third.* [ter.]

**tertĭus-dĕcĭmus**, a, um, num. ord. adj., *the thirteenth.*

**testĭmōnĭum**, ŭi, n., *evidence, proof.* [testor.]

**testŭdo**, inis, f., *a tortoise.* As a military term, the word means *a covering or shed for the protection of soldiers attacking fortifications.* [testa = a shell.]

**tĭmĕo**, ěre, ŭi, (no sup.) *to dread, fear.*

**tĭmĭde**, adv., *faint-heartedly, timidly.* [timidus, timeo.]

**tĭmor**, ōris, m., *dread, fear.* [timeo.]

**tŏlĕro**, are, āvi, ātum, *to bear, endure, sustain.*

**tollo**, tollĕre, sustŭli, sublātum, *to raise, lift, or set up; to take away, remove.*

**tormentum**, i, n., *torture.* [torqueo, to twist.]

**torrĕo**, ěre, torrŭi, tostum, *to scorch.*

**tŏt**, num. adj. indecl., *so many.*

**tŏtus**, a, um (gen. ius, dat. i), adj., *the whole, entire, all.*

**tractus**, v. traho.

**trādo**, ěre, didi, ditum, *to give or hand over; to deliver by teaching, to teach.* [trans, do.]

**trādŭco**, ěre, xi, ctum, *to lead or bring across or over.* [trans, duco.]

**trāgŭla**, ae, f., *a kind of javelin or lance used by the Gauls.* [traho.]

**traho**, ěre, traxi, tractum, *to draw, drag along.*

**trālcio**, ěre, iĕci, iectum, *to pierce through, transfix.* [trans, iacio.]

**tranquillitās**, ātis, f., *calm.*

**trans**, prep. w. acc., *across, over, on the far side of.*

**transduco**. See traduco.

**trans-ĕo**, Ire, Ivi or Ii, Itum, *to go across or over, to cross.*

**trans-fĕro**, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to bear across, to bring or carry over.*

**trans-figo**, ěre, xi, xum, to pierce through, transfix.

**transĭtus**, ūs, m., a going or passing over, a passage, crossing. [transĕo.]

**translātus**, a, um, part. transfero.

**trans-mārinus**, a, um, adj., brought across or from beyond sea, imported.

**transmissus**, ūs, m., crossing, interval, distance.

**transporto**, āre, āvi, ātum, to convey across.

**trecenti**, ae, a, adj., three hundred.

**trĕpido**, āre, āvi, ātum, to bustle about anxiously, to hurry with alarm.

**trēs**, tria, card. num. adj., three.

**tribunus**, i, m., a chieftain, commander, tribune; **tribuni militum**, military tribunes, officers of the army, six to each legion, who commanded in turn, each two months at a time.

**tribuo**, ěre, tribūi, tribūtum, to assign.

**tribūtum**, i, n., a stated payment, tribute.

**trini**, ae, a, num. adj. distrib., three at a time; in groups of three. [tres.]

**tripertito**, adv., in three divisions. [tres, para.]

**triquĕtrus**, tra, trum, adj., triangular.

**tūĕor**, ěri, tūtus, to see to, defend, protect.

**tum**, adv., then.

**tūmultus**, us, m., commotion, disturbance.

**tūmulus**, i, m., a mound. [tumeo = to swell.]

**turma**, ae, f., a squadron.

**turpis**, e, adj., base, shameful, dishonorable.

**turris**, is (acc. turrim and turrem; abl. turri and turre), f., a tower.

**tūtus**, a, um, part. tueor. As adj., safe.

## U.

**ŭbi**, adv., (of place), where; (of time), when.

**ulciscor**, i, ultus, to take vengeance on, avenge oneself on.

**ullus**, a, um, adj., any, any at all. [for unulus, dimin. of unus.]

**ultĕrior**, ius, comp. adj., farther.

**ultĭmus**, a, um, sup. adj., farthest, most distant: **ultĭmĭ**, ōrum, m., the hindmost.

**ultro**, adv., unasked; unprovoked; of one's own accord.

**ultus**, v. ulciscor.

**ŭlŭlātus**, us, m., a yell, war-whoop.

**ŭnā**, adv., together, in company. [unus.]

**undĕ**, adv., from which place, whence.

**undĭquĕ**, adv., from all parts, from every quarter, on all sides.

**unĭversus**, a, um, adj., all together, in a body, as a whole. whole.

**ŭnus**, a, um, card. num. adj., one: **ad unum**, to a man, i. e., without exception.

**urbs**, is, f., city.

**urus**, i, m., a wild-ox, aurochs.

**usquĕ**, adv., all the way: **usque ad**, right up to.

**ŭsus**, ūs, m., use, employment; need, occasion; usefulness, use: **ex usu esse**, to be useful or advantageous. [utor.]

**ŭsus**, a, um, part. utor.

**ŭt** or **ŭti**, adv. and conj., with indic., as; with subjunctive, that, so that, in order that.

**ŭter**, ŭtra, ŭtrum, pron. interrog., which, of the two.

**ŭter-que**, ŭtrāque, ŭtrumque, pron., each of two, both (separately; opp. to ambo, both together).

**ŭtĭ**, conj. See ut.

**ŭtĭ**, infin. of ŭtor.

**ŭtor**, i, ŭsus sum, to use, accept, enjoy.

**uxor**, ōris f., a wife.

## V.

**vācātĭo**, ōnis, f., freedom, exemption from a service, etc. [vaco.]

**vādum**, i, n., a ford.

**vāgĭna**, ae, f., a scabbard, sheath.

**vāgor**, āri, ātus, to go to and fro, roam, wander. [vagus.]

**vālĕo**, ěre, ŭi, itum, to be strong: to have power or influence, to avail.

**vallĕs** or **vallis**, is, f., a vale, valley.

**vallum**, i, n., an earthen wall or rampart set with palisades, a rampart.

**vāriĕtās**, ātis, f., diversity, variety.

**vasto**, āre, āvi, ātum, to empty of inhabitants, to lay waste. [vastus.]

**vectĭgal**, ālis, n., tax. [veho.]

**vectōrius**, a, um, adj., for transport. [veho.]

**velim** and **vellem**, see volo.

**vēlōcītās**, ātis, f., *speed, swiftiness*.  
[velox.]

**vēlōcīter**, adv., *speedily, swiftly*;  
comp. velocius; sup. velocissime.  
[velox.]

**vēnātiō**, ōnis, f., *hunting, the chase*.  
[venor.]

**vēnātor**, ōris, m., *a hunter*. [venor.]

**vēnia**, ae, f., *pardon, favor, indulgence*.

**vēnīo**, ire, vēni, ventum, *to come*.

**ventitō**, āre, āvi, ātum, freq., *to come often, to keep coming*. [venio.]

**ventus**, i, m., *wind*.

**vēr**, vēris, n., *spring*.

**verbum**, i, n., *a word*.

**verēor**, ēri, itus, *to fear or be afraid*.

**vergo**, vergēre, *to incline, turn, verge*.

**vērītus**, a, um, part. vereor.

**vērō**, adv., *in truth, assuredly, however*. [verus.]

**versor**, āri, ātus, (properly the mid. form of verso, are, freq. of verto), *stay, dwell, be in a place, or mix among or with people*.

**versus**, ūs, m., *a line of poetry, a verse*.

**versus**, ad. *towards, in the direction of*.

**vērūtum**, i, n., *a dart, javelin*.  
[veru, a spit.]

**vesper**, ēris, (locative vesperi, acc. mostly vesperum), n., *the evening*.

**vestigium**, ii, n., *a footprint, track, trace*.

**vestio**, ire, vestivi, vestitum, *to clothe*.  
[vestis.]

**vestītus**. See vestio.

**vēto**, āre, vetūi, vētītum, *to forbid*.

**vētus**, ēris, adj., *old*.

**vexillum**, i, n., *a flag; a red flag placed upon the general's tent as a signal for battle or marching*.

**vexo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to harass, ravage*.

**vīa**, ae, f., *a way, street, road*.

**vicēni**, ae, a, num., distrib. adj., *twenty each*. [viginti.]

**vicēsīmus** (vicessimus and vigesimus), a, um, num. ord. adj., *the twentieth*. [viginti.]

**vicēs**, adv., *twenty times*. [viginti.]

**victīma**, ae, f., *a sacrifice, victim*.

**victor**, ōris, m., *a conqueror; in apposition, victorious*. [vinco.]

**victōria**, ae, f., *victory*.

**victus**, a, um, part. vinco.

**victus**, ūs, m. (*that on which one lives*), *provisions, sustenance, victuals*. [vivo.]

**vicus**, i, m., *village*.

**vīdēo**, ēre, vīdi, vīsum, *to see; pass-videor, I seem or am seen; impers. pass. to seem fit or good*.

**viginti**, adj., indecl., *twenty*.

**vīmen**, inis, n., *a pliant twig, withe, osier*.

**vinco**, ēre, vici, victum, *to conquer, be victorious*: **vincite**=*have your own way*.

**vīolo**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to do violence to, injure*. [vis.]

**vīr**, vīri, m., *a man, a husband*.

**vīres**, v. vis.

**virgo**, inis, f., *a maiden*.

**virtūs**, ūtis, f., *manliness; bravery, courage, valor; worth, virtue*. [vir.]

**vis**, acc. vin, abl. vi, f. in sing., *violence, force, power*; plur. vires, virium, etc., *bodily strength*.

**vita**, ae, f., *life*. [vivo.]

**vīto**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to avoid, evade*.

**vitrum**, i, n., *wood*.

**vīvo**, ēre, vixi, victum, *to live*.

**vīvus**, a, um, adj., *alive, living*. [vivo.]

**vobis**, see vos.

**vōco**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to call, invite, challenge*.

**vōlo**, velle, vōlūi, *to wish, will, be willing*.

**vōluntārius**, a, um, adj., *willing, of one's own free will*: **voluntarii**, ōrum, m., *volunteers*. [voluntas.]

**vōluntās**, ātis, f., *will, free-will, inclination, disposition*.

**vōluptās**, ātis, f., *pleasure*.

**vōs**, plur. of tu, pron. pers., *you*.

**vōvēo**, ēre, vōvi, vōtum, *to vow, to promise solemnly*.

**vox**, vōcis, f., *a voice, cry*.

**vulgo**, adv., *commonly, generally*. [vulgus.]

**vulgus**, i, (usually n., occasionally m., but not in Caesar) *the mass of the people, the people, the public*.

**vulnēro**, āre, āvi, ātum, *to wound, injure by a wound*. [vulnus.]

**vulnus**, ēris, n., *a wound*.

# EXERCISES IN RE-TRANSLATION

BASED ON BOOK V.

*N.B.—The first five Exercises are based on Chapter 1.*

## Exercise 1.

### Cases.

1. Lucius and Appius are consuls ; Lucius is consul.
2. Lucius (being) consul, Caesar sets out for hither Gaul.
3. In the consulship of Lucius and Appius, Caesar set out (Historical Pres.) from the army (*exercitus*, -*ūs*) into Italy.
4. He puts Labienus, Titurius (and) Cotta, (his) lieutenants in-charge-of the army.
5. To these lieutenants he-gives-orders (*impero*) that they should build (*facere*) a fleet (*classis*).
6. They will build ships and repair the old (ones).
7. These ships Caesar will use against (*contra*) Britain (*Britannia*).
8. They make the ships low and broad.
9. The Romans use in the Mediterranean high and narrow ships.
10. In the Ocean the Gauls use lower and wider vessels than (those) which the Romans are accustomed to employ.
11. Many things were useful to the lieutenants.

## Exercise 2.

### Abl. Absol.

1. Caesar left (*discedo*) for Britain, when Pompeius and Crassus were consuls.
2. The assizes have been held ; I will now (*iam*) set out for Italy.
3. After holding the assizes, Caesar returns (*revertor*, 3) to the army.
4. Part of the province had been laid waste by the Gauls. This part having been devastated, they sent ambassadors to Caesar.
5. These things were reported. These (rel. pron.) things having been reported to Caesar, he ordered (*impero*) hostages.
6. He gave-orders-to the Gauls (for) many hostages.

7. These speeches were delivered (*habeo*). When these speeches had been delivered (part. phrase), Caesar replied (*respondeo, -di*).

### Exercise 3.

#### Acc. with Inf.—Tenses of the Inf.

1. The province was being ravaged. He kept-hearing that the province was being ravaged.
2. Part has already (*iam*) been devastated by the enemy. They heard (perf.) that this part had already been laid waste by the soldiers of the enemy.
3. Caesar will pursue them with war. Caesar made-clear that he would pursue them with war and ravage their lands.
4. They heard (from time to time) that Caesar was coming (*venio, 4*) that his lieutenants had built ships and that he would demand hostages.
5. Caesar believed (*credo, credidi*) that the Pirustae had done all these things (neut. pl.) as a matter of public policy.
6. He learned (*cognosco, cognovi*) that they were ready to give satisfaction.
7. Caesar said that he would, after hostages were sent (abl. abs.), appoint (=give) assessors.

### Exercise 4.

#### Iubeo and Impero.

1. He ordered them to build ships and repair the old ones (use *iubeo*).
2. He gives orders to Labienus, Titurius (and) Cotta that they build ships and repair the old ones.
3. He orders ships to be built (use (a) *iubeo* (b) *impero*; with *impero* use either *ut* or *inf.*)\*
4. He orders hostages from the Pirustae (use *impero*. and dat. of person receiving the order).
5. He bids them bring the hostages to himself.

#### Sequence of Tenses.

6. It was Caesar's custom to order (express by proper tense of *impero*.) conquered (*victus, -a, -um*) states to give hostages.
7. He had ordered that these should be brought to him.
8. The lieutenants gave orders (historical present) to the men (*miles*) to build the ships low and broad.
9. He will give orders for the repairing of the ships (=“that the ships be repaired”).

---

\* *Impero* may take the infin. in passive.

10. He has given orders for the old ships to be repaired and new ones to be constructed by the soldiers over-whom he has placed the lieutenants.

11. Bid the man come. Command the man to come.

### Exercise 5.

#### Gerund and Gerundive.

1. Great was the speed of loading these vessels.
2. They were low for-the-purpose-of (*ad*) loading.
3. The cause of building (them) was this. Caesar wished to cross (*transire*) to Britain.
4. What things (n. pl.) were required (*usui esse*) for building the ships (Gerundive), were brought from Spain.
5. Many things are necessary (*usui*) for repairing a fleet.
6. He bids the lieutenants see-to (*curo*) the equipping of a fleet.
7. Caesar bids the ambassadors see that hostages are brought.
8. A fleet was fitted out for the sake of crossing to Britain (use *causā* after its case).
9. He goes to Gaul to hold the assizes (*conventus agere*; use *ad* and Gerundive).

### Exercise 6.

#### Review.

These ships having been built and equipped and the assizes being over, he returns (*revertor*) to the army. When he had arrived there he found (*invenio*) XXVIII war ships (*naves longae*) built (*instruo, instructum*) and six hundred others fitted out. Having praised the soldiers (use passive partl.) he ordered all to assemble at (*convenire ad*) the ocean, because he had learnt (*cognosco, -novi*) that there was a short (*brevis*) passage (*traiectus*) to Britain. He himself with four legions sets out for the Treveri because he had heard that they were not coming to the councils (*concilium*).

### Exercise 7.

(See Chapter 1 and 2).

In the following year, when Lucius and Appius were consuls, Caesar prepared again to cross to Britain. In the winter he ordered his lieutenants to see that a fleet (*classis*) was built and fitted out (*armo*). After holding the assizes he sets out to the Pirustae because he heard they were laying waste that part of the Roman Province which bordered on (*atingo*) Illyricum. Having received the submission of the Pirustae (*the P. having been received into surrender*) and having appointed (*do, date*) assessors among them, he returns to the coast (*ora maritima*) where (*ubi*) he finds many ships built and old ones repaired.

## Exercise 8.

(See Chapter 2, 3 and 4).

Having ordered all the ships to assemble at Portus Itius, he leads four legions against the Treveri, who were defying his authority (*imperio non parere*) and stirring up the Germans. Of this state there were two chiefs, Indutiomarus and Cingetorix. One of these, learning of Caesar's approach, surrenders to Caesar, and is received as a friend (*into friendship*). The other, Indutiomarus, at first (*primo*) endeavored to resist (Dative) Caesar, gathering (*perf. pass. participle*) all his (people) into the woods. But being frightened by Caesar's arrival, he offered to surrender unconditionally, (*said he was willing to entrust himself and his fortunes to his honor (fides)*). Nevertheless Caesar, after receiving hostages from Indutiomarus, made Cingetorix head of the Treveri (*conciliated the chiefs of the T. to C.*); at which the former (*ille*) was very indignant (*bore grievously*).

## Exercise 9.

1. The chieftains of the Treveri were not able to consult the interests of their states, so (*itaque*) looked out for themselves.

2. It was of great interest to Caesar that a friend should rule over (*impero*, with Dat.) the Treveri.

3. Indutiomarus feared that all would desert him (=himself).

4. Caesar feared that Indutiomarus would not be a friend (see F. 185, 3, 4; P. II., 154).

5. Indutiomarus did not come to Caesar, in order that the state might be the more easily kept loyal (*in officio*).

6. What (*plur.*) is going on among the Treveri? Cingetorix will make known (*ostendo*) to Caesar what is going on.

7. I and all my (people) will be loyal, nor will we desert (*deficio ab*) the friendship of the Roman people. —

## Exercise 10.

(See latter part of Chapter 3).

It-is-for-that-reason-that I am not leaving my friends and am unwilling to come to you. I wish to maintain the loyalty of my state and I fear lest the common people may slip. Consequently the state is at my disposal and I will, if you permit me (*fut. indic.*), come to you in your camp and put myself and my state in your hands (*entrust myself to your honor*).

## Exercise 11.

(See Chapter 5).

1. Caesar's legions had reached the harbor.

2. Fifty war-ships built in the territories of the Meldae, had been driven back by storms and had not (*neque*) been able to reach this harbor. They returned to their starting point.

Handwritten text, mostly illegible due to extreme blurriness and low contrast. Faintly visible words and phrases include:

- Top right: "The..."
- Top center: "and..."
- Middle left: "The..."
- Middle right: "The..."
- Bottom left: "The..."
- Bottom right: "The..."

Don't go out with a knife after the  
stealing murder.

[illegible]

the will compound of a lot of

later the digestive  
 food is broken up into  
 when the pieces are small  
 change a water, then with addition  
 as nutritive, later for as passive  
 nutritive, passive, active passive

It has been given to read the following  
to read including ideas of noon

I like my white to have to have  
the same color as the other  
with the same color as the other

---

The greenish blue color  
is the same as the other  
in all.

1. Take any 6 cubes to form a 2x3x1  
cube. The cube is formed with

I like you better than I do  
the other girls who are with  
you now.

1 Mr. J. L. White to Governor of this State  
for the purpose of obtaining information with  
reference to the same.

It has been given to read the following to read including also of noon

What not to do negative feedback

[illegible]

Change is not a passive  
activity, but a process

The first component of a lake is

Quercus laevis, rubra, prinus, linc.

infection in mother

*[Faint handwritten signature]*

3. The rest were ready for sailing and were equipped with all things.
4. Those, whose loyalty he felt sure of (*confido* with *abl.*), he left in Gaul. The rest he took with him as hostages.
5. Dumnorix, the Aeduan, especially he wished to have along with him.

## Exercise 12.

(See Chapter 6).

1. The Aeduians resented (*graviter fero*) the statement of Dumnorix.
2. We dare not send ambassadors to protest (*deprecor*).
3. Dumnorix begged to be left behind, on the ground that he feared the passage across (*navigatio*).
4. Those who are unaccustomed to sailing always fear the sea.
5. I advise you to remain on (dry) land and not (*neu*) to cross with Caesar.
6. "Not without a reason does it happen that Gaul is being robbed of its chieftains. Caesar's policy is to kill us in Britain. He is afraid to do it in sight of our friends. Pledge (give) me your oath that you will remain in Gaul."

## Exercise 13.

(See Chapter 7).

1. Caesar, learning these things, decided to check Dumnorix.
2. I must check Dumnorix at all costs.
3. His madness has already gone too far. He will do me and the State harm.
4. The N. W. wind blows nearly all the time on the coast of Gaul.
5. Caesar will exert himself to maintain the loyalty of Dumnorix (*keep D. in his duty*).
6. When the men (not *homines*) had embarked, he left for home.
7. Caesar orders him either to be brought back or to be slain.
8. Those who were sent to pursue him (*causā* with *gerundive*) surrounded him and, when he resisted (*pres. participle*), slew him.
9. In the absence of Caesar, Dumnorix acted in no way as a sane man.
10. I am free and I belong to a free state.

## Exercise 14.

(See Chapter 8).

1. He did these things (use *gero*), and left Labienus in Gaul.
2. Having left legions and cavalry on the continent, he set sail at sunset.

3. At day-break he found out that he had left Britain behind on the left.
4. Having been carried on too far by the wind and tide, the ships followed the change of tide and reached the island.
5. On this part of the island he had landed the summer before.
6. He knew that these regions were excellent for landing.
7. The soldiers by not relaxing (perf. participle) their efforts (*labor*) reached the island by rowing the same day.
8. At noon the enemy saw Caesar's ships approaching and, panic-stricken, they left the shore for the woods.

### Exercise 15.

(See Chapter 8).

Purpose expressed by *ut*.

1. Labienus was left behind to guard the coast.
2. He left soldiers to provide corn.
3. They strove to reach the island.
4. We shall strive to equal the speed of the war-galleys.
5. We are exerting ourselves to learn (*cognosco*) many things.

Indirect Question.

6. What was being done in Gaul? Labienus saw what was being done.
7. What (sing.) has Caesar done (*gero*)? We learn what he did when he had crossed into Britain.
8. What had the enemy seen? They were frightened at what (those things which) they had seen. They told their chiefs what they had seen.
9. In what place have the enemy encamped? (*consido*, *-sedi*).
10. He ascertained in what place they had encamped.

### Exercise 16.

(See Chapter 9).

1. Caesar landed his army and selected a site suitable for a camp. The army landed after 12 o'clock (noon).
2. I will leave ten cohorts and 300 cavalry as a guard for the camp.
3. Quintus had been appointed in command of that part of his army which he was leaving at the sea.
4. After mooring the ships at anchor and appointing Atrius in command, he hastened in pursuit of the enemy's forces.

5. The enemy, fearing Caesar, advanced to the river in their chariots and there joined battle.

6. Having advanced and joined battle, they were driven back to the woods.

7. Finding a suitable place, they hid themselves in the woods.

8. A "testudo" was formed by our soldiers and a mound was thrown up. These things having been done, the place was captured.

9. Caesar's cavalry did not pursue the fleeing enemy too far, because a great part of the day had already (*iam*) been spent in landing and fighting.

10. The enemy were driven from the woods no wound having been received by our men.

### Exercise 17.

(See Chapter 10.)

1. Next day soldiers were sent to pursue the enemy.

2. The army having advanced some distance, it was reported that a storm had arisen and wrecked the ships.

3. The ships have been cast up on shore, because they could not withstand the force of the storm.

4. The ships having been wrecked and cast up on shore, great inconvenience was caused.

5. Caesar writes (*scribo*) to his lieutenants to send workmen (*faber*.)

### Exercise 18.

(See Chapter 11.)

1. Caesar, having learnt of the storm, called back his men from the pursuit (use *Gerund*) and hastened to the shore.

2. There he found that about forty ships had been lost and that the rest were badly damaged (*affligo*).

3. To Labienus he wrote to send workmen from the continent, and to build (*aedifico*) as many ships as possible with the remaining legions.

4. This was not a matter of much difficulty.

5. Meanwhile Caesar, after hauling up those ships which had not been lost, fortified both ships and camp with one rampart.

6. Having spent ten days in fortifying, he again started out in-pursuit-of (*ad*) the enemy, leaving a few (*pauci*) soldiers to protect the fortification which he had constructed.

7. Having reached the place (use a *cum* clause) where the enemy were, he learned that large forces had assembled and that the supreme command had been given to (*permitto*) Cassivellaunus, chieftain of those tribes which

border-upon (*attingo*) the Thames. Now (*autem*) between Cassivellaunus and the other (*reliqui*) tribes there had hitherto been unceasing warfare. Our arrival however stirred-up (*permoveo*) the Britons to appointing him (*gerundive*) in charge of the whole war.

### Exercise 19.

(See Chapters 12, 13 and 14).

1. Those who have been born in the island itself inhabit the interior of Britain.
2. Those who inhabit the maritime district had their origin in the states of Belgium.
3. The Britons use gold, brass, iron, timber, (and) tin.
4. Of these some are found in the island, others are imported.
5. Those who inhabit Belgium are called Belgae.
6. They bring their ships to port at Kent.
7. He has been called a friend.
8. The ships have been brought to port.
9. Caesar sailed westward and northward.
10. The natives, looking southward, saw Caesar approaching.
11. Britain is half as large again as Ireland.
12. They call the island which lies midway between Britain and Ireland Mona.
13. The Kentish people (inhabitants of Kent) are very much like the Gauls, and most-of-them live on corn. Those-of-the-interior are more like the Germans, living (as they do) on milk and flesh. The *wool*, with which they all stain their bodies, produces a dark blue color. In war they are of a horrible appearance and go (*esse*) with flowing hair.

### Exercise 20.

(See Chapters 15 and 16).

1. Our men, having advanced some distance (*aliquantum itineris*), engaged the enemy and drove them into the woods.
2. Again, however, the enemy rushed from the woods and made an attack upon our camp.
3. Caesar sent to the rescue the first cohorts of two legions, but our men became frightened by the enemy's mode of fighting.
4. The enemy, after killing a military tribune, broke through and fled.
5. In this battle the Britons would fall back a little way, leap from their chariots and fight on foot.

6. In constant succession they would relieve one another so that they were always fresh. *sp*

### Exercise 21.

(See Chapter 17).

1. Next day our men were provoked to battle by the enemy, who displayed themselves on the hills.

2. Three legions and all the cavalry had been sent by Caesar for the purpose of foraging.

3. An attack was made upon the enemy by our men.

4. The enemy having been repulsed by this attack, were driven headlong by the cavalry.

5. A great number of them were slain.

6. No opportunity was given them of making a stand or fighting.

### Exercise 22.

(See Chapter 18).

1. Caesar had ascertained their plans. Having ascertained their plans.

2. Having led his army to the Thames, he observed that this river was fordable only in one place.

3. Large forces had been drawn up on the other bank, which moreover had been protected by stakes both fixed in front and driven down beneath the water.

4. The cavalry was sent forward and the legions were ordered to follow up.

5. The enemy could not withstand the attack of the legions.

6. Having quit the banks they committed themselves to flight. *q*

### Exercise 23.

(See Chapter 19).

1. Cassivellaunus laid aside all hope of keeping up the struggle and disbanded his forces.

2. With a few however he watched the movements of the Romans from neighboring (*proximus*) hills.

3. Our army will make its way through these regions.

4. He learned that Caesar would direct his course with a view to plundering and devastating.

5. This fear prevented the Romans from spreading (*eicere se*) over the fields too freely.

6. Caesar did not suffer his (men) to depart too far.
7. Having devastated the land and made fires he kept (*retineo*) his men in camp.
8. By these things we can injure the Britons most and no harm can be done us (it-cannot-be-harmed).

**Exercise 24.***(See Chapter 20).*

1. Mandubratius came from the Trinobantes to Caesar on the continent.
2. He knew (*intellego*) that his own father, who had held the sovereignty, had been slain.
3. The Trinobantes, having sent envoys, surrender to Caesar.
4. We will surrender to you and do your bidding.
5. We ask you to protect our young chief.
6. He who had been-at-the-head-of the state (*praesum*, with dat.) had been slain.
7. Caesar sent them (a man) to take charge (use Relative of Purpose).
8. He promised to send them (some one) to hold authority.

**Exercise 25.***(See Chapter 21).*

1. Now that this state has been protected (use perf. participle and abl. abs.) the remaining (ones) will send embassies and surrender.
2. Not far distant is a town into which men and cattle will gather.
3. Impassable woods had been fortified by ramparts and trenches.
4. Thither they assemble for the purpose of avoiding Caesar.
5. When the enemy had rushed (*se eicere*) out of the town, many were slain.
6. Caesar, having tarried on the island a little while, returned (*se recipere*) to the continent.

**Exercise 26.***(See Chapter 22).*

1. Four kings preside over Kent.
2. These kings gathering an army suddenly assaulted the camp.
3. Caesar learned that his (men) had made a rally and that many of the enemy had been slain.
4. Cassivellaunus heard that his territories had been ravaged.

5. This battle had been reported to Cassivellaunus.
6. Caesar knew that he could easily drag out the remaining part of the summer.
7. I enjoin upon you not to hurt my allies (*socii*). ε

**Exercise 27.***(See Chapter 23).*

1. Having led his army to the naval camp, he launched the ships.
2. Caesar carried back his soldiers and prisoners from Britain in two trips.
3. The ships, after carrying over the first lot, were returning (being sent back) along with the seventy ships built by Labienus.
4. A storm having arisen (*coorior*) very few of these reached (their) destination.
5. Caesar waited some time for these, and then (*deinde*) stowing his men more closely, he crossed in one night with the second lot. Thus (*ita*) was concluded Caesar's second war with the Britons.

**Exercise 28.***(See Chapter 24).*

1. When Caesar had returned to the continent he stationed his eight legions, for the purpose of wintering, in several (different) states.
2. This he was compelled to do by the scarcity of corn.
3. Quintus Cicero, brother of Marcus the orator, was sent with one legion into the Nervii.
4. One legion, over which Sabinus and Cotta were in command, was ordered to winter among the Eburones.
5. Along with this legion five other cohorts were stationed.

**Exercise 29.***(See Chapter 25).*

1. The kingdom of the Carnutes had been restored by Caesar to Tasgetius.
2. He was slain by his enemies in the third year of his reign.
3. This occurrence having been reported to Caesar, he sent Plancus into this state for-the-purpose-of (*ad*) wintering there and apprehending the slayers of Tasgetius (those who had slain).
4. Meanwhile all his lieutenants, to whom legions had been assigned, informed him that they had reached their winter quarters.

**Exercise 30.**

(See Chapters 26 and 27).

1. Within fifteen days a revolt broke out among the Eburones at the instigation of the two chieftains (the two chieftains being instigators).
2. Our men gained an advantage in a cavalry fight and the enemy withdrew from the camp.
3. Then the enemy said they wished to hold a conference and to settle the dispute.
4. In this conference Ambiorix said that he owed gratitude to Caesar, and had attacked the camp not by his own will but by the compulsion of the state.
5. He urged (*suadēre ut*) the lieutenants (Dat.) to lead out their men and hasten to Labienus.

**Exercise 31.**

(See Chapters 28-31).

1. These things having been laid before Cotta and Sabinus, a great dispute arose.
2. Cotta wished to remain in the camp and await reinforcements from Caesar. Sabinus thought they ought to depart (use *Gerundive*).
3. The matter having been prolonged till midnight, the opinion of Cotta was overborne (*supero*) by Sabinus.
4. At day-break they left camp.

**Exercise 32.**

(See Chapters 32-35).

1. The enemy placed an ambuscade in a valley.
2. When our column had advanced into this valley, the enemy made an attack on front and rear and threw them into great confusion (*magno opere perturbare*).
3. In this battle, Sabinus, who had been the promoter of the departure from camp, acted timidly; Cotta alone discharged the duties of commander.
4. Sabinus had foreseen none of those things that happened; Cotta had thought-of (*cogito*) everything.
5. The Romans, abandoning (perf. part.) their baggage, formed (*consisto*) into a circle.
6. The barbarians, thinking that all things depended upon victory, made no attempt (*non conari*) to seize the plunder left by the Roman soldiers, but hurled missiles from afar. Whenever the Romans charged (pluperf. ind.), they would retire. —

7. Then (*deinde*) when the Romans were returning to the circle, they would surround them.

8. Thus they fought from early dawn till two o'clock in the afternoon.

### Exercise 33.

(See Chapters 36-37.)

1. Titurius sent a messenger (*nuntius*) to the leader of the enemy and asked him to spare the Romans.

2. Ambiorix replied that Sabinus might (it was permitted to), if he wished, come to a conference (*Supine of Purpose*).

3. When Sabinus had asked Cotta to withdraw from the battle in company with him, and confer with the Gallic chieftain, Cotta refused to go (said he would not):

4. Sabinus went, several tribunes and centurions following him.

5. These, having thrown away their arms, are surrounded and slain.

6. The enemy, again charging upon the ranks of the Romans, slew Cotta.

7. A few of the Romans who had returned to the camp slew themselves.

8. Sabinus was informed of what had happened by soldiers who escaped through the woods.

### Exercise 34.

(See Chapters 38-40.)

1. After slaying Sabinus and Cotta, Ambiorix stirred up the Nervii to crush (*opprimo*) Cicero and his legion.

2. All hope of the Nervii and their allies depended on quickness.

3. Cicero however held out throughout the first day.

4. Having dispatched a letter to Caesar, he built (*excito*) many towers with great speed on the rampart of the camp.

5. Next day, when the camp had been assaulted by the enemy and the trench filled up (*use abl. absol.*), our men again resisted bravely.

6. For several days thereafter they held out.

### Exercise 35.

(See Chapters 41-43.)

1. Then, when several chieftains of the Nervii had come into Cicero's camp and were urging (*persuadeo*) him to leave for other parts, he replied that he could not accept terms from them (when) under arms.

2. The Nervii thought that, when he had left camp, they would easily crush his whole army and kill him.

3. Cicero's reply having been received, they surrounded his camp with rampart and trench and hoped that they would thus compel (*cogo*) him to surrender.

4. On the seventh day, they again attacked the camp and brought into action towers, pent-houses and scaling ladders (use only one verb).

5. But so great was the valour of our men that on this day also the enemy were repulsed, many of (=out of) their number being wounded and slain.

### Exercise 36.

(See Chapters 45-48.)

1. Several messengers having been sent in vain, a slave, who was a Gaul, brought a letter to Caesar.

2. Caesar, learning of Cicero's danger, immediately sends messengers to Crassus, Fabius and Labienus and bids them come with their legions to Cicero's camp.

3. Crassus and Fabius do as they were ordered, but Labienus sends a letter in which he describes (*prescribo*) his own danger and says he cannot (*nego*) leave his winter camp.

4. Caesar, with the two legions which he had received from Crassus and Fabius, hastens by forced marches into the territories of the Nervii.

5. A Gallic horseman takes a letter from Caesar to Cicero but fearing the Nervii, throws it tied to a spear, into the camp.

6. The spear stuck to a tower and the letter was not observed before the third day.

7. Cicero calling a meeting of the soldiers, reads (*recito*) the letter and great is the joy of all when Caesar's approach is learned.

### Exercise 37.

(See Chapters 49-52.)

1. Cicero asks from Vertico the man who brought the letter to Caesar's camp.

2. Give me a soldier whom I may send with this letter.

3. At midnight the letter was brought to Caesar and he hastened to set out towards the enemy.

4. The place where he encamped was as favorable as possible, but the camp which he fortified was as contracted as possible.

5. The valleys can easily be crossed by this route.

6. Caesar the next day, by a pretence of fear, enticed the enemy to battle in front of the camp in a most unfavorable place.

7. Some were tearing down the rampart with their hands, some were filling up the ditches.

8. But Caesar ordered a sally to be made and the cavalry to be let loose.
9. The enemy did not resist and large numbers of them were cut down (*occido*).
10. Caesar then pushed on to the camp of Cicero and entered (*intro, are*) to the great joy ("with great joy") of the soldiers.

### Exercise 38.

(See Chapters 53-55.)

1. In nine hours word-was-brought (*perfero*, used impersonally) to Labienus that Caesar had defeated the Nervii and had entered Cicero's camp.
2. Frightened by this news, Indutiomarus fled by night with all his forces without attacking the camp of Labienus (use *abl. abs.*).
3. Caesar, sending back Fabius, remained throughout the rest of that winter with his army in the vicinity of Samarobriua.
4. Some of the Gauls were held to their allegiance by intimidation and some by advice, but nearly all the states were suspected by Caesar (*objects of suspicion to*).
5. Indutiomarus all this winter kept trying to stir up the Germans, but was not however (use *neque*) able to persuade them to cross the Rhine.
6. Many Gauls, however, he succeeded in (*efficio ut*) inducing to flock to his standard (*concurro ad.*)

### Exercise 39.

(See Chapters 56-58.)

1. Indutiomarus, calling an armed council, delivered a speech and declared his intention of attacking Labienus' camp (use only one verb).
  2. Labienus kept to his camp and Indutiomarus came every day and tried to increase his fear.
  3. At last Labienus, having admitted certain Gallic horsemen and strengthened the idea that he was afraid (*the impression of fear*) suddenly ordered a sally and let loose all his cavalry.
  4. Fortune smiled on (*comprobo*) his plans, for Indutiomarus was slain and all his army was put to flight.
  5. Learning these things, the Nervii and Eburones who had assembled, dispersed, and Gaul became more quiet.
-

# EXERCISES IN RE-TRANSLATION

## BASED ON BOOK VI.

### Exercise 1.

(See Chapter 1.)

1. A greater disturbance was expected by Caesar.
2. A levy was held through the lieutenants, Silanus, Reginus, and Sextius.
3. The pro-consul, Pompeius, who was remaining near the city with his troops had raised soldiers in Cisalpine Gaul.
4. These he ordered to set out to Caesar because (*quod*) Caesar had asked it.
5. Great now (*iam*) appeared the resources of the Romans, and the loss of the previous (*prior*) war was soon repaired.
6. This was granted by Pompey to Caesar.
7. What loss had been sustained at that time?
8. Winter was now ended. Caesar had doubled the number of the cohorts that had been lost by Titurius.

### Exercise 2.

(See Chapters 1-2.)

#### Abl. Absol.

1. The leader of the Treveri had been slain by Labienus. Their leader having been slain, the Treveri conferred the command upon his kinsmen.
2. Having tempted the nearest Germans, they were unable to stir them up.
3. After attaching Ambiorix to themselves, they prepared for war.
4. When the Germans had been stirred up, Caesar began-to-think (imperf.) of war.

#### Acc. with Infin.

5. Caesar learned that the command had been delegated to the relatives of Indutiomarus, that the Germans were being tempted, and that the Nervii were preparing war.
6. All the Germans are under arms, and are not coming in-response-to his command.

## Gerundive.

7. War has been prepared by Caesar. War has to be prepared by Caesar.

8. The farther Germans must be tempted by us.

9. The Treveri thought they should tempt the farther Germans.

10. A levy must be held by *me*. Caesar thought a levy should be held by himself.

11. Having held a levy, he led four cohorts against the Nervii.

## Exercise 3.

(See Chapter 3.)

1. Winter was not yet ended. The four nearest cohorts had been assembled. The Nervii could not assemble. A great number of men and cattle were (say *was*) captured and their lands were ravaged.

2. Hostages having been given by the Nervii, Caesar's legions were led back by him into winter quarters.

3. Early in the spring a council of the Gauls was proclaimed.

4. Thither came three tribes; the remainder said they would not come.

5. This was the beginning of war.

## Exercise 4.

(See Chapter 4.)

## Present Participle.

1. Caesar's arrival was learnt by Acco (gen. *Accōnis*).

2. The Senones tried to gather into their towns, but Caesar was upon them before they could do so.

3. The Treveri, (while) attempting to assemble, learnt of Caesar's approach.

4. To the Gauls (while) assembling, word was brought that Caesar was close at hand.

5. The Aedui, asking pardon on behalf of the Nervii, obtain (it) (*impetro*) from Caesar.

## Exercise 5.

(See Chapter 4.)

## Gerund and Gerundive.

1. Ambassadors came for the purpose of making excuses (*excuso, are*).

2. By entreaty (gerund of *deprecor*) they obtain pardon.

3. These ambassadors are to be guarded.
4. I hand them over to you to be guarded.
5. Soldiers were sent for the purpose of guarding the hostages.

### Utor.

6. Caesar used Gallic horse-soldiers.
7. The Gauls employed excuse-making.

### Exercise 6.

(See Chapter 5.)

1. Cavarinus set out with him. He ordered the army to set out with him.
2. I have settled these things, and I am positive the enemy will not engage in battle.
3. Marshes and woods protected (*munio*) the Menapii.
4. There is friendship between you and me.
5. This support (*auxilium*) must be taken away from Ambiorix. (What case does *detraho* govern?)
6. Having taken away these supports, I will assail (*laccio*) the chieftain himself.
7. Ambiorix will despair of safety and hide among the Germans.
8. This plan has been entered upon. All the baggage has been sent.
9. Two legions have been ordered to proceed to Labienus.
10. Five lightly equipped legions set out with Caesar himself against the enemy.

Two meanings of *cogo*.

11. The Menapii were compelled to take refuge in the woods.
12. No force (*manus*) had been collected by them.

### Exercise 7.

(See Chapter 6.)

1. Caesar divided up his forces with his lieutenants.
2. Bridges were quickly built (*efficio*) and villages were burnt.
3. The Menapii were compelled to send ambassadors concerning peace.

What verbs are like *utor*?

4. Caesar gained possession of many villages.
5. The soldiers, having gained possession of the bridge, set fire to the buildings.

6. Caesar, leaving (perf. participle) Commius, had set out into the territories of the Treveri.

### Exercise 8.

(See Chapter 7.)

Vivid present with **Dum**.

1. While Caesar was doing these things, the Treveri gathered large forces.
2. While the Treveri were preparing war, Caesar overcame the Menapii.
3. The enemy attacked (*adorior*) Labienus. Two legions, sent by Caesar, were coming.

**Acc. with Infin.**

4. Caesar learnt that large forces had been gathered by the Treveri.
5. Labienus had learnt that the Gauls would pitch camp and await the Germans.
6. There will be no opportunity of fighting-a-pitched-battle.
7. I hope Caesar will come.
8. The Gauls thought that Labienus would not cross the river.
9. I will move camp early to-morrow morning.
10. Some of the Gauls in Labienus' army favored the enemy.
11. It was reported (*defero*) to the Gauls that Labienus had broken-up camp at day-break.

### Exercise 9.

(See Chapter 8.)

1. The enemy had exhorted one another not to let the Romans slip out of their hands.
2. It is tedious (*longus*) to wait for the Germans. The Romans are thoroughly frightened. Our dignity does not permit it.
3. Shall we not dare to attack such small forces? Do we hesitate to cross the river?
4. Labienus suspected that the Gauls would cross.
5. The Roman soldiers displayed great valor and imagined that Caesar was looking on in person.
6. Standards having been turned about and cavalry having been stationed on the flanks, our men raised a shout. Having quickly let fly their javelins at the Gauls, they put the whole band (*manus*) to rout.

**Exercise 10.**

Pres. Participle—Perf. Pass. Participle—Deponent  
Perf. Participle.

1. Many Gauls, while seeking the woods, were slain by Roman soldiers.
2. The Gauls, having sought the woods, heard that the Germans had betaken themselves home.
3. A few were captured. The Romans pursued (*consector*) the remainder.
4. Having captured a large number and pursued the remainder they returned (*se recipere*) into camp.
5. He learned that some Gauls had accompanied (*comitor*) the Germans.
6. The Gauls, accompanying (perf. part.) the Germans, crossed the river into Germany.

**Exercise 11.**

(See Chapter 9.)

**Cum, Postquam, Ubi, and Perf. Participle.**

1. When Caesar had come into the Treveri (use *cum*).
2. When he had crossed the Rhine (use *postquam*).
3. After sending reinforcements, they received Ambiorix to themselves, ((a) perf. participle, (b) *cum*, (c) *postquam*).
4. When they saw Caesar coming (use *ubi*; see previous chapter).
5. Having determined on these things (translate in three ways).
6. Having led his army over, he built a bridge.
7. When the bridge had been completed by the soldiers, a strong guard was left.
8. No disturbance having arisen, he advanced into Germany.

**Exercise 12**

(See Chapter 9.)

*“purgandi sui causa ad eum legatos mittunt, qui doceant.”*

1. These are the ambassadors who inform (*doceo*) Caesar.
2. Ambassadors were sent to inform Caesar ((a) with *causā*, (b) with *ad*, (c) with *qui*).
3. Ambassadors came to clear themselves ((a) with *ad*, (b) with *qui*).
4. Caesar sent (men) to enquire the way into the Suebi.

5. The apology (*satisfactio*) of the Ubii having been received, he spared their state (what case does *parco* govern?)

6. The Ubii came for the purpose of making apology.

### Exercise 13.

(See Chapter 10.)

1. The Suebi are gathering all their forces into this place and are notifying their neighbors (*finitimi*) to do the same.

2. The Romans were informed that the Suebi had collected their (men).

3. Having gathered their forces and received (*accipio*) aid from the other tribes, they waged war upon Caesar (*bellum infero*, with Dat.)

4. They informed Caesar. Caesar having been informed (absolute.)

#### Iubeo, Impero, Mando.

5. He orders (*iubeo*) the Ubii to bring cattle.

6. He ordered (*impero*, with proper sequence of tense) Labienus to bring his army.

7. He instructs (*mando*) the scout to go among the Suebi.

8. He instructed the scouts to go into the territories of the Suebi.

#### Indirect Question.

9. What things are being done (*gero*) among the Suebi?

10. He wishes to learn what (sing.) is being done by the Suebi.

11. What (pl.) did the Suebi do (*gero*)?

12. He could not ascertain what the Suebi had done.

13. This was the wood which was called Bacenis.

14. What wood is called Bacenis?

15. It is uncertain (*incertum est*) what wood is called Bacenis.

### Exercise 14.

(See Chapter 10.)

All the Suebi, after definite news came, with all the forces they had collected, betook themselves to the remotest parts of their territories. There is a wood there of vast extent. This extends far into the interior and protects the Suebi from injuries on the part of the Cherusci. In this wood the Suebi have determined to await our arrival.

### Exercise 15.

(See Chapters 11 and 12.)

1. In what do these nationalities differ from each other?

2. I will set forth in what they differ.

3. Several battles had been fought and all the nobility had been slain.
4. The Aedui gave hostages and were compelled to take an oath in the name of the state.
5. The hostages have been given back and the old dependencies restored.

### Exercise 16.

(See Chapters 13 and 14.)

1. In Gaul the common people are of no account.
2. Debt and immense taxes oppress them.
3. The Druids are highly respected among the Gauls.
4. If any one wishes to learn the Druids' system of training, it must be learnt in Britain.
5. In learning verses, the Druids relied on their memory and did not use written characters.
6. Our soul does not perish after death.

### Exercise 17.

(See Chapters 15-20.)

1. The Druids hand down learning to the young ; the Knights are at the head of the factions.
2. The Gauls worship the same gods, for the most part, as the Romans.
3. They sacrifice animals and human beings.
4. An account is kept of all moneys between husband and wife.
5. In the funerals of their greater (*amplior*) men, slaves, clients and animals specially loved, used to be burned along with their masters.
6. If anyone has heard (*accipio*) anything regarding the public weal, he lays it before the magistrates.

### Exercise 18.

(See Chapters 21-22.)

1. Those who have charge of (*praesum*) divine matters are Druids.
2. Caesar has many lieutenants to officer his army (use a *qui* clause).
3. The Germans used to devote themselves to war from boyhood.
4. The races and family groups stay in one place only for one year: the year after, they go to another place (use an adverb).

5. Many reasons can be adduced (*affero*) for this.
6. They thought war ought not to be exchanged for agriculture. (What is the construction with verbs of exchanging?)
7. We will gladly exchange war for peace.
8. The Germans used to build with-a-view-to avoiding the cold.

**Exercise 19.***(Chapters 23 and 24.)*

1. Their neighbors, driven from their lands, had retired and no one (do not say *et nemo*) dared to make a stand near (them).
2. The magistrates, who have charge of war, have power of life and death.
3. A leader is chosen to take charge of the war (use a *qui* clause).
4. Magistrates are chosen to dispense justice (*ius dico*) (use a *qui* clause).
5. Brigandage is not held to be a disgrace amongst the Germans.
6. The Gauls formerly (*antea*) surpassed the Germans in bravery.

**Exercise 20.***(Chapters 25-28.)*

1. Gaul starts at the Pyrenees (*Pyrenæi montes*) and extends to the Rhine.
2. There is no one who has visited the beginning of this forest (*qui* after *nemo est=ut is*).
3. Many kinds of wild beasts are produced in this forest.
4. Of these the following are those that Caesar mentions: the reindeer, the elk, the wild ox.
5. The elk is like the goat in shape and color, but is a little larger.
6. It never lies down to rest, and, if from any accident it has fallen, it cannot rise.
7. A tree is its couch; against it it leans and thus takes rest.
8. The hunters observe from their foot-prints whither they betake themselves.
9. The wild ox is a little smaller than an elephant, but in shape and color like a bull.
10. Those who kill a wild ox bring the horns as a proof (Dat. of Purpose) and gain great praise.
11. Men cannot tame these, even when caught quite young.
12. They use the horns as drinking-cups.

**Exercise 21.***(See Chapters 29-32.)***Cum and Postquam.**

1. When (*cum*) the Suebi had betaken themselves far into the woods, Caesar did not advance, but led back his army and broke down the far end of his bridge.

2. When (*postquam*) he had broken down the bridge and left a garrison in a tower which he had constructed, he set out for the purpose of pursuing Ambiorix.

3. Basilus, having been sent forward with the cavalry, almost (*paene*) captured Ambiorix, who escaped while his companions were fighting (use pres. part.) and afterwards ordered his men to look out for themselves.

4. Catuvolcus, king of half the Eburones, poisoned himself.

5. Ambassadors came from two German tribes to entreat Caesar not to wage war upon them (express "to entreat" in five different ways).

6. We had no intention of war (*nihil cogitare de*); and sent no aid to Ambiorix.

7. If you bring back to me (fut. perf. ind.) those who assembled among (*aa*) you, I will not interfere with your territories.

8. The fourteenth legion was left as protection to the town of Aduatuca, and over this legion Quintus Cicero was put in command.

**Exercise 22.***(See Chapter 33.)*

Having left Cicero with the fourteenth legion in the camp near Aduatuca, he divided his army and gave orders (*impero*) to Labienus to proceed to the Menapii and to Trebonius to proceed to the Aduatuci. These regions were to be laid waste by the two lieutenants. He himself set out to the Scheldt, whither Ambiorix had gone. He said he would be back in seven days and ordered the two lieutenants to return by the same date if possible.

**Exercise 23.***(See Chapter 34.)*

1. No town defended itself. The Gauls had encamped (*conside*) in hidden glens, or woody places or obstructed marshes.

2. He did not wish to divide (*diduco*) his soldiers and could not take (*duco*) them in a closely packed body through these impassable places. All the neighboring Gauls therefore (*itaque*) were called out for the purpose of (*causa* and *gerund*) plundering the Eburones and wiping out (*tollo*) the state.

**Exercise 24.***(See Chapter 35.)*

1. How much can fortune (lo) in war? What accidents does she bring?
2. Caesar learned what fortune could (do) in war and what accidents she brought (be careful of Sequence).
3. The Sugambri came from Germany to plunder the Eburones.
4. After ravaging the territories of these, they come to Aduatuca.
5. Here they learn that Caesar has gone to a distance, that all the baggage of his army has been placed in the town, and that Cicero is there with a small garrison.

**Exercise 25.***(See Chapters 36-38.)*

1. Cicero had been ordered by Caesar to allow no one to leave (*egredior*) the camp. But on the seventh day he sent five cohorts into the neighboring fields to get corn, leaving (perf. part.) only a few sick men and five cohorts behind.
2. When the cohorts had got some distance on their journey (*aliquantum itineris progredior*) and there were now woods between them and the camp, the Sugambri came along (*intervenio*) and endeavored to break into the camp.
3. With difficulty the few Roman soldiers defended the camp.
4. Baculus, a centurion of the first rank, one of (*ex*) the sick men left in the camp, rushed out of his tent and, taking up arms, stood in the gateway. He perished, covered with wounds, but by his courage (*virtus*) the camp was saved.

**Exercise 26.***(See Chapter 39.)***Dependent Question.**

1. Meanwhile the soldiers who had gone for corn returned. Hearing the shouting and learning the danger, they halted (*consisto*).
2. In how great danger is the camp? You have learnt in what danger it is.
3. What do the centurions direct (*praecepicio*)? We are waiting to see what they direct.
4. Where is Caesar? The Germans did not know (*intelligo*) where he was.

**Exercise 27.***(See Chapter 41.)*

1. On the first night after the Germans, despairing of storming the camp, had returned across the Rhine into Germany, C. Volusenus came to the camp with Caesar's cavalry.
2. Cicero's soldiers had thought that the forces of Caesar were destroyed to a man, or that the cavalry alone had escaped (*effugio*).
3. This fear was removed by Caesar's arrival next (*proximus*) day.

**Exercise 28.***(See Chapter 43.)*

1. Caesar again set out to harass the enemy (translate in four ways).
  2. All the corn having been consumed or beaten down (*adfligo*) by rains, the forces of Ambiorix were perishing from utter destitution (say "lack of all things.")
  3. Ambiorix himself however was eluding pursuit (*se eripere*).
  4. At last Caesar leading back his army, held an enquiry regarding the conspiracy, and inflicted the extreme penalty upon Acco (*supplicium gravissimum sumere de*).
  5. Leaving two legions among the Treveri, two among the Lingones, and six at Agedincum among the Senones, he set out to Italy to hold court (translate the last phrase in six ways).
-

Place in which is denoted by ablative usually with prep in. Prep. is omitted

(1) with names of towns

(2) names of places which are not towns

"when idea of means manner or cause is combined with that of place

a) When idea of place is figurative rather than literal

3 With ablatives loco, locus, <sup>parade, pagoda</sup> destra, leva, sinistra, terra mare and other ablatives when qualified by ~~Totus~~

4 ~~Additional idea of cause, manner,~~  
s. ~~visions~~

Cohortes manipuli

centuria  
centurio  
60 m legio  
legio = 6000

10 cohorts =

30

=

=

legion = 6000

Gerund opus capiendi urbem

Gerundive pus capiendae urbis

Whenever Caesar captured a town he used to demand hostages

Whenever Caesar captures he demands hostages

" " will capture  
" he will demand hostages

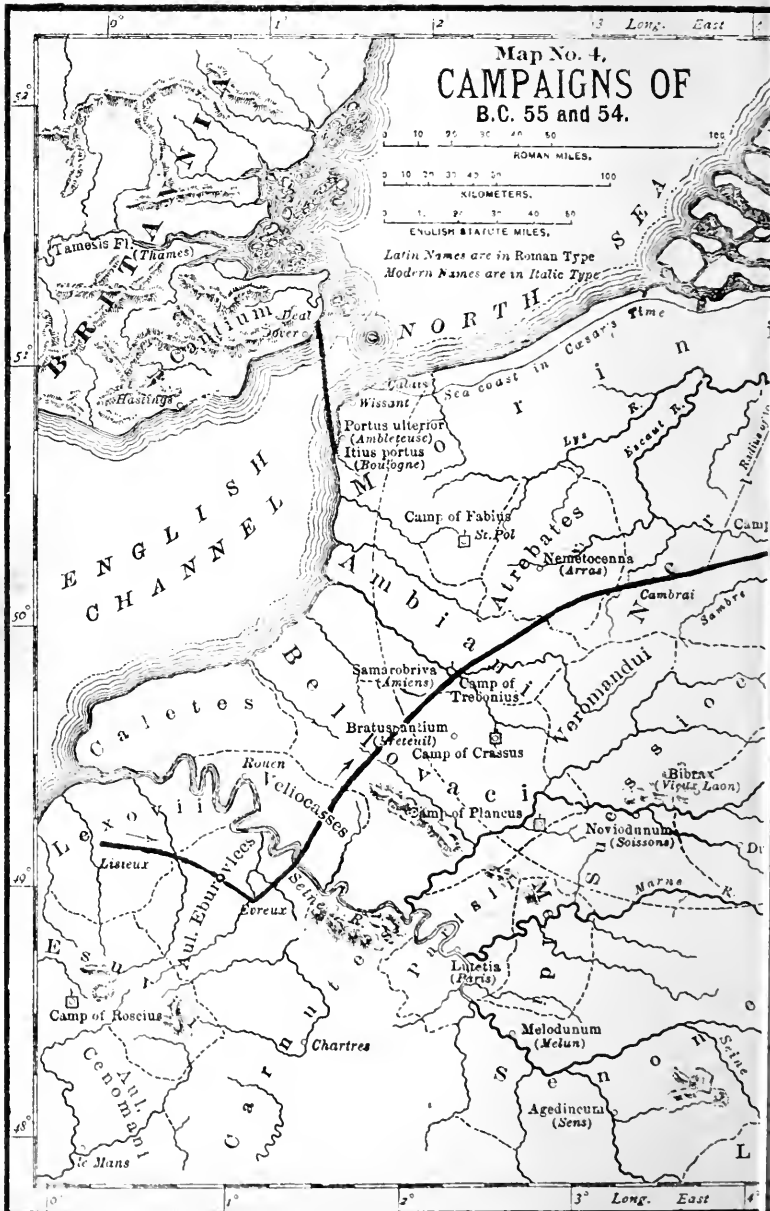
Whenever Caesar marched into territories of the enemy he used to take all towns & burn them Pres. Past & Fut.

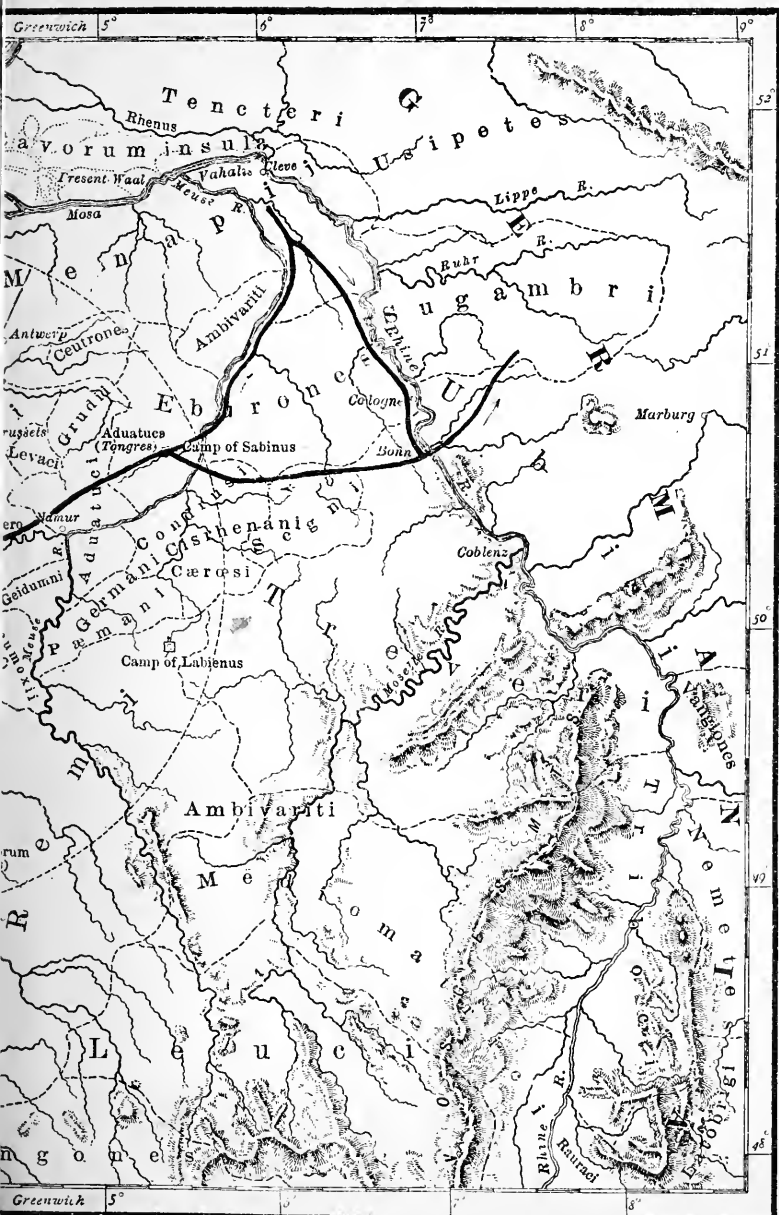
Whenever Caesar came to Rome he could

Map No. 4.  
CAMPAIGNS OF  
B.C. 55 and 54.

0 10 20 30 40 50 100  
ROMAN MILES.  
0 10 20 30 40 50  
KILOMETERS.  
0 1 2 3 4 5  
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.

Latin Names are in Roman Type  
Modern Names are in Italic Type





Opera using work  
" " workmen

Gen. centurians who led the first-  
centurions of each cohort were the  
centurians of the first rank.

Gen. of description usually have number  
involved, used for internal & real  
characteristics

Abl. of description used for external  
or physical appearance.

Cotidie simply repetition V LVII

in dies daily increase V LVIII

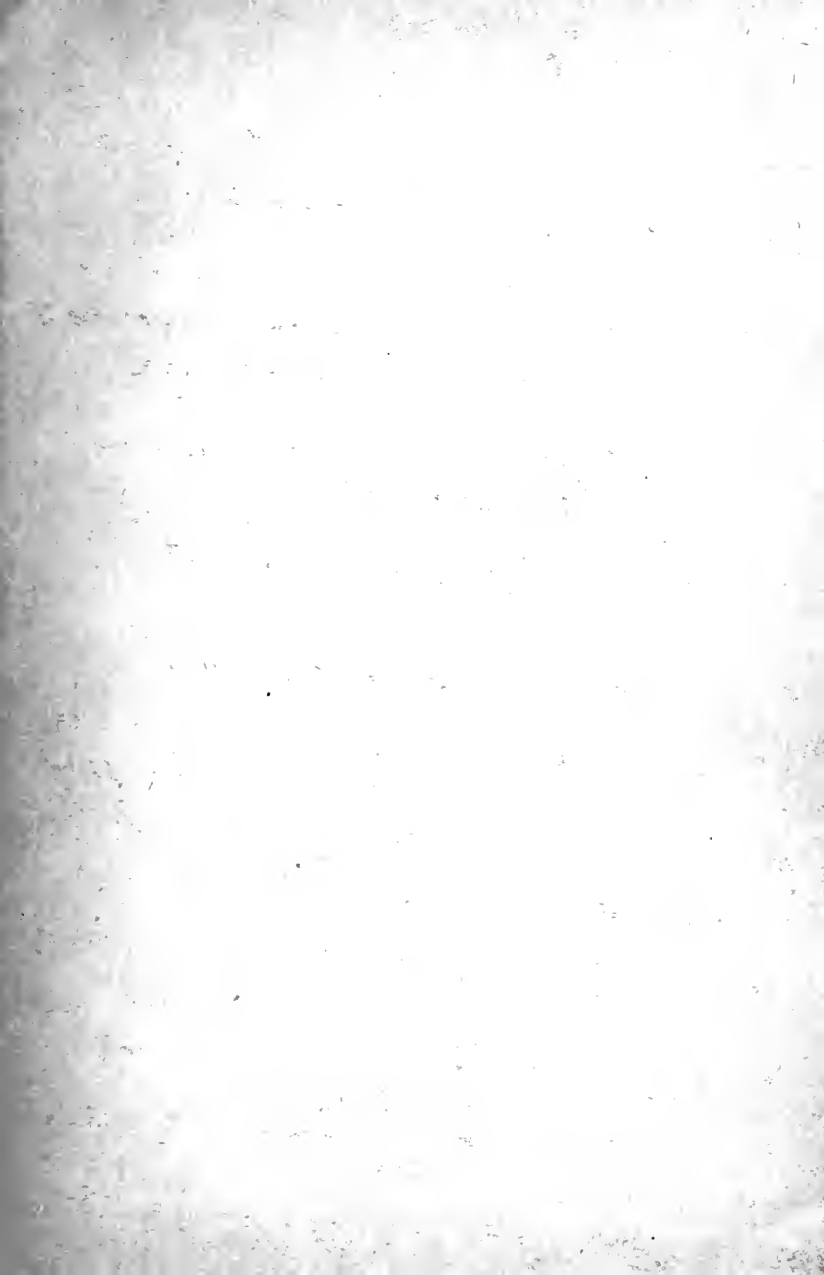
Mando-order-in case where you have  
great confidence it will be fulfilled  
imperio a general order of the  
in the co-general word to order.

edico. an official command

Verbo of persuading, urging advising & take  
subj. when you persuade a person to  
or not to do an action.

Infim. when you persuade a person  
of an actual fact.

opis open<sup>open</sup> ope reg. in plural.



Greenwich

from

East

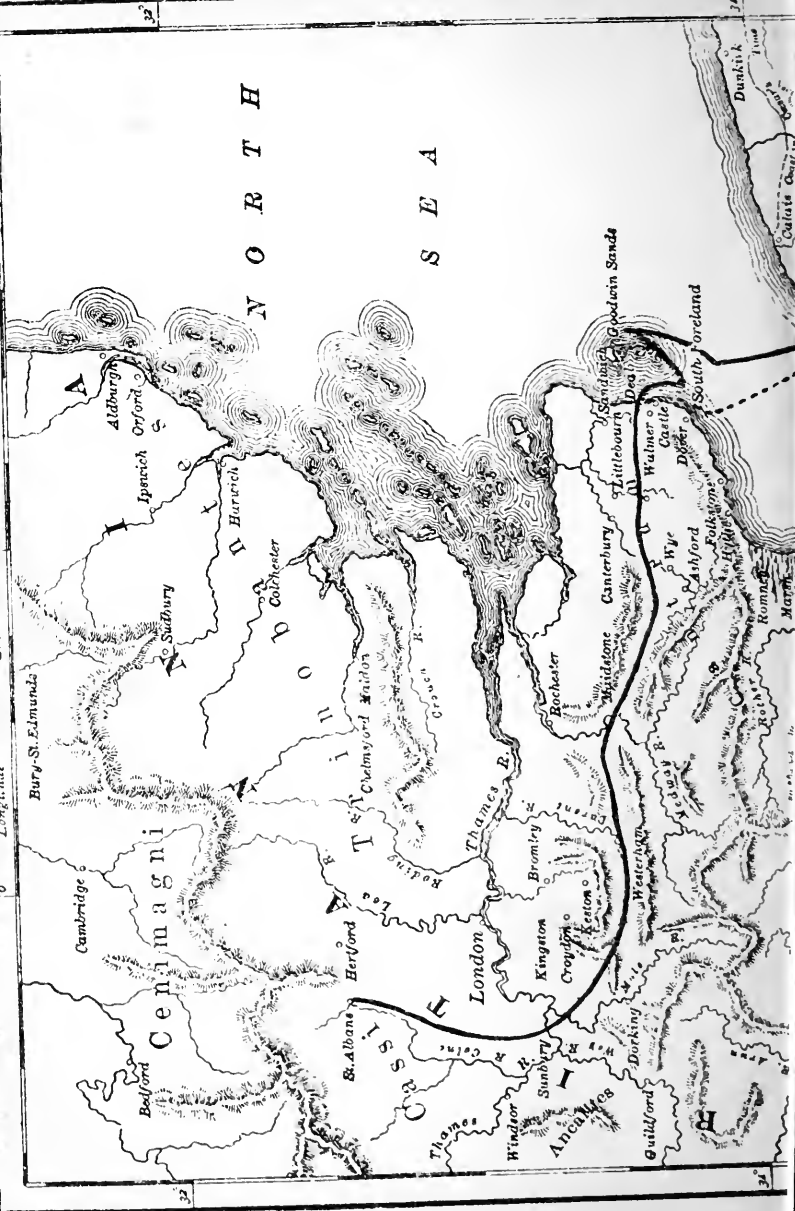
Longitude

0

32

32

N O R T H  
S E A



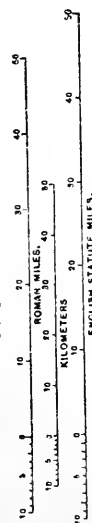
Dunkirk  
Calais  
Dover  
Folkestone  
Dartford  
Sheerness  
Gravelines  
Zeebrugge  
Antwerp  
Brussels  
Paris  
Amsterdam  
Hamburg  
Berlin  
Copenhagen  
Stockholm  
Oslo  
Helsinki  
Tallinn  
Riga  
Vilnius  
Kaunas  
Lithuania  
Poland  
Czech Republic  
Slovakia  
Hungary  
Romania  
Bulgaria  
Greece  
Turkey  
Cyprus  
Malta  
Gibraltar  
Spain  
Portugal  
France  
Italy  
Austria  
Germany  
Netherlands  
Belgium  
Luxembourg  
Switzerland  
Liechtenstein  
Austria  
Germany  
Netherlands  
Belgium  
Luxembourg  
Switzerland  
Liechtenstein



Map No. 5.

# BRITAIN IN CAMPAIGNS OF B. C. 55 & 54.

B. C. 55 & 54.



*Latvia Names are in Roman Type. Modern Names are in Italic Type.*

- 1 ST. CAMPAIGN
- 2 ND. CAMPAIGN

Longitude East Greenwich

Reverto is used by Caesar mostly  
in the Present and Perfect future  
tenses. The active form reverto is used  
in the perfect, pluperfect and Future  
perfect.

#### CH XXVII BK 5.

Present and Perfect subjunctive are used  
for vividness in sections dealing not with  
Caesar's motives in the past but with  
the practical question of the present-  
condition of affairs and the course of  
action in the future.

6 Caesar vclis civitatibus  
ut obsides darent imperabat  
7 Hos adducit <sup>in</sup> et imperavit

8 Legati mittere imperant, ut  
naves humiles et lutas aedificent.  
9 Naves refici imperabit.

10 Veteres <sup>naves</sup> refici novasque aedificare  
a militibus quibus legatos praefecit  
imperavit.

11 Iube homines venire.

Impera hominem ut veniat.

- 1 Celeritas onerandi has naves magna  
erat.
- 2 Ad onerandum humiles erant.
- 3 Causa aedificandi hanc fuit.  
Caesar ad Britanniam transire voluit
- 4 Duae usui erant in arvo ad aedificandas  
ex Hispania adstricta sunt
- 5 Multa sunt usui classem ad  
reficiendam
- 6 Legatos curare armandam classem  
jubet
- 7 Caesar legatos obsides adducendos  
curare jubet
- 8 Classis causa ad Britanniam transiendi  
causa armata est  
In Galliam ad agendos conventus et



- 4 Caesar verulus est ~~et~~ Indutimarius  
amicus esset.  
5 Indutimarius ad Caesarem non venit  
quo civitas in officio facillius contineretur.  
2. Magni Caesaris interfuit amicus  
Truveris imperare  
6 Quae in Truveris geruntur? Cingel  
Caesari <sup>quae</sup> gerantur ostendit.  
7 Ego et omnes mihi in officio erunt  
neque ad amicitiam fore  
defectum.

Ex. 10

Idcirco ab amicis meis non discedo, et  
ad te venire nolo. Civitatem meam in officio  
vollo et verior ne se habet.

Ex. 11

1 Segrones Caesaris advenisse  
Quinquaginta milia hominum  
factae sunt legiones et  
neque advenisse potuerant.  
Eodem unde perfectae erant  
reverterunt. Reliquae advenisse in  
paratae sunt et omnia in  
4 Illos ~~factae~~ quibus Caesaris in  
reliquit. Reliquos solum obsidum loco  
duxit.  
5 Summorum Caesaris in primis solum  
habere voluit.

Edm. ... litterarum fac  
minoribus  
legibus ... in causa multorum  
Summorum ... ut relinquatur, quod  
... timeret  
Qui qui insueti sunt ad navigandum  
mare pectus timebat  
Le Mones ut in arida remaneas  
non cum ... transessas  
non sine causa fit ut Gallia  
principibus <sup>spoliatur</sup> spolietur. Consilium  
Caesaris est ut in Britanniam intereat.  
Veretur nos in conspectu nostrorum  
imbecillium facere. Tunc iusurandum  
Gente ... in Gallia remaneatis

Epistola  
Caesaris ad Britannos  
Coercere ...  
Summorum ex a me quibuscumque rebus  
possum coerceri  
Amicula ejusjam longius est.  
Sibi et republicae vocat.  
Comus tempus magnam partem omnes  
temporis in ora Galliae flat.  
Caesar operam dabit ut Summorum  
... continet  
Militibus in navis consensio. Caesarem  
recessit.  
Caesar aut cum ...

8 He, qui cum sequendi causa mi-  
sunt cum circumiecerunt et cum  
resistentem receverunt.  
9 Caesar, absente dumtaxat, tubu (p)  
sano fecit.  
10 Ego, liber sum et civis civis  
sum.

Ex. 14

1 His rebus gestis, Tabernum in Gallia  
reliquit.  
2 Legionibus et equitibus in continentem  
relictis ad solis occidum, naves solvit.  
3 Prima luce aut sinistra Britannia  
relictam cognovit.  
4 Longius ventis et aequo, talia naves  
commutationem aetheris secutae sunt.  
5 In hac parte, montes superiore aethere  
egressus erat.  
6 Intellexit haec reges optimos esse  
in eam credendum.  
7 Milites non subterfugere, sed eodem  
eodem regnando die ceperunt.  
8 Meridie hostes naves Caesaris appropinquare  
ex perterriti.  
1) Relictus est, ut in custodia  
2) Milites reliquit ut in terra temporis  
3) Terram ut ceperent contendere  
4) Contendimus ut celeritatem naves  
5) Longius aedeque mus.  
6) Operam dantes ut multa  
7) Reges dantes

~~per quos in omnibusque contentia~~  
bella imperio tempore incesserant.

Caesar tempore cognito militibus a per  
quendo remanentibus legibus preparavit occurrentibus  
et invenit omnes in tranquilla mansuetudine et  
religiosas affectatas.

Sabinus suspectum, labros ex continenti mitteret  
et quoniam plurimum posset reliquis legionibus naves  
et non tantum res multas et opes.

Interiora Caesaris his subductis quae non  
essent. Erant et naves et castra munita  
munitione munitis.

Deum deus. In multis in munitis rursus  
et hostis profectus est paucis militibus selectis  
et munitis quam aedificaverat, custodire  
et munitis.

Caesar ad totum pervenisset in proelio erant  
gravis maior et maior et summan  
interdixit Caesar bellum permissam esse princip  
nam nationem quae tantum attingunt.

Caesar autem reliquis nationibus in  
interdixit. Superiore tempore incesserant  
et per totum lamen Britannia pervenit ad  
et per totum eum toti bello.

Ex 16

qui in proelio a per nationibus interiorum  
et per totum lamen Britannia pervenit ad  
et per totum eum toti bello.

4. Exiis alia in insula nascuntur a liis  
importantur
5. Ei, qui Belgium incolunt, Belgae appe-  
antur
6. Ad portum Cantuarii suae naves apper-  
antur
7. Amicus appellatus est.
8. Naves ad portum apperantur.
9. Caesar ad occasum solis et ad septem-  
triones navigavit.
10. Ei, qui in insula Cantuarii incolunt,  
spectantes adveniens Caesaris veniunt.
11. Pudentia maior dimittit eum Hibernia.

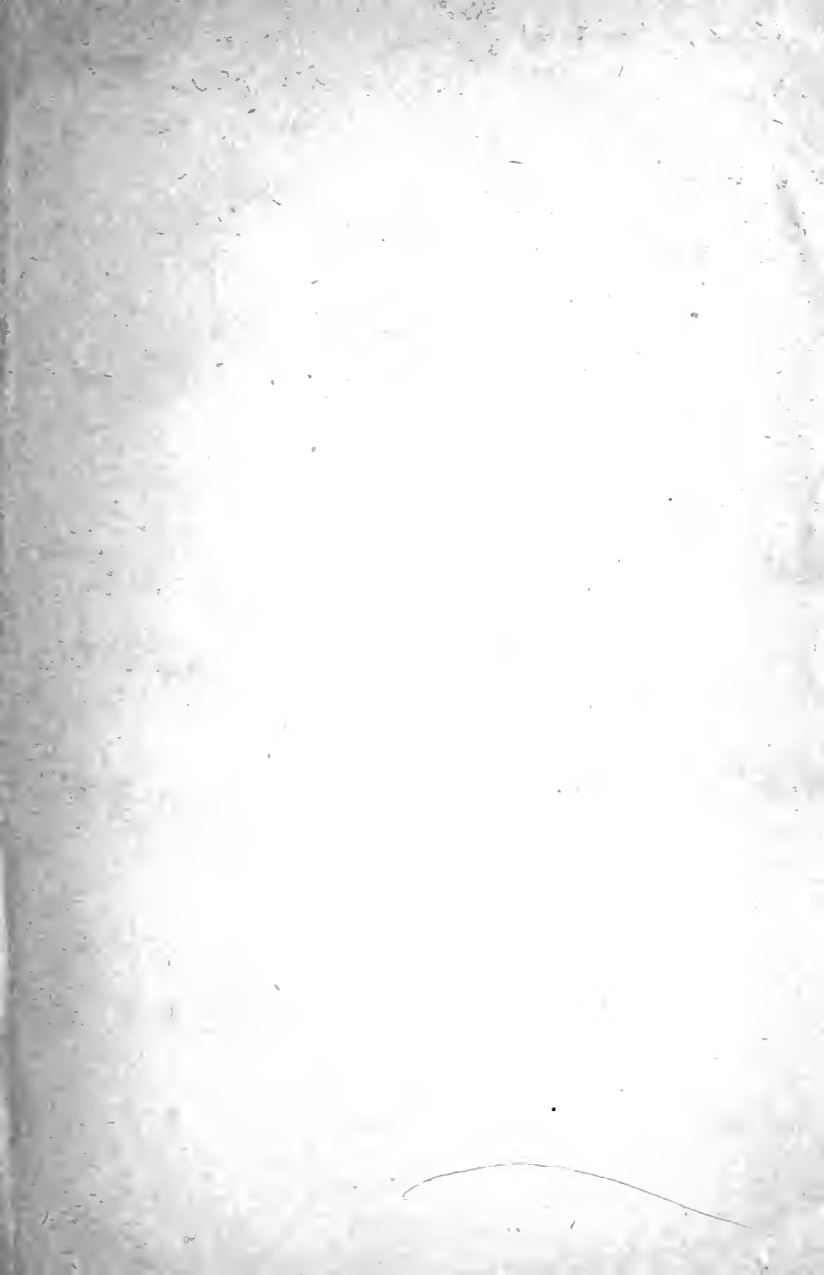
426

- 1) Nostri, progressu adque urbem iterum hostiliter complexi sunt. et eorum viros compulerunt.
- 2) Ruos coram hoste se obis se egerunt.
- 3) Caesar pueros cohortis decem in urbe m.
- 4) sed nostri quere pueri ande hostium perierunt.
- 5) auctor tribus militum inter se perierunt.
- 6) In hoc proelio Britannici paucum cedebant.
- 7) essetis desiliant, pedibus in urbe sunt.
- 8) alios alii deusipus exasperant et e-
- 9) uentes essent.

1. Postero die, milites proelio accessit eunt ab  
hostibus qui se in collibus ostenderunt.  
2. Tres legiones et omnes equitatus a Caesare  
missi sunt.  
Impetus in hostes a nostris factus est.  
Hostes, impetu hoc repulsi ab equitibus  
praecipites acti sunt.  
Magnus numerus hostium interfecti sunt.  
Nulla facultas eis consistendi aut pugnandi  
data est.

### Ex 22

Caesar consilia eorum cognoverat  
consiliis eorum cognitis.  
Exercitus ductus ad Thamesem anem ad ver-  
it flumen hoc in omnino uno loco pedibus transir-  
esse.  
magnae copiae in alteram ripam instructae  
sunt quae, praeterea, munitae erant <sup>praefixis</sup> ~~auditis~~ et  
refixis sub aqua.  
Equites praemissi et legiones iussae sunt  
subsequi.  
Hostes



Length of south side is 350 <sup>Roman</sup> miles  
Caesar says 300

Prima = Brevisima = brevissima

Western side is 600 miles  
Caesar says is 700 "

Trio strisello star

North side is 600 "

Caesar says 800 "

Adverbs form the passive same as for  
when compounded with prepositions  
same as Copies

audes, cogo, conor, constituo, statuo  
 amtor, cupio, debes, male, nescio, volo,  
 blivis cor, disco, dubito, incipio, patior, par  
 os sum, scio, soleo, vereor, volo,  
 modal verbs & verbs that need an  
 infin. to complete their meaning

Primary pres, fut. perfect<sup>def</sup> with have take  
 the pres. subj.

Secondary Super. pluperf. perf without  
 have or indef perf. take  
 imperfect subj.

Pres		Inquam		Fut	
		Imper			
inquam	inquimus	—	—	inquires	—
inquis	inquitis	—	—	inquit	—
inquit	inquirent	inquietat	—		
Perf		Imper			
inquisti	—	{ inque inquito }			
inquit	—				

secondary imper. Pluper perfect

1 dignus contentus praestus lib  
2 praeditus indignus gov  
the abl

utile lego, ne lego, d

- Ways of expressing purpose
1. send ambassadors to sue for peace  
2. Legatos misit ut pacem peterent  
3. " " qui " "  
4. " " ad " petendam  
5. " " pacis petendae causa  
6. " " ad pacem petendam  
7. " " pacem petendi causa  
8. " " pacem petentem  
9. " " pacem petentem

Periphrastic conj. act. made up of  
fut. part. act. and some part of sum  
The passive periphrastic made up of  
gerundive in idus with various parts  
of verb sum.

Credo, fido, confido, paveo, pareo, nubo,  
studeo, vaco, obesto, infero, suadeo, persuadeo,  
raseo, tempero, subtrahere, ignosco, servo, invidio,  
indulgeo, placeo, displicio, rebus, immineo

verbs meaning to hope as, spero, lat. the Future Infinitive.

Quibus, utitur solitus gloriatur - source  
in origin Latin. Lat. of origin

Postquam - Coniunctio - Super  
propterea - propterea - propterea  
nam - nam - nam

Ex - imitanda, videlicet ad, praeter  
et, and come, then praeter  
et - passive.

fore used in fut. inf. and imperfect  
subj. = essens fore = futurus esse.

4 verbs have reduplicated forms of 2nd

condes condere condidi condiderunt

condes condere condidi condiderunt

condes condere condidi condiderunt

condes condere condidi condiderunt

2 verbs of 1st.

sto stare stetero steterunt

do dare dedi dederunt

pareo parere pepererunt

epistolary

Book VI

21-29

Book VII

Book VIII

Book IX

Book X

Book XI

66

21  
22  
23

